VOLUME 152 • 2004

Special Issue on
Emerging Bacterial Toxins

REVIEWS OF

Physiology, Biochemistry and Pharmacology

Springer

Reviews of

152 Physiology Biochemistry and Pharmacology

Special Issue on Emerging Bacterial Toxins
Edited by K. Aktories and I. Just

With 57 Figures, 27 in color

Springer

Prof. Dr. Dr. Klaus Aktories
Albert-Ludwigs-Universität Freiburg
Institut für Experimentelle und Klinische
Pharmakologie und Toxikologie
Albertstr. 25
79104 Freiburg
Germany
E-mail: Klaus.Aktories@pharmakol.uni-freiburg.de

Prof. Dr. Ingo Just
Medizinische Hochschule Hannover
Institut für Toxikologie
Carl-Neuberg-Str. 1
30625 Hannover
Germany
E-mail: just.ingo@mh-hannover.de

Library of Congress-Catalog-Card Number 74-3674

ISSN 0303-4240
ISBN 3-540-23131-5 Springer Berlin Heidelberg New York

Editor: Dr. Thomas Mager, Heidelberg
Desk editor: Anne Clauss, Heidelberg
Production editor: Andreas Gösling, Heidelberg
Cover design: design & production GmbH, Heidelberg
Typesetting: Stürtz GmbH, Würzburg

Printed on acid-free paper – 14/3150 ag 5 4 3 2 1 0

Rev Physiol Biochem Pharmacol (2004) 152:1–22
DOI 10.1007/s10254-004-0034-4

K. Aktories · C. Wilde · M. Vogelsgesang

Rho-modifying C3-like ADP-ribosyltransferases

Published online: 15 September 2004

Abstract C3-like exoenzymes comprise a family of seven bacterial ADP-ribosyltransferases, which selectively modify RhoA, B, and C at asparagine-41. Crystal structures of C3 exoenzymes are available, allowing novel insights into the structure-function relationships of these exoenzymes. Because ADP-ribosylation specifically inhibits the biological functions of the low-molecular mass GTPases, C3 exoenzymes are established pharmacological tools to study the cellular functions of Rho GTPases. Recent studies, however, indicate that the functional consequences of C3-induced ADP-ribosylation are more complex than previously suggested. In the present review the basic properties of C3 exoenzymes are briefly summarized and new findings are reviewed.

Introduction

Many bacterial ADP-ribosyltransferases are potent bacterial protein toxins and important virulence factors. After cellular uptake caused by highly efficient cell entry mechanisms, they modify eukaryotic target proteins with great specificity and often grossly affect biological functions of their targets. These properties of the toxins are the reason for their use as cell biological and pharmacological tools (Aktories 2000). Particularly successful pharmacological tools are ADP-ribosyltransferases of the C3 family, which modify Rho GTPases. In the 1990s, C3 exoenzymes turned out to be very valuable experimental keys to understand the wide array of diverse regulatory functions of Rho GTPases. In hundreds of papers, C3 exoenzymes have been widely employed as cell biological tools to elucidate the cellular functions of Rho GTPases. This holds true despite the fact that these ADP-ribosyltransferases are rather poorly taken up by eukaryotic targets cells and their roles as virulence factors are still not well defined. Here, we will briefly review the basic properties of these ADP-ribosyltransferases and will focus on novel findings on the functional consequences of C3-induced ADP-ribosylation and discuss recent reports on the structure and function of the enzymes.

K. Aktories (✉) · C. Wilde · M. Vogelsgesang
Institute of Experimental and Clinical Pharmacology and Toxicology,
Albert-Ludwigs University Freiburg, Otto-Krayer-Haus, Albertstr. 25, Freiburg, Germany

Recent reviews about C3 exoenzymes focused on different aspects of the transferases (Aktories et al. 1992; Aktories 1997a,b; Boquet et al. 1998; Just et al. 2001; Narumiya and Morii 1993; Wilde and Aktories 2001). The exciting follow-up of the initial major discoveries in the field of Rho GTPases, including the role of C3 in this process, was recently vividly communicated by Ridley and Hall (Ridley and Hall 2004).

Sources of C3-like ADP-ribosyltransferases

C3 exoenzymes are produced by different types of Gram-positive obligate and facultative pathogens. So far, seven C3-like isoforms have been described, which are produced by *Clostridium botulinum*, *Clostridium limosum, Bacillus cereus* and *Staphylococcus aureus.* C3 was first identified as a product of *Clostridium botulinum* types C and D (Aktories et al. 1987, 1988; Rubin et al. 1988). Later it was found that two isoforms are produced by these Clostridia, which are about 65% identical in their amino acid sequences (Nemoto et al. 1991). They have been termed C3bot1 and C3bot2. At least the gene for C3bot1 is located on the same phage, which also encodes *C. botulinum* neurotoxins type C (Popoff et al. 1990). C3lim is produced by *Clostridium limosum* (Just et al. 1992) and is about 63% identical with C3bot1. *Bacillus cereus* produces C3cer (Just et al. 1995a), which is about 30% identical with C3bot1. Three C3 isoforms have been described, which are produced by *Staphylococcus aureus* (C3stau1, 2, and 3). These exoenzymes are about 35% identical with C3bot1 and 66%–77% identical between each other. The C3stau exoenzymes are also termed EDINs (Epidermal differentiation inhibitor) (Inoue et al. 1991; Wilde et al. 2001b; Yamaguchi et al. 2001) (Fig. 1a, b).

Structure–function analysis of C3-like exoenzymes

C3-like ADP-ribosyltransferases are enzymes of about 25 kDa, which all share the same activity in the sense that they mono-ADP-ribosylate RhoA, B, and C at the same site at asparagine 41 (Aktories et al. 1989; Braun et al. 1989; Chardin et al. 1989; Just et al. 1992, 1995a; Quilliam et al. 1989; Sekine et al. 1989; Sugai et al. 1992; Wilde et al. 2001b). The bacterial exoenzymes possess no receptor-binding or translocation domain and, consist exclusively of the catalytic domain, which possess ADP-ribosyltransferase and like many other ADP-ribosyltransferases also NAD glycohydrolase activity (Fig. 1a). Most important for understanding of the structure-function-relationship of C3-like transferases were the analysis of the crystal structures of C3bot either bound or unbound to NAD (Han et al. 2001; Ménétrey et al. 2002). These studies showed that the exoenzymes are very similar in structure and folding and share almost all functionally pivotal residues despite the limited primary sequence homology (some are not more than ~30% identical in their amino acid sequences). These data also corroborated previous mutational analysis, which let to the identification of many functionally important residues and their possible role in the ADP-ribosylation reaction (Böhmer et al. 1996; Just et al. 1995a; Saito et al. 1995; Wilde et al. 2002b).

The active site of C3bot (and most likely of other C3-like ADP-ribosyltransferases) consists of a mixed α/β-fold with a β-sandwich core, consisting of a five-stranded mixed β-sheet perpendicularly packed against a three-stranded antiparallel β-sheet. Four consecutive α-helices surround the three stranded β-sheet. An additional α-helix flanks the five-

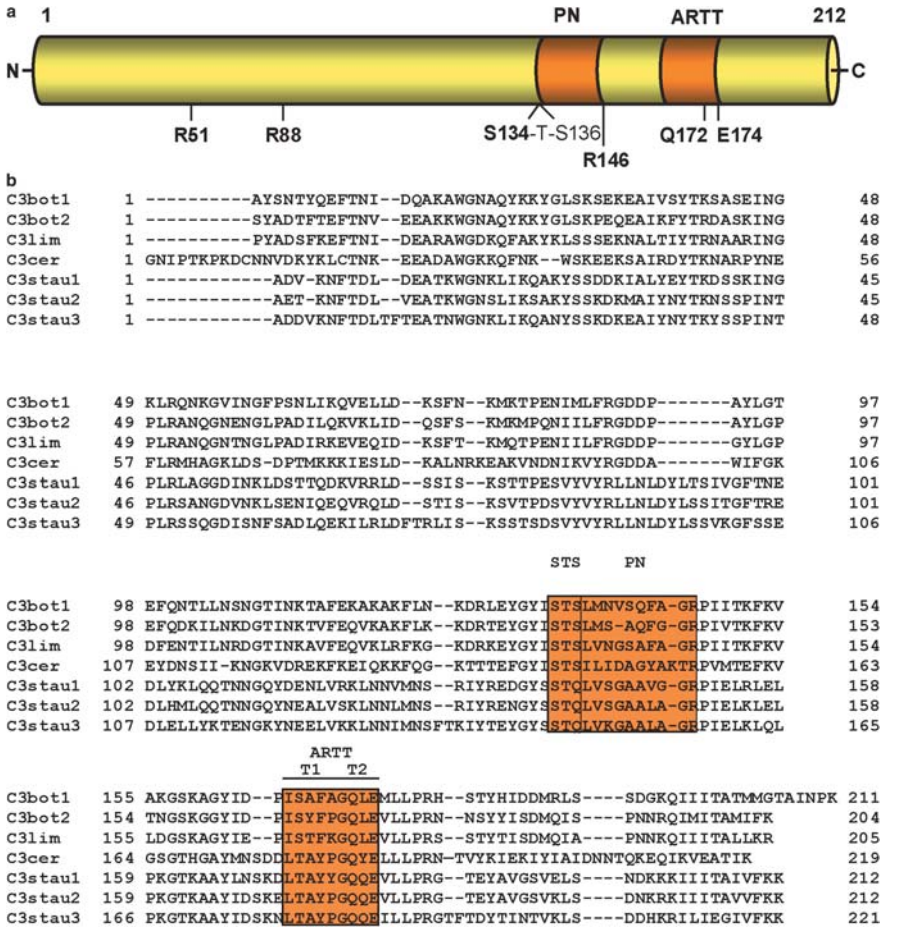
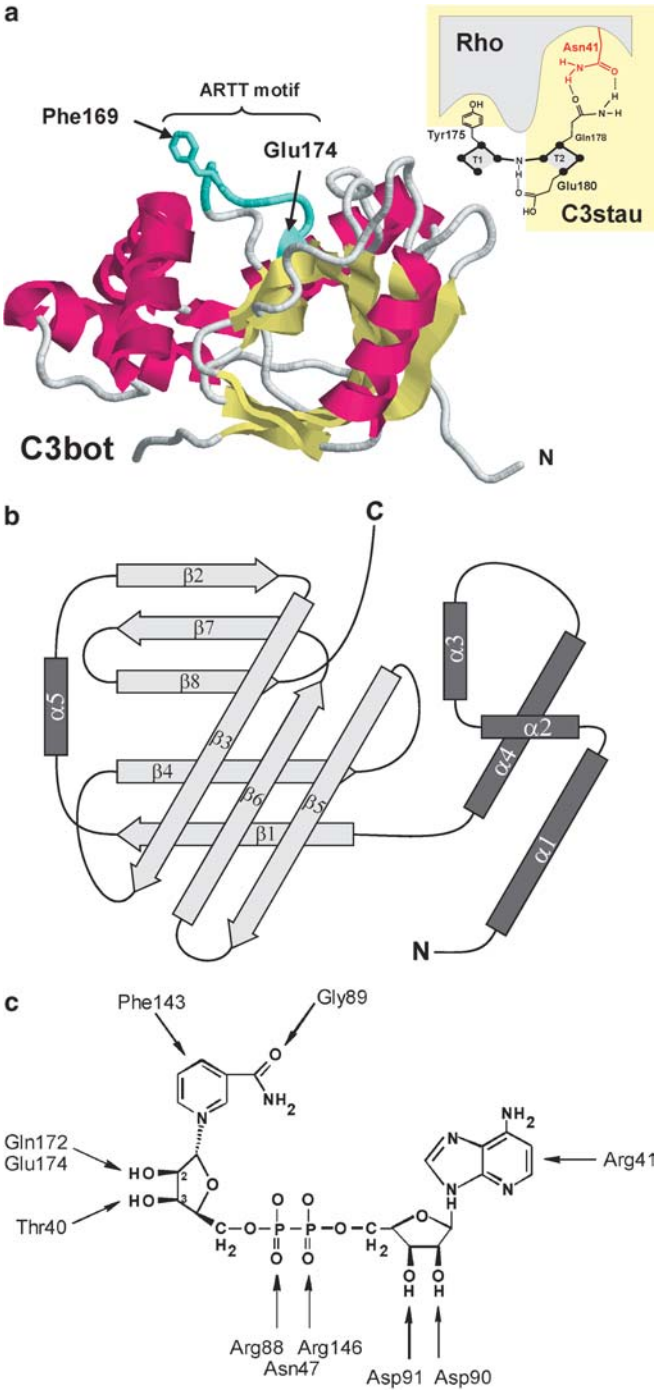


Fig. 1 Structure of C3 transferase. **a** Scheme of the primary sequence of C3bot showing the catalytic glutamate, residues of the ADP-ribosylation toxin-turn-turn (*ARTT)* loop, which is involved in protein substrate recognition, and PN-loop, which is involved in binding of phosphates of NAD. The STS-motif, which is conserved within the family of ADP-ribosyltransferases (C3stau isoforms possess an STQ motif), and several arginine residues involved in interaction with NAD are shown. **b** The sequences of the seven C3-like ADP-ribosyltransferases are given. *Clostridium botulinum* C3 transferase type I (C3bot1; Acc.Nr. P15879), *Clostridium botulinum* C3 transferase type II (C3bot2; Acc.Nr. Q00901), *Clostridium limosum* C3 transferase (C3lim; Acc.Nr. Q46134), *Bacillus cereus* C3 transferase (C3cer; Acc.Nr. AJ429241.1), *Staphylococcus aureus* C3 transferase A, B, and C (C3stau1; Acc.Nr P24121; C3stau2; Acc.Nr BAC22946, C3stau3; Acc.Nr;. NP_478345 ; also termed EDIN A,B,C).

stranded sheet (Han et al. 2001). After binding of NAD, a clasping movement ("Crab-claw" movement) of the transferase occurs which involves the structural elements α5, β2, β7 and β8, and α3 to enclose the substrate (Evans et al. 2003; Ménétrey et al. 2002) (Fig. 2). A novel structural motif, termed "ADP-ribosylating-toxin-turn-motif" (ARTT-motif) was proposed to be involved in the ADP-ribosylation reaction and suggested to be typical for all Rho-modifying C3-like transferases and also for the structurally related actin-modifying ADP-ribosyltransferases like *Clostridium botulinum* C2 toxin (Han and Tainer 2002). In C3bot, this motif consists of residues 167–170 (note that the counting is


a
Rho
Asn41
ARTT motif
Phe169
Glu174
Tyr175
Gln178
T1
T2
Glu180
C3stau
C3bot
N
b
C
β2
β7
β8
α5
α3
α2
β3
β4
α4
β6
β5
β1
α1
N
c
Phe143
Gly89
Gln172
Glu174
Thr40
Arg41
Arg88
Asn47
Arg146
Asp91
Asp90

without the signal sequence of 40 residues) for "turn 1" and residues 171–174 for "turn 2" (Figs. 1a, b, 2a). Turn 1 contains a conserved aromatic residue (C3bot^{Phe169}). The aromatic side chain points to the surface of the molecule and was suggested to recognize the substrate RhoA via hydrophobic patches around the acceptor amino acid residue Rho Asn41. The exchange of this critical residue to alanine or lysine in C3stau2 leads to a decreased binding of RhoA and abolishes the ADP-ribosyltransferase activity of these mutants (Wilde et al. 2002b). In the second turn, two residues (C3bot^{Gln172} and C3bot^{Glu174}) play important roles in enzyme activity. The side chain of C3bot^{Gln172} forms hydrogen bonds with the O2'-hydroxyl of the nicotinamide ribose (Fig. 1b), and is thought to be involved in the positioning of the ternary C3-NAD-Rho complex on turn 2. The side chain of C3bot^{Glu174} stabilizes the formation of an oxocarbenium transition state that arises during the enzymatic reaction (Han et al. 2001; Ménétrey et al. 2002; Oppenheimer 1994) (Fig. 2c). Exchange of either of these glutamine or glutamate residues to any other amino acids results in inhibition of the asparagine-modifying ADP-ribosyltransferase activity (Böhmer et al. 1996; Evans et al. 2003; Ménétrey et al. 2002; Saito et al. 1995; Wilde et al. 2002b).

Recently, it was reported that the ARTT-motif of C3bot undergoes conformational changes upon NAD-binding. While NAD is bound to C3bot, the complete motif is orientated into the inside of the protein and participates in NAD binding (Ménétrey et al. 2002). This form of NAD-binding was also observed in other ADP-ribosyltransferases (Bell and Eisenberg 1996; Choe et al. 1992; Han et al. 1999; Li et al. 1996). In C3stau2, the resting (NAD free) position of the ARTT loop is similar to the NAD bound state in C3bot. C3 exoenzymes produced by *S. aureus* are unique as compared to the other C3 transferases, because the loop before the ARTT loop possesses an additional two residues. These two residues are suggested to be responsible for positioning the ARTT loop of C3stau isoforms in a conformation identical not to that of the NAD-free C3bot1 structure but to that of the C3bot1-NAD-bound conformation. Therefore, conformational changes subsequent to NAD binding are minor in this region (Evans et al. 2003).

Deduced from the crystal structure of C3bot bound to NAD, a further structural element, termed phosphate-nicotinamide-loop (PN-loop), was suggested to be involved in NAD-binding (Fig. 1b). It covers residues C3bot 137–146 and is also located between strands β3–β4. At least one critical arginine within this loop is conserved in all C3-like ADP-ribosyltransferases. It was reported that this residue forms hydrogen bonds to the phosphate groups of NAD (Fig. 1b). Consequently, exchange to aspartate in C3bot or C3cer abolished both NAD glycohydrolase activity and ADP-ribosyltransferase activity of this mutant (Ménétrey et al. 2002; Wilde et al. 2003).

Enzyme activity and substrate specificity

Like typical ADP-ribosyltransferases, C3 exoenzymes split NAD into ADP-ribose and nicotinamide and transfer the ADP-ribose moiety onto Rho protein (Fig. 3). C3 modifies

Fig. 2 Structure of C3bot. **a** The crystal structure of C3bot shows the ADP-ribosylation toxin-turn-turn (*ARTT*) motif. This motif is suggested to be involved in the interaction with the protein substrate, e.g., RhoA (C3 was designed by Swiss-Pdb Viewer 3.7 (database code 1G24). The insert exhibits the putative interaction of C3stau with RhoA. Data are from Han et al. (Han et al. 2001). **b** Scheme of the folding of C3bot (see text). **c** Residues, which participate in the binding of NAD to C3bot. Note that the counting of residues is without the signal sequence.

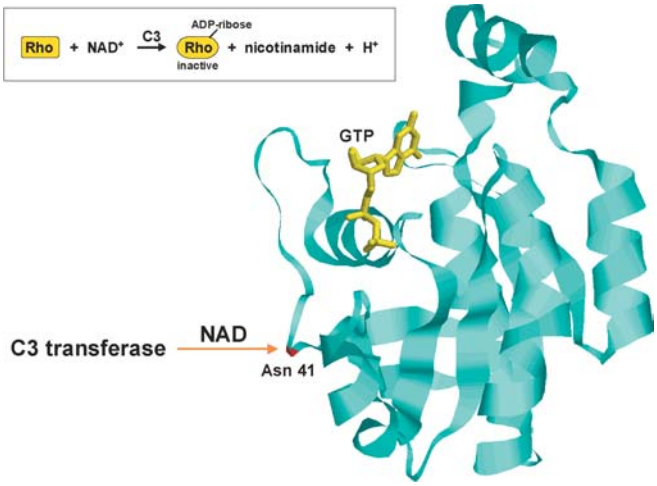


Fig. 3 ADP-Ribosylation of RhoA by C3. C3 transferases ADP-ribosylate RhoA at position Asn41. The acceptor amino acid is located in or very close to the so-called effector region (switch I-region) of RhoA. Rho structure was designed by Rasmol version 2.7.2 (database code 1FTN).

asparagine residue (Asn41) of the target protein (Sekine et al. 1989). This is unique for this family of ADP-ribosyltransferases. Many bacterial ADP-ribosyltransferases modify arginine residues, including cholera toxin, *Pseudomonas exoenzyme* S and T, and the actin modifying binary ADP-ribosyltransferases like *C. botulinum* C2 toxin. Cysteine is modified by pertussis toxin (Aktories 2000; Barbieri et al. 2002).

C3-like ADP-ribosyltransferases are characterized by their substrate specificity, because they modify preferentially Rho A, B, and C. Other Rho GTPases are poor substrates, including Rac and Cdc42. Recently, it was reported that the transferases C3stau1 and C3stau2 (EDIN A and EDIN B) from *S. aureus* ADP-ribosylate also RhoE and Rnd3. RhoE and Rnd3 are isoforms, identical except for a 15-residue N-terminal extension on Rnd3, that are antagonistic to RhoA (Guasch et al. 1998; Foster et al. 1996; Nobes et al. 1998; Riento et al. 2003). They bind GTP but lack GTPase activity. However, the kinetics of the modification of RhoE/Rnd3 is much more slower than that to modify RhoA (Wilde et al. 2001b).

The targets of C3 exoenzymes are molecular switches

RhoA, B, and C, the main targets of C3 exoenzymes, belong to the Rho subfamily of low molecular mass GTP-binding proteins, which comprises more than twenty related GTP-binding proteins, including RhoA, B, C, Rac1, 2, 3, Cdc42, RhoD, Rnd1, Rnd2 (RhoN), RhoE/Rnd3, RhoF (Rif), RhoG, RhoH (TTF) and TC10, TCL, Chp, and Wrch (Jaffe and Hall 2002; Nagata et al. 1998; Ridley 2000; Wennerberg and Der 2004). Most of them, e.g., the prototypes RhoA, B, C, Rac, and Cdc42 cycle between an activated GTP-bound form and an inactive GDP-bound form (Fig. 4). The exchange is tightly controlled by regulating proteins: (a) guanine nucleotide exchange factors (GEFs; more than 60 have been identified) which activate Rho by promoting the exchange of GDP to GTP, (b) GTPase-

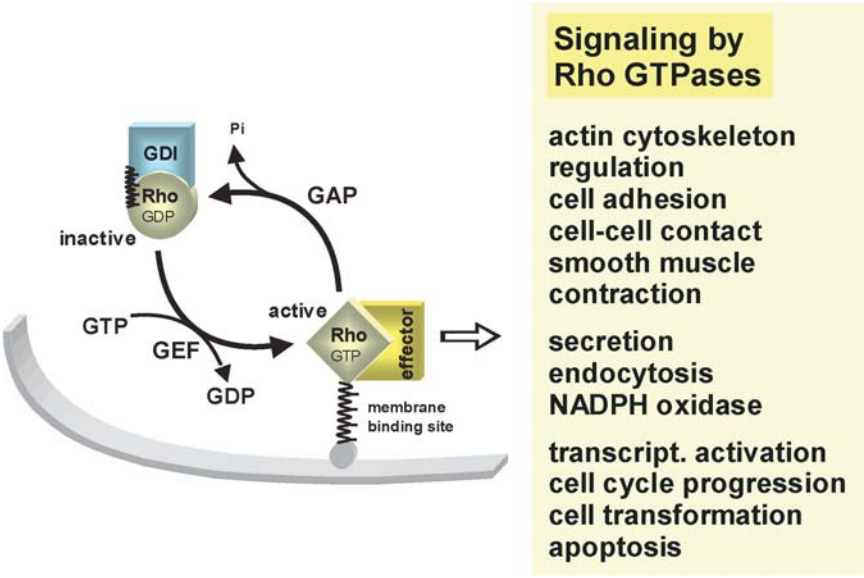


Fig. 4 RhoA GTPase cycle. Rho GTPases are inactive in the GDP bound form and activated by GDP/GTP exchange, which is facilitated by guanine nucleotide exchange factors (*GEFs*). In the active form RhoA interacts with a large array of effectors to induce various cellular effects indicated. The active form of RhoA is terminated by hydrolysis of the bound GTP, which is facilitated by GTPase-activating proteins (*GAPs*). The inactive form is extracted from the membrane by guanine nucleotide dissociation inhibitor (*GDI*), which keep the Rho GTPases in their inactive form in the cytosol.

activating proteins (GAPs; more than 70 have been identified), which inactivate Rho proteins by increasing their intrinsic rate of GTP-hydrolysis, and (c) guanine nucleotide dissociation inhibitors (GDIs; only three are known), which sequester the isoprenylated Rho proteins in the cytosol. The active GTP-bound form of Rho GTPases, which is mostly located at the cell membrane, interacts with multiple cellular effectors, including different protein kinases, lipid kinases, phospholipases and a still growing number of adaptor proteins, involved in a large array of distinct cellular functions, including regulation of the cytoskeleton (Burridge and Wennerberg 2004), cell and smooth muscle contraction, phagocytosis, polarity, activation of transcription, cell cycle progression, and cell transformation (Bishop and Hall 2000; Etienne-Manneville and Hall 2002; Jaffe and Hall 2002; Wennerberg and Der 2004).

Rho GTPases have been identified to be the preferred target of several other bacterial toxins and effectors. They can be activated by deamidation (*E. coli* cytotoxic necrotizing factors, CNF1, CNF2, and CNFy) (Flatau et al. 1997; Hoffmann et al. 2004; Schmidt et al. 1997) and by transglutamination (*Bordetella* dermonecrotizing toxin DNT) (Masuda et al. 2000) at Gln63/61 in Rho and Rac/Cdc42, respectively. Moreover, Rho GTPases are activated by *Salmonella* SopEs, which possess GEF activity and mimic the regulatory functions of endogenous activators (Hardt et al. 1998). An inactivation of Rho GTPases is caused by mono-O-glucosylation by the large clostridial cytotoxins, including toxins A and B of *Clostridium difficile* (Just et al. 1995b), lethal toxin from *Clostridium sordellii* (Just et al. 1996), and α-toxin from *Clostridium novyi* (Selzer et al. 1996). *Yersinia* YopE (von Pawel-Rammingen et al. 2000), *Salmonella* SptP (Fu and Galán 1999), or *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* ExoS (Goehring et al. 1999) inactivate Rho GTPases by mimicking en-

dogenous GAP activity. Moreover, it has been shown recently that *Yersinia* YopT acts as a protease, which cleaves Rho-GTPases at the C-terminal isoprenylated cysteine to inactivate the GTPase (Shao et al. 2002, 2003).

Functional consequences of the ADP-ribosylation of Rho

The ADP-ribosylation of RhoA (B, C) occurs at asparagine-41 (Sekine et al. 1989), which is part of or at least located in close vicinity to the switch-1 region (residues 28–40/41) of the GTPase (Fig. 3). The modification renders Rho biologically inactive (Paterson et al. 1990). The switch-1 region adopts different conformations depending on the nucleotide bound to the GTPase and is the molecular basis for the conduction of signals downstream. The inactivation of Rho by C3 exoenzyme-catalyzed ADP-ribosylation can be easily monitored by redistribution of actin filaments and depolymerization of stress fibers (Chardin et al. 1989; Paterson et al. 1990; Wiegers et al. 1991). ADP-ribosylation of Rho has only minor effects on the nucleotide binding, intrinsic, and GAP-stimulated GTP hydrolase activity. Also binding of ADP-ribosylated Rho with effector proteins, e.g., protein kinase N or Rho kinase (Sehr et al. 1998) and phospholipase D (Genth et al. 2003b) is possible (Fig. 5). Moreover, ADP-ribosylated RhoA is still able to activate its effectors (Genth et al. 2003a). However, this activation appears to depend on the fact that it is already in the active form before ADP-ribosylation. ADP-ribosylation appears to prevent the conformational changes occurring with activation of Rho proteins (Genth et al. 2003b). In line with this notion is the finding that activation of ADP-ribosylated Rho by GEFs (e.g., Lbc) is inhibited (Sehr et al. 1998) (Fig. 5b). Importantly, ADP-ribosylated RhoA seems to be trapped in the Rho/GDI-complex (Genth et al. 2003a). This was studied with a simple membrane filtration assay. The unmodified RhoA/GDI complex (mass ~45 kDa) is not able to pass a 30-kDa cut-off membrane filter. In the presence of phosphatidylinositol 4,5-bisphosphate (PIP2), the complex dissociates and releases RhoA (~20 kDa) and GDI (~24 kDa), which are able to pass the membrane filter. After ADP-ribosylation, however, PIP2 is not able to dissociate the RhoA/GDI-complex, indicating a tight interaction after modification of Asn41 by C3 (Fig. 5c). In line with the apparent increase in the affinity between modified RhoA and GDI, ADP-ribosylated RhoA is exclusively found in the cytosolic fraction of C3-treated cells. ADP-ribosylation reduces the binding of RhoA to membranes (Fujihara et al. 1997; Genth et al. 2003a). Taken together, inhibition of activation of ADP-ribosylated Rho by GEFs and sequestration of ADP-ribosylated RhoA in the GDI-complex are most likely the causes of C3-induced blockade of Rho-dependent signaling (Fig. 6).

Nonenzymatic actions of C3 exoenzymes

Recently, it was reported that C3-like exoenzymes interact directly with other small GTP-binding proteins not belonging to the Rho subfamily of GTPases. Wilde and coworkers showed that C3 exoenzymes from *C. botulinum* and *C. limosum* bind with high affinity (k_D ~10 nM, for *C. limosum*) to RalA (Wilde et al. 2002a) without modifying the GTPase by ADP-ribosylation. Ral is a member of the Ras subfamily of small GTPases and occurs in two isoforms, RalA and B, which share ~35% amino acid identity to RhoA. Ral has been implicated in several cellular processes, e.g., Ras-mediated cell transformation (Feig

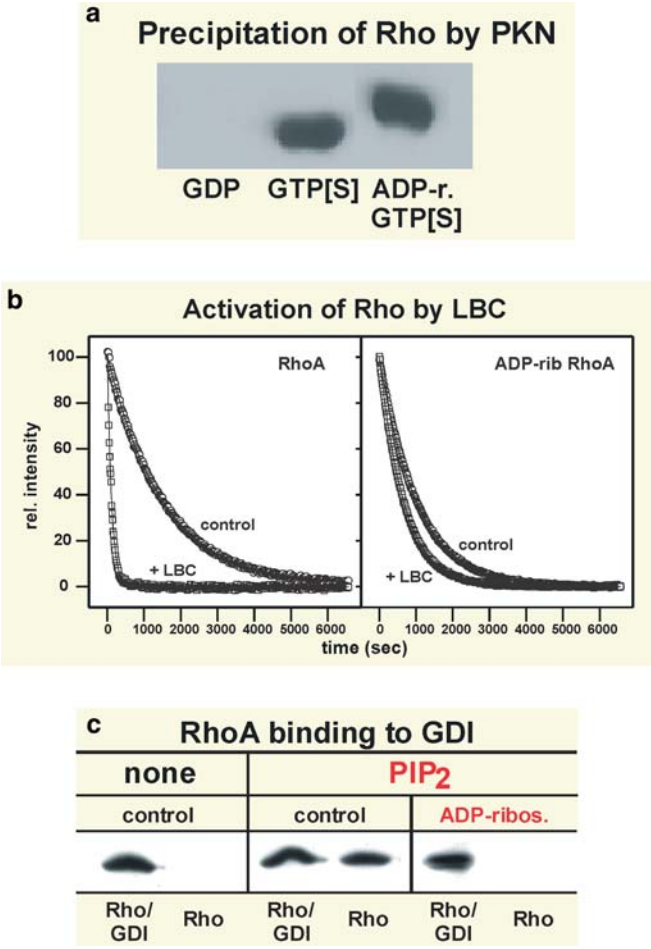


Fig. 5 Functional consequences of ADP-ribosylation of RhoA. **a** ADP-ribosylation of RhoA at Asn41 has no major effect on the interaction of the GTPase with the RhoA effector protein kinase N (*PKN*). Under control conditions, only the active GTP-form (here the GTPγS-form) but not the inactive GDP-form of RhoA is precipitated by the Rho-binding domain (*RBD*) of protein kinase N (*PKN*). In the experiment shown, this RBD-domain was coupled to Sepharose beads and used for precipitation. After ADP-ribosylation, which can be monitored by the shift of RhoA to an apparent higher molecular mass, RhoA is still able to interact with PKN (data from Sehr et al. 1998). **b** ADP-ribosylation decreases the rate of activation by the GEF protein LBC. The activation of RhoA was followed by the release of the fluorescently labeled mantGDP from RhoA to allow binding of GTP. Therefore, activation of RhoA causes decrease in fluorescence. Pretreatment of RhoA with C3 reduces the rate of RhoA activation (data from Sehr et al. 1998). **c** ADP-ribosylation increases the binding of RhoA to GDI. In the cytosol, Rho is in a complex with GDI. Therefore, only the complex is detected by gel or membrane filtration. Under control conditions phosphatidylinositol bisphosphate (*PIP2*) causes dissociation of this complex. Accordingly, Rho released from the complex is detected. After ADP-ribosylation PIP2 is not able to induce dissociation of the complex. Therefore, ADP-ribosylated Rho stays in the cytosol in a complex with GDI. (Data from Genth et al. 2003a).

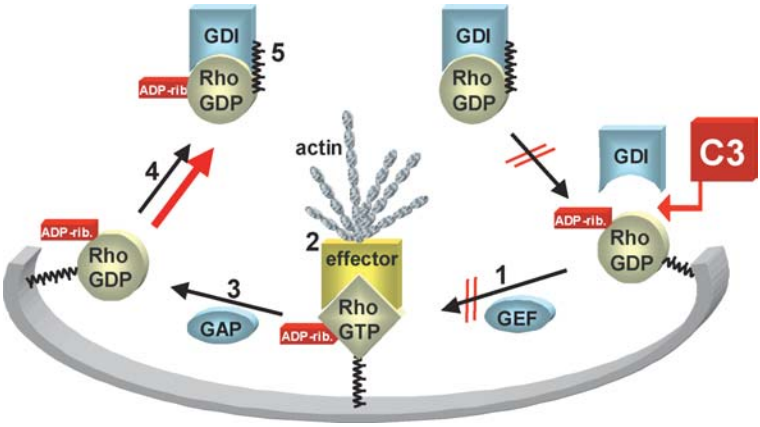


Fig. 6 Summary of the functional consequences of the ADP-ribosylation of RhoA by C3. RhoA is ADP-ribosylated by C3 in the GDI-free form. *1* ADP-Ribosylation inhibits the activation of RhoA by GEF. *2* ADP-ribosylated Rho is still able to interact at least with some effectors such as kinases. *3* The nucleotide binding and the GTP hydrolysis is almost not affected by ADP-ribosylation. *4* ADP-ribosylation decreases membrane-binding of RhoA. *5* Binding of ADP-ribosylated RhoA to GDI is increased. Therefore, ADP-ribosylated RhoA will remain in the inactive form in the cytosol.

et al. 1996; Urano et al. 1996), cytoskeleton rearrangement (Jullien-Flores et al. 1995; Ohta et al. 1999; Park and Weinberg 1995), and vesicle trafficking, e.g., by regulating the exocyst via binding to sec5 (Moskalenko et al. 2001). Ral acts on phospholipase D1 (PLD1) (Jiang et al. 1995; Luo et al. 1998) and it is suggested that both RalA and PLD1 modulate receptor endocytosis and vesicle transport. Binding of C3 to RalA inhibits its ADP-ribosyltransferase activity to modify RhoA (Fig. 7). Similarly, interaction of C3 with RalA reduces the ability of the GTPase to activate PLD1 in vitro, suggesting that the binding of the exoenzyme to Ral occurs in a region of the GTPase, which is important for the interaction with its effectors. Moreover, interaction of C3 with Ral prevents glucosylation of Ral by *Clostridium sordellii* lethal toxin in intact cells (Wilde et al. 2002a). Because glucosylation of Ral occurs in the functionally important switch-1 region, it is likely that interaction of C3 with this region also affects Ral functions in intact cells. Such a sequestration of Ral might be relevant at high concentration of C3, which can be achieved by microinjection or overexpression of C3 (see below). In contrast to the exoenzymes from *C. botulinum*, *C. limosum*, and *B. cereus*, the transferase C3stau2 from *S. aureus* is not capable of binding to RalA.

Recently another C3 effect, which is independent of the ADP-ribosyltransferase activity has been reported. It is well-known that Rho proteins regulate neurite outgrowth (see below). Several studies showed that C3 prevent neurite retraction induced by activated RhoA (see below). Surprisingly, Ahnert-Hilger and coworkers found that C3bot but not other C3 exoenzymes promote the axonal growth and branching independent of the enzyme activity (Ahnert-Hilger et al. 2004). Moreover, this effect depended on the extracellular application of the exoenzyme. Intracellularly expressed C3bot did not induce axon growth. They propose a novel neurotrophic function of C3bot independent of its transferase activity.

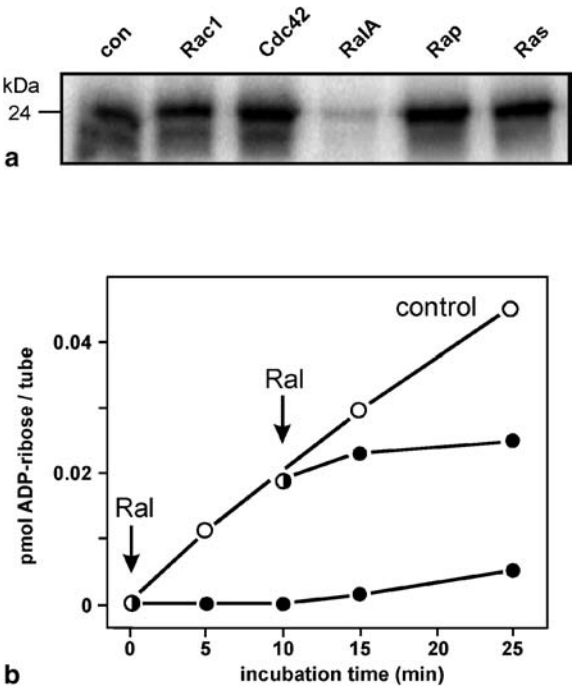


Fig. 7 Ral protein inhibits C3-induced ADP-ribosylation of RhoA. **a** RhoA was ADP-ribosylated by C3 with [^{32}P]NAD in the presence of various small GTPases (Rac, Cdc42, Ras, Rap, and Ral). Only Ral inhibited the ADP-ribosylation of RhoA. **b** Time course of ADP-ribosylation of RhoA in the presence and absence of Ral. Ral caused an immediate inhibition of the modification of RhoA. (Data from Wilde et al. 2002a).

Pathophysiological role of C3

Although much is known about the cellular functions of Rho GTPases, the roles of C3-like transferases in pathogenicity are not at all understood (Fig. 8). An action of C3 exoenzymes on the immune system of the eukaryotic target organism is most likely. Some of these effects have been already mentioned. Inhibition of immune cell functions including cytotoxicity of lymphocytes (Lang et al. 1992), adhesion (Nemoto et al. 1996), migration and invasion of lymphocytes (Stam et al. 1998; Verschueren et al. 1997), and leukocytes (Laudanna et al. 1996, 1997) by C3bot have been demonstrated. Rho GTPases have been proven to be important components of signal pathways used by antigen receptors, cytokine, and chemotaxins receptors to regulate the immune response (Heath and Holifield 1991; Henning and Cantrell 1998; Laudanna et al. 1996; Prepens et al. 1996; Price et al. 1995; Wojciak-Stothard et al. 1998). Moreover, Rho proteins participate in the barrier functions of epithelial cells (Nusrat et al. 1995; Vouret-Craviari et al. 1998) and in wound healing (Santos et al. 1997). However, considering the poor cell accessibility of C3 exoenzymes, an important question remains: how do these specific and potent agents get to their site of action? At least two possibilities are feasible. Recently, it was shown that pore-forming toxins appear to act as a delivery system for bacterial proteins. Madden and coworkers (Madden et al. 2001) reported that *Streptococcus pyogenes* uses streptolysin O, a cholesterol-dependent cytolysin, to translocate *S. pyogenes* NAD-glycohydrolase SPN into the target cells. This method of target-specific translocation appears to be comparable with the type-III secretion system frequently found in gram negative bacteria. Considering the fact that many of the bacteria, which synthesize C3 exoenzymes, also produce pore-forming agents, it is feasible that a similar mechanism is functional with these pathogens.

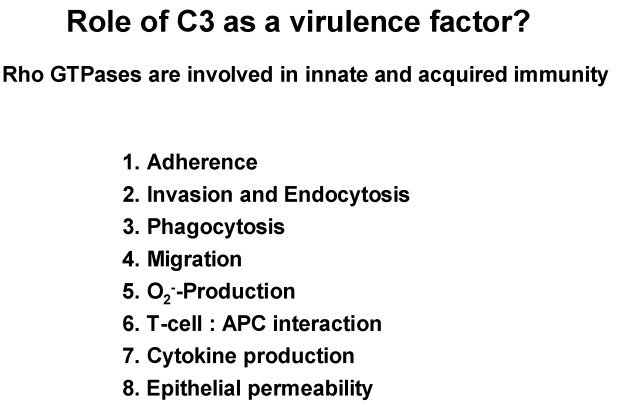


Fig. 8 The role of C3 as a virulence factor is not clear. However, Rho GTPases (including other members of the family) have been shown to be involved in several processes, which are important for innate and acquired immunity, including adhesion invasion and endocytosis of immune cells, migration, superoxide anion production (at least true for Rac), interaction of T-cells with antigen-presenting cells (*APC*), cytokine production, and epithelial permeability (see also Table 1).

The other possibility is based on recent findings that more pathogens than previously suggested are capable of invading host cells. This also applies to *Staphylococci* (Lowy 2000; Mempel et al. 2002). Moreover, it was suggested that the pathogens enter the cytosol of target cells (Bayles et al. 1998). This implies that the bacterium is able to release the Rho-ADP-ribosylating enzyme directly into the cytosol, where its protein target is localized (Wilde et al. 2001a; G.S. Chhatwal et al., unpublished data).

C3-like exoenzymes as pharmacological tools

Because C3-like ADP-ribosyltransferases are highly specific for Rho GTPases, they are established pharmacological and cell biological tools to study the physiological functions of Rho GTPases. On the other hand, C3-like ADP-ribosyltransferases lack a specific receptor binding and translocation domain and, therefore, their cellular uptake is rather poor. Due to this fact, the toxins have to be applied in high concentrations and/or for long incubation periods. Quite often the toxins were introduced into target cells by microinjection (Paterson et al. 1990; Watanabe et al. 1997). Another approach to overcome this problem is the use of C3-toxin chimeras. Aullo et al. (Aullo et al. 1993) fused C3bot to diphtheria toxin. DC3B, a fusion protein of C3 and the binding and translocation domain of diphtheria toxin, has a high affinity for the DT receptor, but apparently enters the target cell by a mechanism different from the typical pathway of diphtheria toxin. Because the action of this fusion toxin is limited to cells with receptors for diphtheria toxin, other chimeras were constructed. Very efficient is a fusion toxin, which is based on the binary C2 toxin from *Clostridium botulinum.* C2 toxin consists of the actin-ADP-ribosylating enzyme component C2I and the binding and translocation component C2II, which are both separated proteins (Aktories et al. 1986; Barth et al. 2002; Ohishi et al. 1980). After proteolytic activation of C2II, the activated C2II monomers oligomerize to heptamers (Barth et al. 2000) and upon binding of C2I to C2II, both components are internalized by receptor-mediated endocytosis. The N-terminal part (C2IN) of C2I, which alone is sufficient for the interaction with the binding component C2II, was fused to full-length ADP-ribosyltransferases C3lim or C3stau, respectively (Barth et al. 1998; Wilde et al. 2001b). This chimeric toxin increases the potency of C3 several hundred-fold (Meyer et al. 2000; Valderrama et al. 2000; Vischer et al. 2000; Wahl et al. 2000). Because the binding component of C2 toxin

appears to bind to complex and/or hybrid carbohydrates present on all vertebrate cells (Eckhardt et al. 2000), all these cells are sensitive towards the fusion toxin. Also the adaptor domain of the enzyme component and the binding component of iota toxin, which are similar to C2 toxin, have been effectively used for delivery of C3-like toxins into cells (Marvaud et al. 2002).

Recently, it was reported that C3bot could be transported into cells by adding short peptides to the C-terminal end of the exoenzyme. For this purpose short sequence of the human immunodeficiency virus transcription activator Tat was used (Park et al. 2003; Sauzeau et al. 2001). The transport of C3bot into cells can also be accomplished by fusing the third helix of the *Antennapedia* homeodomain protein from *Drosophila* to C3bot. In addition, short proline-rich peptides and highly basic arginine-rich peptides were C-terminally fused to C3 exoenzyme to facilitate the uptake of the transferase (Winton et al. 2002).

Another method to use C3-specific inhibition of Rho GTPases is the intracellular expression of the gene (Hilal-Dandan et al. 2004). Transgenes based on the thymocyte-specific lck promoter have been used for expression of C3 in thymus. Transgenic mice showed maturational, proliferative, and cell survival defects during T-cell development (Henning et al. 1997). Recently, a transgenic mouse model expressing C3 exoenzyme in a lens-specific manner was utilized (Maddala et al. 2004). Under transcriptional control of the lens-specific alphaA-crystallin promoter mice, expressing the C3 exoenzyme transgene, exhibited selective ocular defects, including cataract and microphthalmia (Rao et al. 2002).

In the following paragraph, cell biological effects, which are observed with the "C3 tool," are briefly summarized. Quite early studies showed that treatment of Vero cells with C3bot induces morphological changes characterized by rounding up of the cells with concomitant destruction of stress fibers (Chardin et al. 1989). The same findings were obtained with many other cell types and with different C3-like ADP-ribosyltransferases. Many of the classical studies on the functions of Rho GTPases performed in the laboratory of Alan Halls depended on the usage of C3 (Paterson et al. 1990; Ridley et al. 1992; Ridley and Hall 1992).

After C3 treatment, actin-staining by rhodamine-phalloidin usually reveals loss of stress fibers; treated cells remain in contact via small extensions. After removal of toxin from the medium, cells are still viable and the phenotype reverses after a few hours to days by neosynthesis of Rho (Barth et al. 1999). The reversal appears to be especially fast with the C3–C2I fusion toxin, which appears to be degraded rapidly (Barth et al. 1999). In many studies, C3 was shown to prevent the formation of stress fibers and focal adhesions induced by growth factor (Hall 1994; Mackay et al. 1997; Ridley and Hall 1992) or by integrins (Barry et al. 1997). In contrast, processes that are mediated by Rac or Cdc42, like lamellipodia and microspike formation in fibroblasts, are not affected by C3 (Kozma et al. 1995; Nobes and Hall 1995; Ridley and Hall 1992). Although C3bot induces rounding up in adherent cells, the toxins cause cell spreading in monocytes (Aepfelbacher et al. 1996) and in T cells (Borroto et al. 2000).

C3bot was frequently used as a tool to study the role of Rho in cell motility, migration and cell invasion (see Table 1). The exoenzyme was successfully applied in studies on the regulatory function of Rho GTPases in neurite outgrowth, branching, and neuroregeneration. Similarly the role of Rho GTPases in the control of phospholipase D and in phospholipid metabolism was studied with C3. The role of Rho GTPases in transcriptional activa-

Table 1 List of studies with C3 exoenzymes applied as cell biological and pharmacological tools

Rho in regulation of the actin cytoskeleton	Barry et al. 1997; Kozma et al. 1995; Nobes and Hall 1995; Ridley et al. 1992; Ridley and Hall 1992; Wiegers et al. 1991; Wilde et al. 2001b
Rho in cell adhesion, migration, chemotaxis and invasion	Adachi et al. 2001; Anderson et al. 2000; Kusama et al. 2001; Nguyen et al. 2002; Saurin et al. 2002; Strey et al. 2002; Takaishi et al. 1994; Worthylake et al. 2001; Yoshioka et al. 1998
Rho in cell cycle progression, cell division and cytokinesis	Eda et al. 2001; Fiorentini et al. 1998; Kato et al. 2001; Liberto et al. 2002; O'Connell et al. 1999; Olson et al. 1995; Takaishi et al. 1995
Rho and neurite growth	Dergham et al. 2002; Grunwald and Klein 2002; Jalink et al. 1994; Lehmann et al. 1999; Neumann et al. 2002; Niederost et al. 2002; Nishiki et al. 1990; Tigyi et al. 1996; Wahl et al. 2000; Yuan et al. 2003
Rho in endocytic and exocytic processes	Caron and Hall 1998; Doussau et al. 2000; Lamaze et al. 1996; Park et al. 2003; Schmalzing et al. 1995; Vögler et al. 1999
Rho, phospholipase D and phospholipid metabolism	Balboa and Insel 1995; Chong et al. 1994; Kanumilli et al. 2002; Kuribara et al. 1995; Meacci et al. 1999; Ren et al. 1996; Schmidt et al. 1996; Schmidt et al. 1999; Weernink et al. 2000; Xie et al. 2002
Rho and transcription and differentiation	Alberts et al. 1998; Chen et al. 2002; Dreikhausen et al. 2001; Hill et al. 1995; Lu et al. 2001; Mack et al. 2001; Sahai et al. 1998; Sotiropoulos et al. 1999; Su et al. 2001; Takemoto et al. 2002
Rho in signal transduction by heptahelical receptors	Buhl et al. 1995; Fromm et al. 1997; Gohla et al. 2000; Klages et al. 1999; Le Page et al. 2003; Mao et al. 1998a; 1998b; Nguyen et al. 2002; Ohmori et al. 2001; Sagi et al. 2001; Sah et al. 1996, 2000; Xie et al. 2002; Yamakawa et al. 2000
Rho and apoptosis	Bobak 1999; Dubreuil et al. 2003; Fiorentini et al. 1998; Hippenstiel et al. 2002; Mills et al. 1998; Reuveny et al. 2004

tion was another important topic, which was frequently addressed with C3 as a tool. Moreover, C3 was successfully employed in delineation of the role of Rho in the signaling of various heptahelical receptors to the actin cytoskeleton, phospholipases, and the nucleus via heterotrimeric G proteins. Especially important was C3 in studies on the functions of $G\alpha_{12/13.}$ Finally, C3 was studied in cell division and apoptosis (for references see Table 1).

Conclusion

Our information about C3 ADP-ribosyltransferases, their structures and mode of actions has increased enormously in recent years. We do understand a lot about the functional consequences of the ADP-ribosylation of Rho GTPases, when C3 is applied as a tool. However, additional potentially important functions and properties of C3 have been described recently, which are not clearly defined or not really understood at present, including the high affinity interaction with Ral and the action as a neurotrophic factor. Moreover, many open questions remain concerning the pathogenic role of C3 exoenzymes. With respect to further progress in the structure function analysis, it would be of major importance to solve the crystal structure of C3 in the complex with its Rho substrate. Hopefully, we will get this information in the near future.

References

Adachi T, Vita R, Sannohe S, Stafford S, Alam R, Kayaba H, Chihara J (2001) The functional role of rho and rho-associated coiled-coil forming protein kinase in eotaxin signaling of eosinophils. J Immunol 167:4609–4615

Aepfelbacher M, Essler M, Huber E, Czech A, Weber PC (1996) Rho is a negative regulator of human monocyte spreading. J Immunol 157:5070–5075

Ahnert-Hilger G, Holtje M, Grosse G, Pickert G, Mucke C, Nixdorf-Bergweiler B, Boquet P, Hofmann F, Just I (2004) Differential effects of Rho GTPases on axonal and dendritic development in hippocampal neurones. J Neurochem 90:9–18

Aktories K (1997a) Bacterial toxins that target Rho proteins. J Clin Invest 99:827–829

Aktories K (1997b) Rho proteins: targets for bacterial toxins. Trends Microbiol 5:282–288

Aktories K (2000) Bacterial protein toxins as tools in cell biology and pharmacology. In: Cossart P, Boquet P, Normark S, Rappuoli R (eds) Cellular microbiology. ASM Press, Washington, pp221–237

Aktories K, Bärmann M, Ohishi I, Tsuyama S, Jakobs KH, Habermann E (1986) Botulinum C2 toxin ADP-ribosylates actin. Nature 322:390–392

Aktories K, Weller U, Chhatwal GS (1987) Clostridium botulinum type C produces a novel ADP-ribosyltransferase distinct from botulinum C2 toxin. FEBS Lett 212:109–113

Aktories K, Rösener S, Blaschke U, Chhatwal GS (1988) Botulinum ADP-ribosyltransferase C3. Purification of the enzyme and characterization of the ADP-ribosylation reaction in platelet membranes. Eur J Biochem 172:445–450

Aktories K, Braun U, Rösener S, Just I, Hall A (1989) The rho gene product expressed in E. coli is a substrate of botulinum ADP-ribosyltransferase C3. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 158:209–213

Aktories K, Mohr C, Koch G (1992) Clostridium botulinum C3 ADP-ribosyltransferase. Curr Top Microbiol Immunol 175:115–131

Alberts AS, Geneste O, Treisman R (1998) Activation of SRF-regulated chromosomal templates by Rho-family GTPases requires a signal that also induces H4 hyperacetylation. Cell 92:475–487

Anderson SI, Hotchin NA, Nash GB (2000) Role of the cytoskeleton in rapid activation of CD11b/CD18 function and its subsequent downregulation in neutrophils. J Cell Sci 113(15):2737–2745

Aullo P, Giry M, Olsnes S, Popoff MR, Kocks C, Boquet P (1993) A chimeric toxin to study the role of the 21 kDa GTP binding protein rho in the control of actin microfilament assembly. EMBO J 12:921–931

Balboa MA, Insel PA (1995) Nuclear phospholipase D in Madin-Darby canine kidney cells—Guanosine 5'-O-(thiotriphosphate)-stimulated activation is mediated by RhoA and is downstream of protein kinase C. J Biol Chem 270:29843–29847

Barbieri JT, Riese MJ, Aktories K (2002) Bacterial toxins that modify the actin cytoskeleton. Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol 18:315–344

Barry ST, Flinn HM, Humphries MJ, Critchley DR, Ridley AJ (1997) Requirement for Rho in integrin signalling. Cell Adhes Commun 4:387–398

Barth H, Hofmann F, Olenik C, Just I, Aktories K (1998) The N-terminal part of the enzyme component (C2I) of the binary *Clostridium botulinum* C2 toxin interacts with the binding component C2II and functions as a carrier system for a Rho ADP-ribosylating C3-like fusion toxin. Infect Immun 66:1364–1369

Barth H, Olenik C, Sehr P, Schmidt G, Aktories K, Meyer DK (1999) Neosynthesis and activation of Rho by *Escherichia coli* cytotoxic necrotizing factor (CNF1) reverse cytopathic effects of ADP-ribosylated Rho. J Biol Chem 274:27407–27414

Barth H, Blöcker D, Behlke J, Bergsma-Schutter W, Brisson A, Benz R, Aktories K (2000) Cellular uptake of *Clostridium botulinum* C2 toxin requires oligomerization and acidification. J Biol Chem 275:18704–18711

Barth H, Blöcker D, Aktories K (2002) The uptake machinery of clostridial actin ADP-ribosylating toxins—a cell delivery system for fusion proteins and polypeptide drugs. Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch Pharmacol 366:501–512

Bayles KW, Wesson CA, Liou LE, Fox LK, Bohach GA, Trumble WR (1998) Intracellular Staphylococcus aureus escapes the endosome and induces apoptosis in epithelial cells. Infect Immun 66:336–342

Bell CE, Eisenberg D (1996) Crystal structure of diphtheria toxin bound to nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide. Biochemistry 35:1137–1149

Bishop AL, Hall A (2000) Rho GTPases and their effector proteins. Biochem J 348:241–255

Bobak DA (1999) Clostridial toxins: Molecular probes of Rho-dependent signaling and apoptosis. Mol Cell Biochem 193:37–42

Böhmer J, Jung M, Sehr P, Fritz G, Popoff M, Just I, Aktories K (1996) Active site mutation of the C3-like ADP-ribosyltransferase from *Clostridium limosum*—analysis of glutamic acid 174. Biochemistry 35:282–289

Boquet P, Munro P, Fiorentini C, Just I (1998) Toxins from anaerobic bacteria: specificity and molecular mechanisms of action. Curr Opin Microbiol 1:66–74

Borroto A, Gil D, Delgado P, Vicente-Manzanares M, Alcover A, Sanchez-Madrid F, Alarcon B (2000) Rho regulates T cell receptor ITAM-induced lymphocyte spreading in an integrin-independent manner. Eur J Immunol 30:3403–3410

Braun U, Habermann B, Just I, Aktories K, Vandekerckhove J (1989) Purification of the 22 kDa protein substrate of botulinum ADP-ribosyltransferase C3 from porcine brain cytosol and its characterization as a GTP-binding protein highly homologous to the rho gene product. FEBS Lett 243:70–76

Buhl AM, Johnson NL, Dhanasekaran N, Johnson GL (1995) $G\alpha_{12}$ and $G\alpha_{13}$ stimulate Rho-dependent stress fiber formation and focal adhesion assembly. J Biol Chem 270:24631–24634

Burridge K, Wennerberg K (2004) Rho and Rac take center stage. Cell 116:167–179

Caron E, Hall A (1998) Identification of two distinct mechanisms of phagocytosis controlled by different Rho GTPases. Science 282:1717–1721

Chardin P, Boquet P, Madaule P, Popoff MR, Rubin EJ, Gill DM (1989) The mammalian G protein rho C is ADP-ribosylated by Clostridium botulinum exoenzyme C3 and affects actin microfilament in Vero cells. EMBO J 8:1087–1092

Chen LY, Zuraw BL, Liu FT, Huang S, Pan ZK (2002) IL-1 receptor-associated kinase and low molecular weight GTPase RhoA signal molecules are required for bacterial lipopolysaccharide-induced cytokine gene transcription. J Immunol 169:3934–3939

Choe S, Bennett MJ, Fujii G, Curmi PMG, Kantardjieff KA, Collier RJ, Eisenberg D (1992) The crystal structure of diphtheria toxin. Nature 357:216–222

Chong LD, Traynor-Kaplan A, Bokoch GM, Schwartz MA (1994) The small GTP-binding protein Rho regulates a phosphatidylinositol 4-phosphate 5-kinase in mammalian cells. Cell 79:507–513

Dergham P, Ellezam B, Essagian C, Avedissian H, Lubell WD, McKerracher L (2002) Rho signaling pathway targeted to promote spinal cord repair. J Neurosci 22:6570–6577

Doussau F, Gasman S, Humeau Y, Vitiello F, Popoff M, Boquet P, Bader M-F, Poulain B (2000) A Rho-related GTPase is involved in Ca^{2+}-dependent neurotransmitter exocytosis. J Biol Chem 275:7764–7779

Dreikhausen U, Varga G, Hofmann F, Barth H, Aktories K, Resch K, Szamel M (2001) Regulation by rho family GTPases of IL-1 receptor-induced signaling: C3-like chimeric toxin and Clostridium difficile toxin B inhibit signaling pathways involved in IL-2 gene expression. Eur J Immmunol 31:1610–1619

Dubreuil CI, Winton MJ, McKerracher L (2003) Rho activation patterns after spinal cord injury and the role of activated Rho in apoptosis in the central nervous system. J Cell Biol 162:233–243

Eckhardt M, Barth H, Blöcker D, Aktories K (2000) Binding of *Clostridium botulinum* C2 toxin to asparagine-linked complex and hybrid carbohydrates. J Biol Chem 275:2328–2334

Eda M, Yonemura S, Kato T, Watanabe N, Ishizaki T, Madaule P, Narumiya S (2001) Rho-dependent transfer of Citron-kinase to the cleavage furrow of dividing cells. J Cell Sci 114:3273–3284

Etienne-Manneville S, Hall A (2002) Rho GTPases in cell biology. Nature 420:629–635

Evans HR, Sutton JM, Holloway DE, Ayriss J, Shone CC, Acharya KR (2003) The crystal structure of C3stau2 from Staphylococcus aureus and its complex with NAD. J Biol Chem 278:45924–45930

Feig LA, Urano T, Cantor S (1996) Evidence for a Ras/Ral signaling cascade. Trends Biochem Sci 21:438–441

Fiorentini C, Gauthier M, Donelli G, Boquet P (1998) Bacterial toxins and the Rho GTP-binding protein: what microbes teach us about cell regulation. Cell Death Differ 5:720–728

Flatau G, Lemichez E, Gauthier M, Chardin P, Paris S, Fiorentini C, Boquet P (1997) Toxin-induced activation of the G protein p21 Rho by deamidation of glutamine. Nature 387:729–733

Foster R, Hu K-Q, Lu Y, Nolan KM, Thissen J, Settleman J (1996) Identification of a novel human Rho protein with unusual properties: GTPase deficiency and in vivo farnesylation. Mol Cell Biol 16:2689–2699

Fromm C, Coso OA, Montaner S, Xu N, Gutkind JS (1997) The small GTP-binding protein Rho links G protein-coupled receptors and $G\alpha_{12}$ to the serum response element and to cellular transformation. Proc Natl Acad Sci 94:10098–10103

Fu Y, Galán JE (1999) A *Salmonella* protein antagonizes Rac-1 and Cdc42 to mediate host-cell recovery after bacterial invasion. Nature 401:293–297

Fujihara H, Walker LA, Gong MC, Lemichez E, Boquet P, Somlyo AV, Somlyo AP (1997) Inhibition of RhoA translocation and calcium sensitization by in vivo ADP-ribosylation with the chimeric toxin DC3B. Mol Biol Cell 8:2437–2447

Genth H, Gerhard R, Maeda A, Amano M, Kaibuchi K, Aktories K, Just I (2003a) Entrapment of Rho ADP-ribosylated by Clostridium botulinum C3 exoenzyme in the Rho-GDI-1 complex. J Biol Chem 278:28523–28527

Genth H, Schmidt M, Gerhard R, Aktories K, Just I (2003b) Activation of phospholipase D1 by ADP-ribosylated RhoA. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 302:127–132

Goehring U-M, Schmidt G, Pederson KJ, Aktories K, Barbieri JT (1999) The N-terminal domain of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* exoenzyme S is a GTPase-activating protein for Rho GTPases. J Biol Chem 274:36369–36372

Gohla A, Schultz G, Offermanns S (2000) Role for G_{12}/G_{13} in agonist-induced vascular smooth muscle cell contraction. Circ Res 87:221–227

Grunwald IC, Klein R (2002) Axon guidance: receptor complexes and signaling mechanisms. Curr Opin Neurobiol 12:250–259

Guasch RM, Scambler P, Jones GE, Ridley AJ (1998) RhoE regulates actin cytoskeleton organization and cell migration. Mol Cell Biol 18:4761–4771

Hall A (1994) Small GTP-binding proteins and the regulation of the actin cytoskeleton. Annu Rev Cell Biol 10:31–54

Han S, Tainer JA (2002) The ARTT motif and a unified structural understanding of substrate recognition in ADP-ribosylating bacterial toxins and eukaryotic ADP-ribosyltransferases. Int J Med Microbiol 291:523–529

Han S, Craig JA, Putnam CD, Carozzi NB, Tainer JA (1999) Evolution and mechanism from structures of an ADP-ribosylating toxin and NAD complex. Nat Struct Biol 6:932–936

Han S, Arvai AS, Clancy SB, Tainer JA (2001) Crystal structure and novel recognition motif of Rho ADP-ribosylating C3 exoenzyme from *Clostridium botulinum*: Structural insights for recognition specificity and catalysis. J Mol Biol 305:95–107

Hardt W-D, Chen L-M, Schuebel KE, Bustelo XR, Galán JE (1998) S. typhimurium encodes an activator of Rho GTPases that induces membrane ruffling and nuclear responses in host cells. Cell 93:815–826

Heath JP, Holifield BF (1991) Cell locomotion: new research tests old ideas on membrane and cytoskeletal flow. Cell Motil Cytoskeleton 18:245–257

Henning SW, Cantrell DA (1998) GTPases in antigen receptor signalling. Curr Opin Immunol 10:322–329

Henning SW, Galandrini R, Hall A, Cantrell DA (1997) The GTPase Rho has a critical regulatory role in thymus development. EMBO J 16:2397–2407

Hilal-Dandan R, Means CK, Gustafsson AB, Morissette MR, Adams JW, Brunton LL, Heller BJ (2004) Lysophosphatidic acid induces hypertrophy of neonatal cardiac myocytes via activation of Gi and Rho. J Mol Cell Cardiol 36:481–493

Hill CS, Wynne J, Treisman R (1995) The Rho family GTPases RhoA, Rac1, and CDC42Hs regulate transcriptional activation by SRF. Cell 81:1159–1170

Hippenstiel S, Schmeck B, N'Guessan PD, Seybold J, Krüll M, Preissner K, Von Eichel-Streiber C, Suttorp N (2002) Rho protein inactivation induced apoptosis of cultured human endothelial cells. Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol 283:L830–838

Hoffmann C, Pop M, Leemhuis J, Schirmer J, Aktories K, Schmidt G (2004) The Yersinia pseudotuberculosis cytotoxic necrotizing factor (CNFY) selectively activates RhoA. J Biol Chem 279(16):16026–10632

Inoue S, Sugai M, Murooka Y, Paik S-Y, Hong Y-M, Ohgai H, Suginaka H (1991) Molecular cloning and sequencing of the epidermal cell differentiation inhibitor gene from Staphylococcus aureus. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 174:459–464

Jaffe AB, Hall A (2002) Rho GTPases in transformation and metastasis. Adv Cancer Res 84:57–80

Jalink K, Van Corven EJ, Hengeveld T, Morii N, Narumiya S, Moolenaar WH (1994) Inhibition of lysophosphatidate- and thrombin-induced neurite retraction and neuronal cell rounding by ADP ribosylation of the small GTP-binding protein Rho. J Cell Biol 126:801–810

Jiang H, Luo J-Q, Urano T, Frankel P, Lu Z, Foster DA, Feig LA (1995) Involvement of Ral GTPase in v-Src-induced phospholipase D activation. Nature 378:409–412

Jullien-Flores V, Dorseuil O, Romero F, Letourneur F, Saragosti S, Berger R, Tavitian A, Gacon G, Camonis JH (1995) Bridging Ral GTPase to Rho pathways—RLIP76, a Ral effector with CDC42/Rac GTPase-activating protein activity. J Biol Chem 270:22473–22477

Just I, Mohr C, Schallehn G, Menard L, Didsbury JR, Vandekerckhove J, van Damme J, Aktories K (1992) Purification and characterization of an ADP-ribosyltransferase produced by *Clostridium limosum*. J Biol Chem 267:10274–10280

Just I, Selzer J, Jung M, van Damme J, Vandekerckhove J, Aktories K (1995a) Rho-ADP-ribosylating exoenzyme from *Bacillus cereus*—purification, characterization and identification of the NAD-binding site. Biochemistry 34:334–340

Just I, Selzer J, Wilm M, Von Eichel-Streiber C, Mann M, Aktories K (1995b) Glucosylation of Rho proteins by *Clostridium difficile* toxin B. Nature 375:500–503

Just I, Selzer J, Hofmann F, Green GA, Aktories K (1996) Inactivation of Ras by *Clostridium sordellii* lethal toxin-catalyzed glucosylation. J Biol Chem 271:10149–10153

Just I, Hofmann F, Genth H, Gerhard R (2001) Bacterial protein toxins inhibiting low-molecular-mass GTP-binding proteins. Int J Med Microbiol 291:243–250

Kanumilli S, Toms NJ, Venkateswarlu K, Mellor H, Roberts PJ (2002) Functional coupling of rat metabotropic glutamate 1a receptors to phospholipase D in CHO cells: involvement of extracellular Ca2+, protein kinase C, tyrosine kinase and Rho-A. Neuropharmacology 42:1–8

Kato T, Watanabe N, Morishima Y, Fujita A, Ishizaki T, Narumiya S (2001) Localization of a mammalian homolog of diaphanous, mDia1, to the mitotic spindle in HeLa cells. J Cell Sci 114:775–784

Klages B, Brandt U, Simon MI, Schultz G, Offermanns S (1999) Activation of G_{12}/G_{13} results in shape change and Rho/Rho-kinase-mediated myosin light chain phosphorylation in mouse platelets. J Cell Biol 144:745–754

Kozma R, Ahmed S, Best A, Lim L (1995) The Ras-related protein Cdc42Hs and bradykinin promote formation of peripheral actin microspikes and filopodia in Swiss 3T3 fibroblasts. Mol Cell Biol 15:1942–1952

Kuribara H, Tago K, Yokozeki T, Sasaki T, Takai Y, Morii N, Narumiya S, Katada T, Kanaho Y (1995) Synergistic activation of rat brain phospholipase D by ADP-ribosylation factor and *rho*A p21, and its inhibition by *Clostridium botulinum* C3 exoenzyme. J Biol Chem 270:25667–25671

Kusama T, Mukai M, Iwasaki T, Tatsuta M, Matsumoto Y, Akedo H, Nakamura H (2001) Inhibition of epidermal growth factor-induced RhoA translocation and invasion of human pancreatic cancer cells by 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl-coenzyme a reductase inhibitors. Cancer Res 61:4885–4891

Lamaze C, Chuang TH, Terlecky LJ, Bokoch GM, Schmid SL (1996) Regulation of receptor-mediated endocytosis by Rho and Rac. Nature 382:177–179

Lang P, Guizani L, Vitté-Mony I, Stancou R, Dorseuil O, Gacon G, Bertoglio J (1992) ADP-ribosylation of the *ras*-related, GTP-binding protein RhoA inhibits lymphocyte-mediated cytotoxicity. J Biol Chem 267:11677–11680

Laudanna C, Campbell JJ, Butcher EC (1996) Role of Rho in chemoattractant-activated leukocyte adhesion through integrins. Science 271:981–983

Laudanna C, Campbell JJ, Butcher EC (1997) Elevation of intracellular cAMP inhibits RhoA activation and integrin-dependent leukocyte adhesion induced by chemoattractants. J Biol Chem 272:24141–24144

Lehmann M, Fournier A, Selles-Navarro I, Dergham P, Sebock A, Leclerc N, Tigyi G, McKerracher, L (1999). Inactivation of Rho signaling pathway promotes CNS axon regeneration. J Neurosci 19:7537–7547

Le Page SL, Bi Y, Williams JA (2003) CCK-A receptor activates RhoA through G alpha 12/13 in NIH3T3 cells. Am J Physiol Cell Physiol 285:C1197–C1206

Li M, Dyda F, Benhar I, Pastan I, Davies DR (1996) Crystal structure of the catalytic domain of Pseudomonas exotoxin A complexed with a nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide analog: Implications for the activation process and for ADP ribosylation. Proc Natl Acad Sci 93:6902–6906

Liberto M, Cobrinik D, Minden A (2002) Rho regulates p21(CIP1), cyclin D1, and checkpoint control in mammary epithelial cells. Oncogene 21:1590–1599

Lowy FD (2000) Is *Staphylococcus aureus* an intracellular pathogen? Trends Microbiol 8:341–344

Lu J, Landerholm TE, Wei JS, Dong XR, Wu SP, Liu X, Nagata K, Inagaki M, Majesky MW (2001) Coronary smooth muscle differentiation from proepicardial cells requires rhoA-mediated actin reorganization and p160 rho-kinase activity. Dev Biol 240:404–418

Luo J-Q, Liu X, Frankel P, Rotunda T, Ramos M, Flom J, Jiang H, Feig LA, Morris AJ, Kahn RA, Foster DA (1998) Functional association between Arf and RalA in active phospholipase D complex. Proc Natl Acad Sci 95:3632–3637

Mack CP, Somlyo AV, Hautmann M, Somlyo AP, Owens GK (2001) Smooth muscle differentiation marker gene expression is regulated by RhoA-mediated actin polymerization. J Biol Chem 276:341–347

Mackay DJG, Esch F, Furthmayr H, Hall A (1997) Rho- and Rac-dependent assembly of focal adhesion complexes and actin filaments in permeabilized fibroblasts: an essential role for Ezrin/radixin/Moesin proteins. J Cell Biol 138:927–938

Maddala R, Deng PF, Costello JM, Wawrousek EF, Zigler JS, Rao VP (2004) Impaired cytoskeletal organization and membrane integrity in lens fibers of a Rho GTPase functional knockout transgenic mouse. Lab Invest 84:679–692

Madden JC, Ruiz N, Caparon M (2001) Cytolysin-mediated translocation (CMT): a functional equivalent type III secretion in gram-positive bacteria. Cell 104:143–152

Mao J, Yuan H, Xie W, Simon MI, Wu D (1998a) Specific involvement of G proteins in regulation of serum response factor-mediated gene transcription by different receptors. J Biol Chem 273:27118–27123

Mao J, Yuan H, Xie W, Wu D (1998b) Guanine nucleotide exchange factor GEF115 specifically mediates activation of Rho and serum response factor by the G protein α subunit Gα13. Proc Natl Acad Sci 95:12973–12976

Marvaud JC, Stiles BG, Chenal A, Gillet D, Gibert M, Smith LA, Popoff MR (2002) *Clostridium perfringens* iota toxin. Mapping of the Ia domain involved in docking with Ib and cellular internalization. J Biol Chem 277:43659–43666

Masuda M, Betancourt L, Matsuzawa T, Kashimoto T, Takao T, Shimonishi Y, Horiguchi Y (2000) Activation of Rho through a cross-link with polyamines catalyzed by *Bordetella* dermonecrotizing toxin. EMBO J 19:521–530

Meacci E, Vasta V, Moorman JP, Bobak DA, Bruni P, Moss J, Vaughan M (1999) Effect of Rho and ADP-ribosylation factor GTPases on phospholipase D activity in intact human adenocarcinoma A549 cells. J Biol Chem 274:18605–18612

Mempel M, Schnopp C, Hojka M, Fesq H, Weidinger S, Schaller M, Korting HC, Ring J, Abeck D (2002) Invasion of human keratinocytes by Staphylococcus aureus and intracellular bacterial persistence represent haemolysin-independent virulence mechanisms that are followed by features of necrotic and apoptotic keratinocyte cell death. Br J Dermatol 146:943–951

Ménétrey J, Flatau G, Stura EA, Charbonnier J-B, Gas F, Teulon J-M, Le Du M-H, Boquet P, Ménez A (2002) NAD binding induces conformational changes in Rho ADP-ribosylating *Clostridium botulinum* C3 exoenzyme. J Biol Chem 277:30950–30957

Meyer DK, Olenik C, Hofmann F, Barth H, Leemhuis J, Brünig I, Aktories K, Nörenberg W (2000) Regulation of somatodendritic $GABA_A$ receptor channels in rat hippocampal neurons: Evidence for a role of the small GTPase Rac1. J Neurosci 20:6743–6751

Mills JC, Stone NL, Erhardt J, Pittman RN (1998) Apoptotic membrane blebbing is regulated by myosin light chain phosphorylation. J Cell Biol 140:627–636

Moskalenko S, Henry DO, Rosse C, Mirey G, Camonis JH, White MA (2001) The exocyst is a Ral effector complex. Nat Cell Biol 4:66–72

Nagata K, Puls A, Futter C, Aspenstrom P, Schaefer E, Nakata T, Hirokawa N, Hall A (1998) The MAP kinase kinase kinase MLK2 co-localizes with activated JNK along microtubules and associates with kinesin superfamily motor KIF3. EMBO J 17:149–158

Narumiya S, Morii N (1993) *rho* gene products, botulinum C3 exoenzyme and cell adhesion. Cell Signal 5:9–19

Nemoto E, Yu YJ, Dennert G (1996) Cell surface ADP-Ribosyltransferase regulates lymphocyte function-associated molecule-1 (LFA-1) function in T cells. J Immunol 157:3341–3349

Nemoto Y, Namba T, Kozaki S, Narumiya S (1991) Clostridium botulinum C3 ADP-ribosyltransferase gene. J Biol Chem 266:19312–19319

Neumann H, Schweigreiter R, Yamashita T, Rosenkranz K, Wekerle H, Barde YA (2002) Tumor necrosis factor inhibits neurite outgrowth and branching of hippocampal neurons by a rho-dependent mechanism. J Neurosci 22:854–862

Nguyen QD, Faivre S, Bruyneel E, Rivat C, Seto M, Endo T, Mareel M, Emami S, Gespach C (2002) RhoA- and RhoD-dependent regulatory switch of Galpha subunit signaling by PAR-1 receptors in cellular invasion. FASEB J 16:565–576

Niederost B, Oertle T, Fritsche J, McKinney RA, Bandtlow CE (2002) Nogo-A and myelin-associated glycoprotein mediate neurite growth inhibition by antagonistic regulation of RhoA and Rac1. J Neurosci 22:10368–10376

Nishiki T, Narumiya S, Morii N, Yamamoto M, Fujiwara M, Kamata Y, Sakaguchi G, Kozaki S (1990) ADP-ribosylation of the rho/rac proteins induces growth inhibition, neurite. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 167:265–272

Nobes CD, Hall A (1995) Rho, Rac, and Cdc42 GTPases regulate the assembly of multimolecular focal complexes associated with actin stress fibers, lamellipodia, and filopodia. Cell 81:53–62

Nobes CD, Lauritzen I, Mattei M-G, Paris S, Hall A, Chardin P (1998) A new member of the Rho family, Rnd1, promotes disassembly of actin filament structures and loss of cell adhesion. J Cell Biol 141:187–197

Nusrat A, Giry M, Turner JR, Colgan SP, Parkos CA, Carnes D, Lemichez E, Boquet P, Madara JL (1995) Rho protein regulates tight junctions and perijunctional actin organization in polarized epithelia. Proc Natl Acad Sci 92:10629–10633

O'Connell CB, Wheatley SP, Ahmed S, Wang YL (1999) The small GTP-binding protein Rho regulates cortical activities in cultured cells during division. J Cell Biol 144:305–313

Ohishi I, Iwasaki M, Sakaguchi G (1980) Purification and characterization of two components of botulinum C2 toxin. Infect Immun 30:668–673

Ohmori T, Yatomi Y, Okamoto H, Miura Y, Rile G, Satoh K, Ozaki Y (2001) G(i)-mediated Cas tyrosine phosphorylation in vascular endothelial cells stimulated with sphingosine 1-phosphate: possible involvement in cell motility enhancement in cooperation with Rho-mediated pathways. J Biol Chem 276:5274–5280

Ohta Y, Suzuki N, Nakamura S, Hartwig JH, Stossel TP (1999) The small RalA targets filamin to induce filopodia. Proc Natl Acad Sci 96:2122–2128

Olson MF, Ashworth A, Hall A (1995) An essential role for Rho, Rac, and Cdc42 GTPases in cell cycle progression through G_1. Science 269:1270–1272

Oppenheimer NJ (1994) NAD hydrolysis: Chemical and enzymatic mechanisms. Mol Cell Biochem 138:245–251

Park J, Kim JS, Jung KC, Lee HJ, Kim JI, Kim J, Lee JY, Park JB, Choi SY (2003) Exoenzyme Tat-C3 inhibits association of zymosan particles, phagocytosis, adhesion, and complement binding in macrophage cells. Mol Cell 16:216–223

Park SH, Weinberg RA (1995) A putative effector of Ral has homology to Rho/Rac GTPase activating proteins. Oncogene 11:2349–2355

Paterson HF, Self AJ, Garrett MD, Just I, Aktories K, Hall A (1990) Microinjection of recombinant $p21^{rho}$ induces rapid changes in cell morphology. J Cell Biol 111:1001–1007

Popoff MR, Boquet P, Gill DM, Eklund MW (1990) DNA sequence of exoenzyme C3, an ADP-ribosyltransferase encoded by Clostridium botulinum C and D phages. Nucleic Acids Res 18:1291–1291

Prepens U, Just I, Von Eichel-Streiber C, Aktories K (1996) Inhibition of FcεRI-mediated activation of rat basophilic leukemia cells by *Clostridium difficile* toxin B (monoglucosyltransferase). J Biol Chem 271:7324–7329

Price LS, Norman JC, Ridley AJ, Koffer A (1995) The small GTPases Rac and Rho as regulators of secretion in mast cells. Curr Biol 5:68–73

Quilliam LA, Lacal J-C, Bokoch GM (1989) Identification of rho as a substrate for botulinum toxin C3-catalyzed ADP-ribosylation. FEBS Lett 247:221–226

Rao V, Wawrousek E, Tamm ER, Zigler S Jr (2002) Rho GTPase inactivation impairs lens growth and integrity. Lab Invest 82:231–239

Ren X-D, Bokoch GM, Traynor-Kaplan A, Jenkins GH, Anderson RA, Schwartz MA (1996) Physical association of the small GTPase Rho with a 68-kDa phosphatidylinositol 4-phosphate 5-kinase in swiss 3T3 cells. Mol Biol Cell 7:435–442

Reuveny M, Heller H, Bengal E (2004) RhoA controls myoblast survival by inducing the phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase-Akt signaling pathway. FEBS Lett 569:129–134

Ridley A (2000) Rho. In: Hall A, (ed) GTPases. Oxford University Press, Oxford, pp. 89–136

Ridley AJ, Hall A (1992) The small GTP-binding protein rho regulates the assembly of focal adhesions and actin stress fibers in response to growth factors. Cell 70:389–399

Ridley AJ, Hall A (2004) Snails, Swiss, and serum: the solution for Rac 'n' Rho. Cell 116:S23–5, 2

Ridley AJ, Paterson HF, Johnston CL, Diekmann D, Hall A (1992) The small GTP-binding protein rac regulates growth factor-induced membrane ruffling. Cell 70:401–410

Riento K, Guasch RM, Garg R, Jin B, Ridley AJ (2003) RhoE binds to ROCK I and inhibits downstream signaling. Mol Cell Biol 23:4219–4229

Rubin EJ, Gill DM, Boquet P, Popoff MR (1988) Functional modification of a 21-Kilodalton G protein when ADP-ribosylated by exoenzyme C3 of Clostridium botulinum. Mol Cell Biol 8:418–426

Sagi SA, Seasholtz TM, Kobiashvili M, Wilson BA, Toksoz D, Brown JH (2001) Physical and functional interactions of Galphaq with Rho and its exchange factors. J Biol Chem 276:15445–15452

Sah VP, Hoshijima M, Chien KR, Brown JH (1996) Rho is required for $G\alpha_q$ and α_1-adrenergic receptor signaling in cardiomyocytes—dissociation of Ras and Rho pathways. J Biol Chem 271:31185–31190

Sah VP, Seasholtz TM, Sagi SA, Brown JH (2000) The role of Rho in G protein-coupled receptor signal transduction. Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol 40:459–489

Sahai E, Alberts AS, Treisman R (1998) RhoA effector mutants reveal distinct effector pathways for cytoskeletal reorganization, SRF activation, and transformation. EMBO J 17:1350–1361

Saito Y, Nemoto Y, Ishizaki T, Watanabe N, Morii N, Narumiya S (1995) Identification of Glu^{173} as the critical amino acid residue for the ADP-ribosyltransferase activity of *Clostridium botulinum* C3 exoenzyme. FEBS Lett 371:105–109

Santos MF, McCormack SA, Guo Z, Okolicany J, Zheng Y, Johnson LR, Tigyi G (1997) Rho proteins play a critical role in cell migration during the early phase of mucosal restitution. J Clin Invest 100:216–225

Saurin JC, Fallavier M, Sordat B, Gevrey JC, Chayvialle JA, Abello J (2002) Bombesin stimulates invasion and migration of Isreco1 colon carcinoma cells in a Rho-dependent manner. Cancer Res 62:4829–4835

Sauzeau V, Le Mellionnec E, Bertoglio J, Scalbert E, Pacaud P, Loirand G (2001) Human urotensin II-induced contraction and arterial smooth muscle cell proliferation are mediated by RhoA and Rho-kinase. Circ Res 88:1102–1104

Schmalzing G, Richter HP, Hansen A, Schwarz W, Just I, Aktories K (1995) Involvement of the GTP binding protein Rho in constitutive endocytosis in *Xenopus laevis* oocytes. J Cell Biol 130:1319–1332

Schmidt G, Sehr P, Wilm M, Selzer J, Mann M, Aktories K (1997) Gln63 of Rho is deamidated by *Escherichia coli* cytotoxic necrotizing factor 1. Nature 387:725–729

Schmidt M, Rümenapp U, Bienek C, Keller J, Von Eichel-Streiber C, Jakobs KH (1996) Inhibition of receptor signaling to phospholipase D by *Clostridium difficile* toxin B—role of Rho proteins. J Biol Chem 271:2422–2426

Schmidt M, Voss M, Weernink PA, Wetzel J, Amano M, Kaibuchi K, Jakobs KH (1999) A role for Rho-kinase in Rho-controlled phospholipase D stimulation by the m3 muscarinic acetylcholine receptor. J Biol Chem 274:14648–14654

Sehr P, Joseph G, Genth H, Just I, Pick E, Aktories K (1998) Glucosylation and ADP-ribosylation of Rho proteins—effects on nucleotide binding, GTPase activity, and effector-coupling. Biochemistry 37:5296–5304

Sekine A, Fujiwara M, Narumiya S (1989) Asparagine residue in the rho gene product is the modification site for botulinum ADP-ribosyltransferase. J Biol Chem 264:8602–8605

Selzer J, Hofmann F, Rex G, Wilm M, Mann M, Just I, Aktories K (1996) *Clostridium novyi* α-toxin-catalyzed incorporation of GlcNAc into Rho subfamily proteins. J Biol Chem 271:25173–25177

Shao F, Merritt PM, Bao Z, Innes RW, Dixon JE (2002) A *Yersinia* effector and a *Pseudomonas* avirulence protein define a family of cycteine proteases functioning in bacterial pathogenesis. Cell 109:575–588

Shao F, Vacratsis PO, Bao Z, Bowers KE, Fierke CA, Dixon JE (2003) Biochemical characterization of the *Yersinia* YopT protease: Cleavage site and recognition elements in Rho GTPases. Proc Natl Acad Sci 100:904–909

Sotiropoulos A, Gineitis D, Copeland J, Treisman R (1999) Signal-regulated activation of serum response factor is mediated by changes in actin dynamics. Cell 98:159–169

Stam JC, Michiels F, Van der Kammen RA, Moolenaar WH, Collard JG (1998) Invasion of T-lymphoma cells: cooperation between Rho family GTPases and lysophospholipid receptor signaling. EMBO J 17:4066–4074

Strey A, Janning A, Barth H, Gerke V (2002) Endothelial Rho signaling is required for monocyte transendothelial migration. FEBS Lett 517:261–266

Su LF, Knoblauch R, Garabedian MJ (2001) Rho GTPases as modulators of the estrogen receptor transcriptional response. J Biol Chem 276:3231–3237

Sugai M, Hashimoto K, Kikuchi A, Inoue S, Okumura H, Matsumota K, Goto Y, Ohgai H, Moriishi K, Syuto B, Yoshikawa K, Suginaka H, Takai Y (1992) Epidermal cell differentiation inhibitor ADP-ribosylates small GTP-binding proteins and induces hyperplasia of epidermis. J Biol Chem 267:2600–2604

Takaishi K, Sasaki T, Kato M, Yamochi W, Kuroda S, Nakamura T, Takeichi M, Takai Y (1994) Involvement of *Rho* p21 small GTP-binding protein and its regulator in the HGF-induced cell motility. Oncogene 9:273–279

Takaishi K, Sasaki T, Kameyama T, Tsukita S, Takai Y (1995) Translocation of activated *Rho* from the cytoplasm to membrane ruffling area, cell-cell adhesion sites and cleavage furrows. Oncogene 11:39–48

Takemoto M, Sun J, Hiroki J, Shimokawa H, Liao JK (2002) Rho-kinase mediates hypoxia-induced downregulation of endothelial nitric oxide synthase. Circulation 106:57–62

Tigyi G, Fischer DJ, Sebök A, Yang C, Dyer DL, Miledi R (1996) Lysophosphatidic acid-induced neurite retraction in PC12 cells: control by phosphoinositide-Ca^{2+} signaling and Rho. J Neurochem 66:537–548

Urano T, Emkey R, Feig LA (1996) Ral-GTPases mediate a distinct downstream signaling pathway from Ras that facilitates cellular transformation. EMBO J 15:810–816

Valderrama F, Luna A, Babia T, Martinez-Menarguez JA, Ballesta J, Barth H, Chaponnier C, Renau-Piqueras J, Egea G (2000) The golgi-associated COPI-coated buds and vesicles contain beta/gamma-actin. Proc Natl Acad Sci 97:1560–1565

Verschueren H, De Baetselier P, De Braekeleer J, Dewit J, Aktories K, Just I (1997) ADP-ribosylation of Rho-proteins with botulinum C3 exoenzyme inhibits invasion and shape changes of T-lymphoma cells. Eur J Cell Biol 73:182–187

Vischer UM, Barth H, Wollheim CB (2000) Regulated von willebrand factor secretion is associated with agonist-specific patterns of cytoskeletal remodeling in cultured endothelial cells. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol 20:883–891

Vögler O, Krummenerl P, Schmidt M, Jakobs KH, van Koppen CJ (1999) RhoA-sensitive trafficking of muscarinic acetylcholine receptors. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 288:36–42

von Pawel-Rammingen U, Telepnev MV, Schmidt G, Aktories K, Wolf-Watz H, Rosqvist R (2000) GAP activity of the *Yersinia* YopE cytotoxin specifically targets the Rho pathway: a mechanism for disruption of actin microfilament structure. Mol Microbiol 36:737–748

Vouret-Craviari V, Boquet P, Pouysségur J, Van Obberghen-Schilling E (1998) Regulation of the actin cytoskeleton by thrombin in human endothelial cells: Role of Rho proteins in endothelial barrier function. Mol Biol Cell 9:2639–2653

Wahl S, Barth H, Ciossek T, Aktories K, Mueller BK (2000) Ephrin-A5 induces collapse of growth cones by activating Rho and Rho kinase. J Cell Biol 149:263–270

Watanabe N, Madaule P, Reid T, Ishizaki T, Watanabe G, Kakizuka A, Saito Y, Nakao K, Jockusch BM, Naumiya S (1997) p140mDia, a mammalian homolog of *Drosophila* diaphanous, is a target protein fro Rho small GTPase and is a ligand for profilin. EMBO J 16:3044–3056

Weernink PA, Guo Y, Zhang C, Schmidt M, Von Eichel-Streiber C, Jakobs KH (2000) Control of cellular phosphatidylinositol 4,5-biphosphate levels by adhesion signals and Rho GTPases in NIH 3T3 fibroblasts involvement of both phosphatidylinositol-4-phosphate and phospholipase C. Eur J Biochem 267:5237–5246

Wennerberg K, Der CJ (2004) Rho-family GTPases: it's not only Rac and Rho (and I like it). J Cell Sci 117:1301–1312

Wiegers W, Just I, Müller H, Hellwig A, Traub P, Aktories K (1991) Alteration of the cytoskeleton of mammalian cells cultured in vitro by Clostridium botulinum C2 toxin and C3 ADP-ribosyltransferase. Eur J Cell Biol 54:237–245

Wilde C, Aktories K (2001) The Rho-ADP-ribosylating C3 exoenzyme from Clostridium botulinum and related C3-like transferases. Toxicon 39:1647–1660

Wilde C, Chhatwal GS, Aktories K (2001a) C3stau, a new member of the family of C3-like ADP-ribosyltransferases. Trends Microbiol 10:5–7

Wilde C, Chhatwal GS, Schmalzing G, Aktories K, Just I (2001b) A novel C3-like ADP-ribosyltransferase from *Staphylococcus aureus* modifying RhoE and Rnd3. J Biol Chem 276:9537–9542

Wilde C, Barth H, Sehr P, Han L, Schmidt M, Just I, Aktories K (2002a) Interaction of the Rho-ADP-ribosylating C3 exoenzyme with RalA. J Biol Chem 277:14771–14776

Wilde C, Just I, Aktories K (2002b) Structure-function analysis of the Rho-ADP-ribosylating exoenzyme C3stau2 from *Staphylococcus aureus*. Biochemistry 41:1539–1544

Wilde C, Vogelsgesang M, Aktories K (2003) Rho-specific *Bacillus cereus* ADP-ribosyltransferase C3cer cloning and characterization. Biochemistry 42:9694–9702

Winton MJ, Dubreuil CI, Lasko D, Leclerc N, McKerracher L (2002) Characterization of new cell permeable C3-like proteins that inactivate Rho and stimulate neurite outgrowth on inhibitory substrates. J Biol Chem 277:32820–32829

Wojciak-Stothard B, Entwistle A, Garg R, Ridley AJ (1998) Regulation of TNF-α-induced reorganization of the actin cytoskeleton and cell-cell junctions by Rho, Rac, and Cdc42 in human endothelial cells. J Cell Physiol 176:150–165

Worthylake RA, Lemoine S, Watson JM, Burridge K (2001) RhoA is required for monocyte tail retraction during transendothelial migration. J Cell Biol 154:147–160

Xie Z, Ho WT, Spellman R, Cai S, Exton JH (2002) Mechanisms of regulation of phospholipase D1 and D2 by the heterotrimeric G proteins G13 and Gq. J Biol Chem 277:11979–11986

Yamaguchi T, Hayashi T, Takami H, Ohnishi M, Murata T, Nakayama K, Asakawa K, Ohara M, Komatsuzawa H, Sugai M (2001) Complete nucleotide sequence of a *Staphylococcus aureus* exfoliative toxin B plasmid and identification of a novel ADP-ribosyltransferase, EDIN-C. Infect Immun 69:7760–7771

Yamakawa T, Tanaka S, Numaguchi K, Yamakawa Y, Motley ED, Ichihara S, Inagami T (2000) Involvement of Rho-kinase in angiotensin II-induced hypertrophy of rat vascular smooth muscle cells. Hypertension 35:313–318

Yoshioka K, Matsumura F, Akedo H, Itoh K (1998) Small GTP-binding protein Rho stimulates the actomyosin system, leading to invasion of tumor cells. J Biol Chem 273:5146–5154

Yuan XB, Jin M, Xu X, Song YQ, Wu CP, Poo MM, Duan S (2003) Signalling and crosstalk of Rho GTPases in mediating axon guidance. Nat Cell Biol 5:38–45

Rev Physiol Biochem Pharmacol (2004) 152:23–47
DOI 10.1007/s10254-004-0033-5

I. Just · R. Gerhard

Large clostridial cytotoxins

Published online: 21 September 2004

Abstract The large clostridial cytotoxins are a family of structurally and functionally related exotoxins from *Clostridium difficile* (toxins A and B), *C. sordellii* (lethal and hemorrhagic toxin) and *C. novyi* (α-toxin). The exotoxins are major pathogenicity factors which in addition to their in vivo effects are cytotoxic to cultured cell lines causing reorganization of the cytoskeleton accompanied by morphological changes. The exotoxins are single-chain protein toxins, which are constructed of three domains: receptor-binding, translocation and catalytic domain. These domains reflect the self-mediated cell entry via receptor-mediated endocytosis, translocation into the cytoplasm, and execution of their cytotoxic activity by an inherent enzyme activity. Enzymatically, the toxins catalyze the transfer of a glucosyl moiety from UDP-glucose to the intracellular target proteins which are the Rho and Ras GTPases. The covalent attachment of the glucose moiety to a conserved threonine within the effector region of the GTPases renders the Rho-GTPases functionally inactive. Whereas the molecular mode of cytotoxic effects is fully understood, the mechanisms leading to inflammatory processes in the context of disease (e.g., antibiotic-associated pseudomembranous colitis caused by *Clostridium difficile*) are less clear.

Abbreviations *CDAD: Clostridium difficile*-associated diarrhea · *C3:* ADP-ribosyltransferase C3 from *Clostridium botulinum* · *LCT:* Large clostridial cytotoxin · *TcdA: Clostridium difficile* toxin A · *TcdB: Clostridium difficile* toxin B · *TcsL: Clostridium sordellii* lethal toxin · *TcsH: Clostridium sordellii* hemorrhagic toxin · *TcnA: Clostridium novyi* alpha-toxin

I. Just (✉) · R. Gerhard
Institut für Toxikologie, Medizinische Hochschule Hannover, Carl-Neuberg-Str. 1, 30625 Hannover, Germany
e-mail: just.ingo@mh-hannover.de · Tel.: +49-511-5322914 · Fax: +49-511-5322879

Introduction

Large clostridial cytotoxins are a family of protein toxins put together on the basis of their cytotoxic activity, comparable enzyme activity, and same primary structure. Their cytotoxic activity is characterized by disaggregation of the actin cytoskeleton accompanied by cell rounding and formation of an arborized morphology. The family encompasses toxin A (TcdA) and toxin B (TcdB) from *Clostridium difficile*, the lethal (TcsL) and the hemorrhagic toxin (TcsH) from *Clostridium sordellii,* and the α-toxin (TcnA) from *Clostridium novyi.* The members are single-chain toxins with molecular masses of 250–308 kDa, autotransporters which mediate their own uptake into the target cells and exhibit transferase activity to covalently modify Rho- and Ras-GTPases. In contrast to their in vitro effects on the cytoskeleton of cultivated cells, the cytotoxins differ in their in vivo effects; they are major pathogenic factors which are causative for different diseases and clinical outcomes, respectively. Clinically most important is *C. difficile* which coproduces toxin A and toxin B, both causally involved in the antibiotic-associated diarrhea and the severe form, the pseudomembranous colitis (Bartlett 1994; Kelly and LaMont 1998; Kelly et al. 1994). Lethal toxin from *C. sordellii* is involved in diarrhea and enterotoxemia in domestic animals and in gas gangrene in human, whereas *C. novyi* α-toxin has been identified as causative agent for gas gangrene infections in human and animals (Hatheway 1990). The difference between comparable cytotoxic effects but different clinical features is likely based on the different organ targeting of the toxin-producing bacteria which colonize the gut or injured organs. Additional strain-specific pathogenic factors are most likely involved.

Because of their involvement in antibiotic-associated diarrhea and pseudomembranous colitis, toxins A and B from *C. difficile* are the best-characterized toxins of this family. The chief risk factor for pseudomembranous colitis is the exposure to antibiotics. Especially broad-spectrum antibiotics are thought to alter the normal microflora of the gut thereby allowing colonization and growth of *C. difficile*. The normal microflora seems to create an environment which is restrictive for *C. difficile* growth rather than to generate inhibitory factors (for reviews see Bartlett 2002; Kelly and LaMont 1998; Kelly et al. 1994; Mylonakis, Ryan et al. 2001; Stoddart and Wilcox 2002; Surawicz and McFarland 1999). In animal models, the toxins are able to induce all the symptoms of antibiotic-associated diarrhea and pseudomembranous colitis, i.e., secretory diarrhea, mucosal damage and inflammation of the mucosa (Lyerly et al. 1985; Triadafilopoulos et al. 1987, 1989). Based on these findings, both toxins have been classified as chief pathogenicity factors of *C. difficile*.

Since toxin A induces fluid accumulation in the ileum of animals and ileal explants, it was designated as enterotoxin. Toxin B, which does not possess direct toxic activity towards animal ileum (Lyerly et al. 1985; Triadafilopoulos et al. 1987), is about 100- to 1,000-fold more cytotoxic than toxin A to cultured cell lines and has therefore been named cytotoxin (Lyerly et al. 1982). The cytotoxic activity of toxins A and B differs only with respect to potency but not with respect to the cytotoxic feature. Both toxins induce shrinking and rounding of cultured cells, initially accompanied by formation of neurite-like retraction fibers. These retraction fibers disappear in the course of intoxication and the cells are completely rounded. In the terminal phase the cells partially detach. The morphological changes are accompanied by disaggregation of the actin cytoskeleton. The cell-spanning stress fibers disappear and the remainder of the actin filaments accumulates in the perinuclear space (Ciesielski-Treska et al. 1989; Fiorentini et al. 1989, 1990; Fiorenti-

ni and Thelestam 1991; Malorni et al. 1990; Siffert et al. 1993). The other members of the family of large clostridial cytotoxins, i.e., α-toxin, and lethal and hemorrhagic toxin, induce the same effects with some variations in detailed aspects (Bette et al. 1991; Ciesielski-Treska et al. 1991; Oksche et al. 1992; Popoff 1987).

Genetic organization of the toxins

The toxins of *C. difficile* (Barroso et al. 1990; Sauerborn and Von Eichel-Streiber and Sauerborn 1990; Von Eichel-Streiber et al. 1990, 1992a) and *C. sordellii* (Green et al. 1995) are encoded by the chromosomal DNA, whereas the gene of α-toxin from *C. novyi* (Hofmann et al. 1995; Schallehn et al. 1980) is phage-encoded. *C. difficile* toxins A and B are encoded by two separate genes which are part of a conserved chromosomal region called pathogenicity locus (PaLoc), having a size of 19.6 kb (Braun et al. 1996; Hammond and Johnson 1995). The PaLoc carries five genes *tcdA* to *E: tcdA* encodes for toxin A, *tcdB* for toxin B, *tcdD* (also known as *txeR*) for an RNA polymerase sigma factor required for the activation of toxin gene expression (Dupuy and Sonenshein 1998; Mani and Dupuy 2001) and *tcdE* for a holin-like pore-forming protein (Gründling et al. 2001; Hundsberger et al. 1997). The holin-like tcdE is postulated to permeabilize the clostridia during the stationary phase, thereby releasing toxins A and B (Mukherjee et al. 2002). This notion fits very well with the finding that the toxins do not possess a signal sequence which is in charge for a regulated export.

Although toxins A and B are usually coexpressed, variant toxinogenic strains exist which can be characterized by PCR ribotyping. The most-studied variant of *C. difficile* is a strain that only produces toxin B but not toxin A (A^-B^+) (Borriello et al. 1992; Depitre et al. 1993; Von Eichel-Streiber et al. 1995; Rupnik et al. 1998; Sambol et al. 2000). The basis for this is a deletion in the *tcdA* gene. In addition to toxins A and B, a third toxin, named CDT, is released by some strains (Geric et al. 2003; Perelle et al. 1997; Rupnik et al. 2003a). CDT is related to *Clostridium perfringens* iota toxin and is composed of two separate nonlinked components. The genes coding for both components are chromosomally located, but outside the PaLoc (Perelle et al. 1997; Popoff et al. 1988). The CDTb is the binding component which mediates the cell entry of the enzymatic component CDTa. CDTa exhibits ADP-ribosyltransferase activity to covalently modify cellular actin. ADP-ribosylated actin is incapable of polymerizing and thus results in complete destruction of the actin cytoskeleton. The role of CDT in pathogenesis has not been characterized yet.

Preparation of large clostridial toxins

The toxins are purified in a classical biochemical procedure. The purification steps are: growth of the clostridia under anaerobic conditions, ammonium sulfate precipitation of proteins from the culture supernatant, and ion exchange chromatography of the resolubilized proteins to separate toxin A from toxin B. Toxin A is further purified by using a thyreoglobulin affinity purification step. An affinity purification for toxin B is not available and only a subsequent gel permeation chromatography will improve the purity of toxin B to some degree. Lethal toxin from *C. sordellii* is purified analogous to toxin B, but with low yield and poor purity (Just et al. 1997; Krivan and Wilkins 1987; Moos and Von

Eichel-Streiber 2000; Von Eichel-Streiber et al. 1987). The master way to solve the problem of purity is the expression of recombinant toxins. In case of toxin B, the application of recombinant toxin B purified from an *E. coli* expression system was reported, but properties and purity of the recombinant toxin have not been mentioned (Pfeifer et al. 2003). In contrast to the *E. coli* expression system, toxin A preparation was reported from a *Bacillus megaterium* system (Burger et al. 2003). Recombinant toxin A is enzymatically more active than classically purified toxin A and differences in biological activity suggest the presence of biologically active contaminations in classically purified toxin A (R. Gerhard and I. Just, unpublished data).

For long-term storage, the LCT should be frozen at −80°C in the presence of 20% of glycerol. However, even correct long-term storage in the range of more than 6 months results in continuous decrease in activity. Repeated thawing and freezing should be strictly avoided because of dramatic loss of activity. For short-term storage, the toxins are stable at 4°C for 1–2 weeks, when the concentration is above 100 µg/ml.

Structure of the toxins

All large clostridial cytotoxins possess the same primary structure (Fig. 1). They are single-chain proteins which seem to exist in a monomeric form. Currently, three domains are

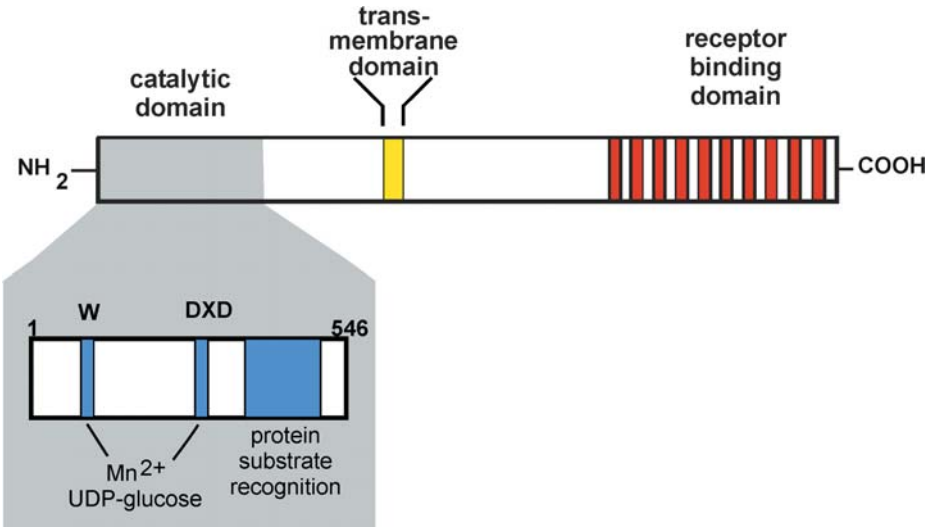


Fig. 1 Structure of the large clostridial toxins illustrated for toxin B. Toxin B is constructed of three functional domains. The receptor-binding domain is composed of repetitive oligopeptide elements commonly accepted as motif for binding to sugar structures. The possible multivalent binding to cell surface structures induces receptor-mediated endocytosis. A hydrophobic region exhibits a putative transmembrane domain which is thought to form a pore or channel, thereby allowing the catalytic domain to translocate into the cytoplasm. The catalytic domain executes the mono-glucosyltransferase activity to modify the Rho-GTPases. The first 546 residues of the N-terminus are the minimum size of the catalytic domain. The tryptophan-102 (*W*) and the D X D motif (residues 286–288) are involved in UDP-glucose cosubstrate binding through Mn^{2+} or Mg^{2+}. The C-terminal part (residues 408–468) of the catalytic domain covers the protein substrate recognition site.

assigned which reflect cell entry and biological activity. At the C-terminus, the receptor-binding domain is responsible for binding to and the uptake into the target cell. The intermediate part harbors the so-called transmembrane domain responsible for translocation of the toxin from the endosomes to cytoplasm. Finally, the N-terminally located catalytic domain exhibits mono-glucosyltransferase activity responsible for the modification of the intracellular target proteins. Only α-toxin possesses *N*-acetyl-glucosamine-transferase activity.

Receptor binding domain: The C-terminally located binding domain covers up to one third (in the case of toxin A) of the LCT molecule. Based on the primary sequence, it exhibits characteristic features which are described as repetitive peptide elements called combined repetitive oligopetides (CROPs) (Von Eichel-Streiber 1993; Von Eichel-Streiber et al. 1996). These CROPs consist of 20–22 or 50 amino acids. Most evident is the repetitive structure in the toxin A molecule which possesses 38 of these CROPs. The repeating units show homology with the carbohydrate-binding regions of glycosyltransferases from *Streptococcus mutans* (Von Eichel-Streiber and Sauerborn 1990; Von Eichel-Streiber et al. 1992b). This homology was the first hint that especially toxin A binds to cellular carbohydrate structures.

However, current pattern and motif scans using InterProScan (http://www.ebi. ac.uk/InterProScan/ EMBL-EBI), SMART (http://smart.embl-heidelberg.de/ EMBL) or Motif Scan (http://hits.isb-sib.ch/cgi-bin/PFSCAN/ ISREC) result in the proposals of putative cell wall binding repeats (CW). A CW repeat is 20 amino acid residues long and contains conserved aromatic residues and glycines. These repeats in multiple tandem copies are suggested to be responsible for the specific recognition of choline-containing cell-walls described for choline-binding proteins from *Streptococcus pneumonia* (Garcia et al. 1998; Rosenow et al. 1997). Similar but longer repeats were found in glucosyltransferases and glucan binding proteins from streptococci as mentioned above. A hint that the assignment of the C-terminal part as putative choline-binding may be of functional relevance is the finding that toxin A binds to nontoxicogenic *C. difficile* strains, thereby mediating binding of the clostridia to cells (P. Borriello, personal communication).

It is now generally accepted that the repetitive C-terminal region of the toxins is the receptor-binding domain. Four findings strongly argue for this notion:

1. The modular organization of this region (Von Eichel-Streiber et al. 1992b; Wren 1991).
2. The homology with the carbohydrate binding domain of bacterial proteins (Von Eichel-Streiber and Sauerborn 1990; Von Eichel-Streiber et al. 1992b).
3. The inhibition of the cytotoxic activity of toxin A by a monoclonal antibody recognizing an epitope of this domain (Frey and Wilkins 1992; Lyerly et al. 1986) and by a polyclonal antibody which selectively recognizes the C-terminal part of the toxin (Genth et al. 2000).
4. The sole receptor-binding domain functionally competes with the full-length toxin to delay the onset of cytotoxicity (Frisch et al. 2003).

Translocation domain: Based on secondary structure prediction, amino acid residues from about 1,030 to 1,100 are postulated to form a putative transmembrane-spanning region which is proposed to form a channel, thereby mediating the translocation of the toxin into the cytosol. However, the function of this putative domain has not been yet proven and it is only theoretically assigned.

Catalytic domain: Except for α-toxin all other large clostridial cytotoxins exhibit glucosyltransferase activity to glucosylate intracellular target proteins. They use the nucleotide sugar UDP-glucose as cosubstrate and transfer the glucose moiety to the target protein, the Rho-GTPases. α-toxin uses UDP-*N*-acetyl-glucosamine, thus, catalyzing glcNAcation of the Rho-GTPases. The minimal size of the functional catalytic domain spans the first 546 amino acids of the N-terminal part for toxin B and lethal toxin (Hofmann et al. 1997, 1998), whereas the catalytic domain of toxin A covers 659 residues (Faust et al. 1998). The essential structural element for enzyme activity is the so-called D-X-D motif, an amino acid sequence composed of aspartic acid-any amino acid-aspartic acid (Busch et al. 1998). This D-X-D motif, which is conserved in all clostridial cytotoxins, is present in various pro- and eukaryotic glycosyltransferases. UDP-glucose binding within the catalytic cleft of several eukaryotic glycosyltransferases is based on divalent metal ion-dependent coordination which structurally requires two adjacent aspartic acids, the D-X-D motif (Wiggins and Munro 1998). None of the aspartic acids, however, is identified to directly act as a catalytic amino acid (Boix et al. 2002). From the 3D structures of rabbit *N*-acetylglucosaminyltransferase and bovine beta1,4-galactosyltransferase, it can be deduced that one aspartate directly interacts with Mn^{2+} to further mediate UDP binding (Boeggeman and Quasb 2002; Unligil and Rini 2000; Unligil et al. 2000).

Mutational exchange of one of the aspartic acid residues results in a more than 1,000-fold decrease in transferase activity. Furthermore, mutant toxin loses its ability to be labeled with azido-UDP-glucose and decreased transferase activity cannot be rescued by an excess of manganese (Busch et al. 1998). In addition to the D-X-D motif, tryptophan-102 is also involved in binding of the cosubstrate UDP-glucose, and mutational exchange results in a dramatic decrease in transferase activity (Busch et al. 2000). These findings are important, not only for the understanding of the catalytic mechanism, but also as a basis for the generation of enzyme-deficient toxins (Fig. 1).

Cellular uptake

Toxins A and B are intracellularly acting cytotoxins which get access to their target cells via receptor-mediated endocytosis (Falnes and Sandvig 2000). So far, all tested cell lines are affected by toxins A and B, although they differ in sensitivity. Toxin B usually is up to 1,000-fold more potent than toxin A (Lyerly et al. 1982). Colonic and pancreas cell lines are much more sensitive to toxin A than nongastrointestinal tract cell lines (Kushnaryov et al. 1992). Cells of colonic source are comparably sensitive for both toxins or even more sensitive for toxin A (Hecht et al. 1992; Torres et al. 1992); however, human primary colonocytes are more sensitive to toxin B (Peppelenbosch et al. 1995). Cultured cell lines are reported to show saturable binding for toxins A and B and the difference in maximal binding capacity for each toxin indicates (Chaves-Olarte et al. 1997) different receptor entities.

Carbohydrate structures are thought to be an essential element for binding of toxin A to the cell membrane. Treatment of cells with glycosidases, N-glycosylation inhibitor tunicamycin, or proteases reduce but do not abolish toxin A effects on cells (Pothoulakis et al. 1996b, 1991; Smith et al. 1997). Furthermore, direct binding of toxin A to the terminal carbohydrate structure Galα1–3Galβ1–4GlcNAc was shown (Krivan et al. 1986; Tucker and Wilkins 1991). This structure, however, is absent in humans (Larsen et al. 1990). It

was demonstrated that toxin A also binds to GalNAcβ1–3Galβ1–4GlcNAc which is present in humans (Karlsson 1995; Teneberg et al. 1996). The membranous sucrase-isomaltase glycoprotein was identified as functional toxin A receptor in rabbit ileal brush border, but this receptor is not expressed in many toxin-sensitive tissues (e.g., human colon) (Pothoulakis et al. 1996b). It is conceivable that toxin A recruits several similar but not identical receptors. A structural feature of the receptor such as a carbohydrate may be of general importance but may not be the exclusive binding structure.

Research on toxin A interaction with its receptor has been done so far by studying mere binding of the toxin or toxin fragments based on the notion that saturable binding is identical to specific binding (Chaves-Olarte et al. 1997; Krivan et al. 1986; Pothoulakis et al. 1996a, b; Rolfe 1991; Smith et al. 1997; Tucker and Wilkins 1991). If the toxins possess the suggested properties of lectins, it cannot be excluded that the toxins bind to several structurally related carbohydrates in a saturable manner. Only one of them is the specific receptor that mediates endocytosis of the toxins. This notion is supported by the findings that toxin A binds to carbohydrate structures not existing in humans (Krivan et al. 1986; Larsen et al. 1990; Pothoulakis et al. 1996b; Tucker and Wilkins 1991) and to immunoglobulin and nonimmunoglobulin components of milk (Rolfe and Song 1995) and thyreoglobulin (Krivan and Wilkins 1987).

A competition study tested the functional binding of toxin A, i.e., its binding to intact cells followed by cellular uptake and cytotoxic effects (Frisch et al. 2003). In this study only the complete receptor binding domain of toxin A was found to compete with the holotoxin A and delayed the onset of cytotoxic effects. Surprisingly, half part of the receptor binding domain covering about 19 of 38 repetitive elements was completely incapable of binding to the toxin receptor and competing with the holotoxin. This finding, together with the result that the intermediary part of toxin A contributes indirectly to receptor binding, does not argue against multiple receptor-binding subunits, but supports the view that at least the correct assembly and the correct folding of all CROPs are prerequisite for receptor binding. Alternatively, it is conceivable that toxin A interacts with a single receptor molecule, which means that despite the repetitive structure only one unique cell receptor is recognized. The latter notion is supported by the finding that a monoclonal antibody that recognizes only two small epitopes in the 109 kDa receptor-binding domain is able to block receptor binding and toxic effects (Frey and Wilkins 1992; Lyerly et al. 1986). In addition to competition, the receptor binding domain itself was able to induce its endocytosis, a finding supporting the view that this domain is fully functional in binding and mediating cell entry (Frisch et al. 2003). Whereas toxin A receptor is partially characterized, nothing is known about the toxin B receptor, except that it is different from that of toxin A.

After binding to carbohydrate membrane structures, toxin internalization is induced by receptor-mediated endocytosis, but the mechanism which initiates endocytosis is unclear. It was shown by electron microscopy that internalization of toxin A takes place via clathrin-coated pits (Kushnaryov and Sedmark 1989; Von Eichel-Streiber et al. 1991). However, at those times alternative pathways such as rafts and caveolae have not been identified. The endocytosed vesicles are processed to endosomes where vesicular-ATPase-triggered acidification takes place. This step of uptake is generally accepted, because inhibition of acidification by applying different methods results in inhibition of cytotoxic effects and thus in protection of the cell (Alfano et al. 1993; Florin and Thelestam 1983, 1986; Henriques et al. 1987). Furthermore, inhibition of cytotoxic effects by alkalization can be

circumvented by short-term acidification of the extracellular medium allowing the toxin to directly translocate through the plasma membrane. The translocation step has been proposed to take place in analogy to the cell entry of the well-characterized diphtheria toxin (Kaul et al. 1996); the low pH in the endosomes induces refolding of the toxin resulting in the insertion of the transmembrane domain into the endosomal membrane followed by translocation of the catalytic domain. This hypothesis is now substantiated by the finding that artificial acidification (pH 5) resulted in an increase in hydrophobicity of toxin B which is reversible (Qa'Dan et al. 2000). The increased hydrophobicity allows the toxins to interact with the endosomal membrane to form a pore which mediates translocation. In fact, pH-dependent pore-formation of toxin B and lethal toxin was nicely demonstrated by the $^{86}Rb^{+}$-release from intact cells (Barth et al. 2001). This channel-forming property was assigned to the N-terminally truncated form of toxin B; the catalytic domain was dispensable. PH-dependent channel formation is a general feature of toxin B, because it can be reproduced in an artificial lipid bilayer model (Barth et al. 2001). Surprisingly, toxin A was unable to induce pores.

That only the catalytic domain and not the complete holotoxin B is translocated to the cytoplasm has recently been demonstrated in an elegant study applying N-terminally tagged recombinant toxin B (Pfeifer et al. 2003). The cleaved catalytic domain was found in the cytoplasm but not the holotoxin or the toxin fragment covering residues 547–2366, which have only been detected at membranes. The protease involved and the step where proteolytic cleavage takes place have not yet been identified. Although the exact cleavage site was not determined, the general conclusion that exclusively the catalytic domain is translocated is convincing. Further support of the notion that the catalytic domain is sufficient to cause full cytotoxicity came from experiments showing that microinjection of the catalytic fragment of toxin B or application of chimeric toxin B-anthrax lethal toxin fusion protein results in the same cytotoxic features (Hofmann et al. 1997; Spyres et al. 2001, 2003). These data also show that the uptake process and the processing of toxin B is not essential for toxin B to exhibit enzyme activity. However, a further activation through the uptake process may be possible because toxin B concentration for microinjection was ten times higher than for extracellular application (Chaves-Olarte et al. 1997).

A pore leaky for monovalent ions is not large enough to pass an unfolded catalytic domain with a size of 63 kDa. Thus, it is likely that the catalytic domain can only pass the pore in an unfolded manner. This notion implies a correct folding at the cytoplasmic site after translocation. In the case of *C. botulinum* C2 and diphtheria toxin, the chaperone HSP90 has been identified to be essential for translocation, thereby allowing assisted refolding of the catalytic domains (Haug et al. 2003; Ratts et al. 2003). HSP90 is not involved in toxin B translocation but other chaperones than HSP90 have not been studied so far.

The current model how the *C. difficile* toxins enter their cells is the following (Fig. 2): The first step is the binding to an extracellular carbohydrate structure containing the terminal Gal-GlcNAc (in case of toxin A); the second step is the induction of endocytosis of the toxin-receptor complex followed by acidification of the endosomes; the third step is the pH-dependent refolding of the toxins and insertion into the endosomal membrane, thereby forming a pore (shown for toxin B); the fourth step includes the translocation of the catalytic domain through a toxin-formed pore (shown for toxin B) and a possibly assisted refolding in the cytoplasm.

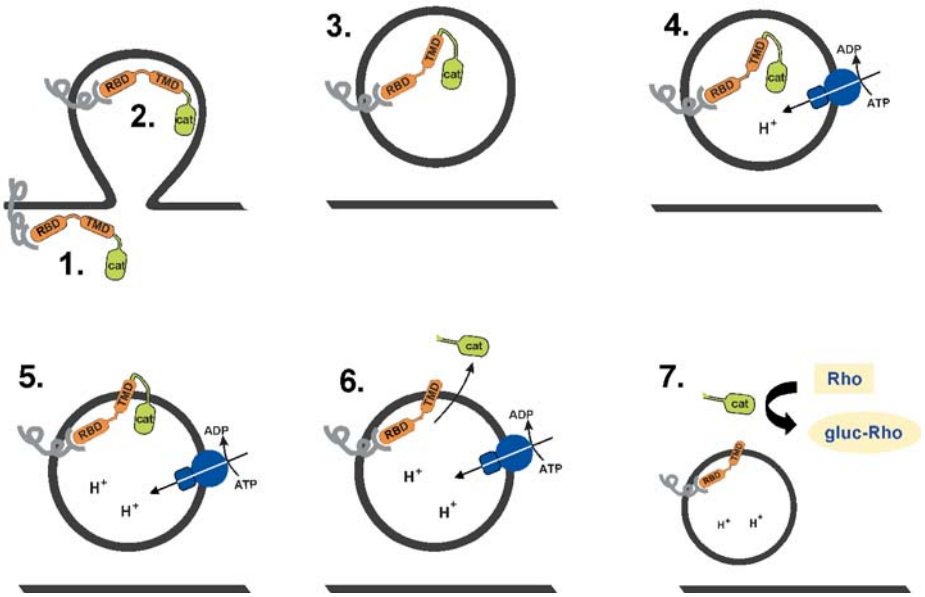


Fig. 2 Cell entry of *C.* toxin A/B. *1*Toxin A binds through its receptor-binding domain (*RBD*) to a membranous carbohydrate structure (the receptor of toxin B is unknown). *2* Toxin binding induces receptor-mediated endocytosis. *3* Endocytosed vesicle is processed to endosomes. *4* Vesicular-ATPase pumps protons into the endosomal lumen, thus decreasing the pH-value to about 5.5. Drop in pH induces refolding of the toxin, especially the hydrophobic transmembrane domain (*TMD*) which interacts with the endosomal membrane to form a pore (only shown for toxin B). Pore formation is blocked by inhibition of acidification. *6* The catalytic domain (*cat*) is translocated through the pore into the cytoplasm and it is released by proteolytic cleavage (only shown for toxin B). *7* The catalytic domain mono-glucosylates the Rho-GTPase targets in the cytoplasm.

Enzyme activity

The large clostridial cytotoxins are very potent agents that exhibit biological activity in the pico- to femtomolar range. The basis for this potent activity is their inherent enzyme activity (Just et al. 1995a, b). The toxins are transferases which catalyze the transfer of a glucose (in the case of α-toxin glcNAc) moiety to cellular targets, the Rho-GTPases. Toxins A and B mono-glucosylate Rho, Rac, Cdc42, RhoG, and TC10, all GTPases belonging to the Rho subfamily (Boquet and Lemichez 2003; Just et al. 1995a, b; I. Just, unpublished data). Lethal toxin (various isoforms) and the variant toxin B from *C. difficile* (strain B-1470) predominantly modify Rac from the Rho subfamily but also members from the Ras subfamily (Ras, Rap, Ral) (Chaves-Olarte et al. 1999, 2003; Genth et al. 1996; Hofmann et al. 1996; Just et al. 1996; Popoff et al. 1996; Schmidt et al. 1998). Differences in substrate specificity are evident and based on the isoform of the toxin (see Table 1). The glucose moiety is attached to the threonine residue residing in the effector region of the GTPases, i.e., Thr-37 in RhoA and Thr-35 in Rac, Cdc42, Ras. α-toxin from *C. novyi* recruits UDP-*N*-acetyl-glucosamine (UDPglcNAc) and transfers the glcNAc to the same threonine residue in Rho, Rac, and Cdc42 as toxins A and B do (Selzer et al. 1996) (Table 1).

The source of the transferred glucose is the ubiquitous nucleotide sugar UDP-glucose which is intracellularly present in micromolar range (Laughlin et al. 1988). UDP-glucose

Table 1 Large clostridial cytotoxins and their intracellular substrates

Toxin	Cosubstrate	Cellular targets		Producing microbe
		Rho subfamily	Ras subfamily	
Toxin A-10463	uDP-glucose	Rhu, Rau, Cuu42, RhuG,TC10	(Rap)	*C. difficile* strain VPI10463
Toxin A-C34	UDP-glucose	Rho, Rac, Cdc42	Rap	*C. difficile* strain C34
Toxin B-10463	UDP-glucose	Rho, Rac, Cdc42, RhoG, TC10	-	*C. difficile* strain VPI10463
Toxin B-1470	UDP-glucose	Rac	Ras, Ral, Rap	*C. difficile* strain 1470
Toxin B-C34	UDP-glucose	Rho, Rac, Cdc42	Ras, Ral, Rap	*C. difficile* strain C34
Lethal toxin CN6	UDP-glucose	(Rho), Rac, (Cdc42)	Ras, Ral, Rap	*C. sordellii* strain CN6
Lethal toxin VPI9048	UDP-glucose	Rac, (Cdc42)	Ras, Rap	*C. sordellii* strain VPI9048
Lethal toxin 6018	UDP-glucose	Rac, (Cdc42), RhoG.TC10	Ras, Ral, Rap	*C. sordellii* strain 6018
Lethal toxin IP82	UDP-glucose	Rac	Ras, Rap	*C. sordellii* strain IP82
Hemorrhagic toxin	UDP-glucose	Rho, Rac, Cdc42	-	*C. sordellii* strain VPI9048
α-Toxin	UDP-*N*-acetyl-glucosamine	Rho, Rac, Cdc42	-	*C. novyi* strain 19402

( ) Minor substrate, only partially modified

deficiency in a mutant cell line (Don cells) protects against cytotoxicity from *C. difficile* and *C. sordellii* toxins, proving the specificity of the cosubstrates (Chaves-Olarte et al. 1996).

The glucose is O-glycosidically bound to the acceptor amino acid. The configuration of the Rho-bound glucose was shown to be α-anomerical by applying crystal structure analysis and NMR spectroscopy of glucosylated Ras (Geyer et al. 2003; Vetter et al. 2000). Thus, the glucosylation reaction goes under retention of the configuration of the α-D-glucose at the C-1 position. As 1,5-gluconolacton inhibits Ras glucosylation by lethal toxin, it can be concluded that the reaction mechanism includes a glucosyl oxonium transition state (Geyer et al. 2003). Retention of configuration and the glucosyl transition state exclude a single S_N2 reaction mechanism but rather argues for a binucleophilic substitution (double replacement) or a stereospecific S_N1 reaction, where structural constraints of the catalytic pocket prevent formation of a racemate (Geyer et al. 2003; Vetter et al. 2000)

Besides the UDP-glucose, a divalent cation is required to form a ternary complex between the enzyme (toxin), UDP-glucose and the metal ion; the ion is involved in nucleotide sugar binding. After the glucose moiety is O-glycosidically attached to the target Rho-GTPase, the complex dissociates and the toxin, UDP, and glucosylated Rho-GTPase are released.

In addition to the transferase activity, large clostridial cytotoxins exhibit glycohydrolase activity in the absence of protein substrates to hydrolytically cleave the cosubstrate UDP-glucose, thereby releasing UDP and glucose (Busch et al. 2000; Chaves-Olarte et al. 1997; Ciesla and Bobak 1998; Just et al. 1995b). The glycohydrolase activity is lower than the transferase activity and it is unclear whether the hydrolase activity contributes at all to the biological activity of the LCTs.

Independently of the biological relevance of glycohydrolase activity, this activity can be used for studying the requirement of divalent cations for enzyme activity. Enzymes that

bind nucleotide diphosphate sugars often require the presence of divalent metal ions for optimal nucleotide binding. Such studies cannot be performed in the presence of Rho-GTPases because the GTPases essentially require Mg^{2+} ions which interfere with the defined metal ion conditions of the glycohydrolase assay. Thus, glycohydrolase is a useful model system to address this question. Removal of bound divalent metal ions by treatment of the toxins with EDTA or EGTA results in a complete inhibition of enzyme activity, which can be restored by addition of Mg^{2+} or Mn^{2+} (Ciesla and Bobak 1998; Just et al. 1996). However, divalent metal ions are not essential for correct folding or for cell entry of the toxins, because EDTA-treated cation-free lethal toxin is as cytotoxic as the nontreated one (H. Genth and I. Just, unpublished data). The following rating of the efficacy of divalent metal ions to stimulate glycohydrolase has been reported: $Mn^{2+} > Co^{2+} > Mg^{2+}$, $Zn^{2+} >> Ca^{2+}$, Cu^{2+} (H. Genth and I. Just, unpublished data). The k_D for Mn^{2+} was calculated as 11.6 μM (only one single metal binding site was found). The above-mentioned D-X-D motif is also involved in glycohydrolase activity as proven by site-directed mutagenesis of lethal toxin (H. Genth and I. Just, unpublished data). Divalent metal ions are necessary but not sufficient for glycohydrolase activity. In the absence of any monovalent cation no enzyme activity is detectable. Only K^+ costimulates but not Na^+, whereby Na^+ is not inhibitory (Ciesla and Bobak 1998; H. Genth and I. Just, unpublished data).

The cytotoxins (lethal toxin and toxins A/B) do not exhibit a restricted specificity for one exclusive divalent metal ion, but Mn^{2+} is the most efficacious stimulator. However, the in vivo concentration of Mn^{2+} in mammals is clearly below the k_D value of 11 μM and can therefore be excluded as physiological stimulator. Although Mg^{2+} is less efficacious than Mn^{2+}, its in vivo concentration is about 10 mM and thus, it is likely that Mg^{2+} is the probable physiological activator. Furthermore, under physiological in vivo conditions extracellular metal ion conditions are characterized by the presence of Na^+; inside the cell preferably K^+ is found. Since the cytotoxins modify intracellular substrates and the uptake process includes a translocation step through endosomal membranes—which probably strips off all noncovalently bound factors—the requirement for Mg^{2+} and coactivation by K^+ may reflect that the cytotoxins are optimally adapted to the metal ion condition of the intracellular milieu of the mammalian target cell.

The catalytic mechanism implies a specific recognition of the Rho/Ras substrate proteins by the toxins. Therefore, the toxins need—in addition to UDP-glucose binding site and the catalytic center—a substrate recognition site. Whereas toxin A and B exclusively modifies the Rho subfamily proteins, lethal toxin glucosylates Rac and Cdc42 from the Rho subfamily and Ras, Ral, and Rap from the Ras subfamily. Thus, it is unlikely that there is only one single substrate recognition site which is able to recognize variant combinations of the Rho and Ras GTPases. It is rather conceivable that the toxins possess different recognition sites. This notion makes it possible to explain the differences in the substrate specificity of the isoforms of lethal toxin and the variant toxin of *C. difficile* (Table 1). As toxin B and lethal toxin are highly homologous (90 %) but differ in their protein substrate specificity, chimeric toxins are helpful to study the site of substrate recognition. Testing the substrate specificity of various chimeras between the N-terminal part of toxin B and lethal toxin led to the restriction and separation of recognition sites for the Rho and Ras proteins. Amino acids 408–468 in toxin B determine the specificity for Rho, Rac, and Cdc42, whereas residues 364–408 in lethal toxin determine for Rac and Cdc42, but not for Rho recognition (Fig. 1). Interestingly, the substrate specificity of lethal toxin and toxin B is determined by different domains. The recognition of the Ras proteins is mediat-

ed from the region aa 408–516, which is adjacent to the Rho recognition site (Busch and Aktories 2000; Hofmann et al. 1998). It seems that the substrate recognition sites are modularly organized.

The diverse substrate specificity of the members of the large clostridial cytotoxins implies that the toxins recognize differing amino acids or domains of Rho and Ras GTPases. However, a common condition for all GTPases to be substrate is the nucleotide-dependent three dimensional structure. The GTPases serve only as substrates when bound to GDP but not when bound to GTP (Herrmann et al. 1998). In the GTP-bound state the side-chain of threonine-35 in Ras/ Rac and threonine-37 in Rho points to the core of the GTPase by coordination of the Mg^{2+} ion. Thus, the hydroxyl group of the threonine is not accessible. Only in the GDP-bound state is the hydroxyl group located at the surface of the GTPase molecule and accessible for glucosylation.

In addition to the nucleotide-bound state, little is known about other conditions determining whether a GTPase is substrate or not. Only the amino acid Thr-25 in Rac was reported to be important for lethal toxin-catalyzed glucosylation. The exchange of Thr-25-Lys mutation in Rac mimicking the situation in Cdc42 resulted in strongly diminished glucosylation. Accordingly, exchange of Lys-25 to Thr in Cdc42 made Cdc42 a substrate (Müller et al. 1999).

Functional consequences of glucosylation

The cellular functions of the low molecular mass GTPases of the Rho and Ras subfamily are governed by their ability to cycle between the inactive and the active state, a process which is regulated by various regulatory proteins (Fig. 3).

The common features of the Ras-like small GTP-binding proteins, also called small GTPases, are their molecular mass (18–28 kDa), their C-terminal polyisoprenylation, and their property to bind to and hydrolyze guanine nucleotides. They are molecular relays which transmit signals when bound to GTP and stop doing so when bound to GDP. Based on their sequence and functional homology, the superfamily of Ras-like proteins is subdivided into the subfamilies of Ras, Rho, Rab, Arf, and Ran. The Rho subfamily comprises the RhoA-related (RhoA, B, and C), Rac1-related (Rac1, 2, 3, and RhoG), Cdc42-related (Cdc42, G25 K, TC10, TCL, Chp/Wrch-2, and Wrch-1), Rnd subfamily (Rnd1/2 and Rnd3/RhoE), RhoD, Rif, and RhoH/TTF (Wennerberg and Der 2004). The best-characterized GTPases are Rho, Rac, and Cdc42. Rho/Rac/Cdc42-dependent signal pathways are stimulated by receptor-tyrosine kinases (PDGF for Rac) and by G-protein-coupled receptors (LPA for Rho, bradykinin for Cdc42). Stimulation of the Rho signalling starts with the guanine nucleotide exchange factors (GEF), which catalyze the exchange of nucleotides, resulting in binding of GTP to Rho (Fig. 3). Binding of GTP induces changes in the conformation of the effector region (covering residues 30–42) which allows interaction of Rho with its so-called effector proteins. Effectors are often serine/threonine kinases which are activated by binding of Rho (e.g., ROKα/Rho kinase) to phosphorylate downstream targets. In addition to kinases, Rho effectors also comprise multi-domain proteins without enzymatic activity (rhotekin, rhophilin, WASP) which may serve as nucleus for multi-protein complexes to connect different signalling pathways. Thus, the effector proteins amplify and execute the Rho signals. The downstream signalling is terminated by the GTPase-activating protein (GAP), which strongly enhances the inherent GTP-hydrolyzing activity

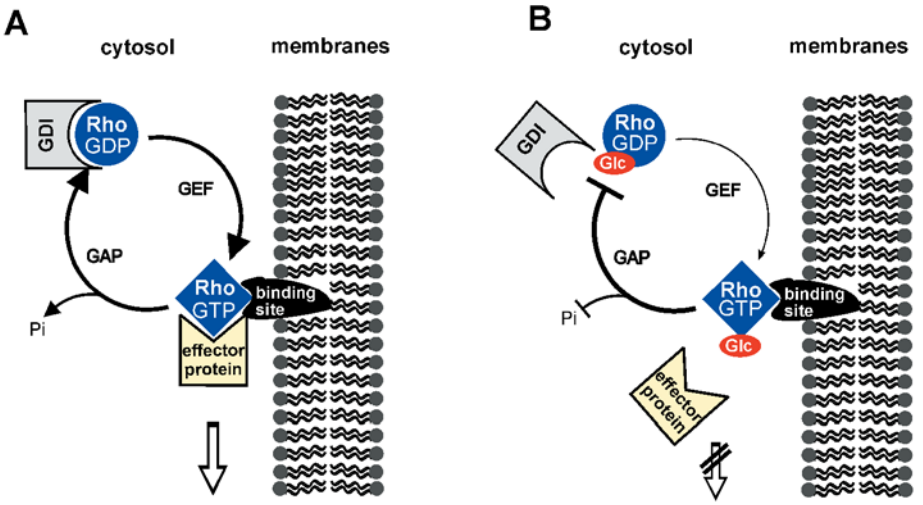


Fig. 3 Molecular mode of action of toxin A/B. **A** The Rho-GTPases are molecular switches which are regulated by guanine nucleotide binding. Nonsignalling, inactive Rho is complexed with the guanine nucleotide dissociation inhibitor GDI to be localized to the cytosol. Signal input induces an activation cascade resulting in translocation to the plasmamembranes and nucleotide exchange catalyzed by GEF (guanine nucleotide exchange factor harboring a Dbl domain). GTP binding causes a conformational change of especially the effector region allowing Rho to interact with effector proteins. The effector proteins comprise Thr/Ser-kinases, lipid kinases, lipases, or scaffold proteins which execute and amplify Rho signals. Rho signalling is terminated by an additional regulatory protein called GTPase-activating protein GAP which increases GTP-hydrolysis, resulting in inactive GDP-bound Rho which is delivered to the cytosol again. **B** Toxin-catalyzed mono-glucosylation alters the properties of Rho-GTPases. Glucosylation promotes entrapment of Rho-GTPases at membranous binding sites. The glucose moiety stabilizes the effector region so that Rho-GTPases are incapable of interacting with their effector proteins, thereby completely blocking downstream signalling. Furthermore, the glucosylation inhibits binding to GDI, thereby preventing extraction of inactive Rho from the membranes. Entrapment at restricted membranous binding sites is thought to be the basis for the dominant negative mode of action of glucosylated Rho.

of Rho, resulting in inactive GDP-bound Rho. In addition to the cycling between the inactive GDP-bound and active GTP-bound state, Rho concomitantly cycles between membranes (active Rho) and cytosol (inactive Rho). Inactive Rho is localized to the cytosol by binding to the guanine nucleotide dissociation inhibitor (GDI), which traps the inactive GDP-bound form in a high-affinity complex. GDI, however, is not only a mere negative regulator but is also involved in the correct subcellular addressing of active Rho to the membranes. In this respect, GDI cooperates with the ERM proteins (ezrin, radixin, moesin). After termination of the signalling job of Rho by GAP, inactive Rho is extracted by GDI from the membranes and relocalized to the cytosolic pool of inactive Rho (Fig. 3).

The Rho-GTPases are in general the master regulators of the actin cytoskeleton. The isoforms, however, regulate different aspects: Cdc42 is involved in the formation of filopodia (microspikes); Rac governs the formation of lamellipodia (ruffles), whereas Rho is responsible for stress fibers. In addition, they are involved in many actin-dependent processes (such as cell motility, cell adhesion, cell-cell contact), as well as in membrane trafficking (endo- and exocytosis, phagocytosis). However, Rho functions are also beyond the regulation of the cytoskeleton: Transcriptional activity is governed via the JNK, p38 and NFκB pathway; the cell cycle is regulated (G1-S phase transition) and finally, the forma-

tion of reactive oxygen species is stimulated through activation of the NADP oxidase of neutrophils (for reviews on the Rho proteins see Bishop and Hall 2000; Etienne-Manneville and Hall 2002; Hall 1998; Ridley 2001; Takai et al. 2001; Van Aelst and D'Souza-Schorey 1997; Wettschureck and Offermanns 2002; Zohn et al. 1998).

A glucose moiety attached to the conserved threonine residue causes various alterations of Rho functions (Fig. 3) (Just et al. 1995a): (1) Rho activation by exchange factors (GEFs) is reduced, (2) intrinsic GTPase is reduced but GAP-stimulated GTPase is completely inhibited, (3) coupling to the effector proteins is completely blocked (Herrmann et al. 1998; Sehr et al. 1998). Inhibition of effector coupling is based on the effect of the glucose moiety to stabilize the inactive conformation of the effector region, although GTP can be bound (Vetter et al. 2000). In addition to the GTPase cycling, also the cytosol-membrane cycling of Rho-GTPases is altered. Surprisingly, glucosylation renders Rho properties so that GDP-bound glucosylated Rho is bound to the membranes and cannot be complexed anymore to GDI. Glucosylation blocks the cytosol-membrane cycling of Rho proteins, thereby leading to an entrapment at the membranes, which is the basis for the dominant negative effect of glucosylated Rho (Genth et al. 1999). Thus, glucosylation redundantly switches off Rho signalling to completely block all Rho-dependent signal pathways. The entrapment at the membranes, however, indicates rather a gain of function with respect to a negative regulator than a mere inactivation of the GTPases.

The actin depolymerizing activity of the cytotoxins can be fully explained by the inactivation of Rho-GTPases. RhoA is the upstream activator of the serine/threonine kinase ROCK (Rho-kinase) which, in cooperation with the scaffold protein mDia, regulates actin-myosin assembly and contractility as well as actin polymerization, resulting in alteration of stress fiber formation and cell motility. Rac1 acts through PAK/WAVE/PIP_2, whereas Cdc42 acts through WASP. Their inactivation causes actin depolymerization in filopodia and lamellipodia as well as deinhibition of F-actin stabilization, resulting in inhibition of cell motility and phagocytosis.

The primary target tissue of the *C. difficile* toxins is the colonic epithelium. Human colon carcinoma (T84) cells are polarized in culture and form tight junctions and therefore they are an established model for the colonic epithelial barrier. Toxins A and B disrupt the barrier function by opening the tight junctions (Gerhard et al. 1998; Hecht et al. 1988, 1992; Johal et al. 2004; Moore et al. 1990; Triadafilopoulos et al. 1987, 1989). This effect is not merely caused by the breakdown of actin filaments, but by inactivation of the Rho function to regulate the tight junction complex (Chen et al. 2002; Nusrat et al. 1995). These barrier-disrupting effects of toxins A and B are supposed to increase the colonic permeability, the basis of the watery diarrhea, which is a typical feature of the *Clostridium difficile*-induced, antibiotic-associated diarrhea.

Toxins A and B from the reference strain 10463 cause morphological changes at fibroblasts which are characterized by cell rounding and intermediate formation of "neurite-like" protrusions, the intoxicated cells remaining attached to the substratum. In contrast, variant toxin B (from strains 1470 and 8864) and lethal toxin from *C. sordellii* induce rounding with formation of some filopodia-like structures, however, accompanied by massive cell detachment (Chaves-Olarte et al. 2003). The variant toxin B is related to the lethal toxin which glucosylates Rac1 and Ras-GTPases but not RhoA. R-Ras but not Rho is involved in the control of cell adhesiveness through modulation of the integrin avidity (Zhang et al. 1996). Thus, differences in substrate specificity are responsible for different cytotoxic effects (Chaves-Olarte et al. 2003).

Toxins A and B have been reported to induce apoptosis (Brito et al. 2002; Calderón et al. 1998; Fiorentini et al. 1998; Mahida et al. 1996, 1998; Qa'Dan et al. 2002). Apoptosis is induced by many signals, particularly by detachment of cells from their extracellular matrix (Ruoslahti 1997). The cytotoxins which are known to induce detachment through their actin filament-disrupting properties may induce apoptosis in the same way as EDTA or neutrophil elastase do (Shibata et al. 1996). Lethal toxin from *C. sordellii* was also reported to induce apoptosis in the myeloid cell line HL-60 through inactivation of Rac. Apoptosis was detected after 16 h of intoxication involving caspases 9 and 3 as well as the cytochrom C release from mitochondria. Furthermore, it was shown that lethal toxin partially colocalized with mitochondria (Petit et al. 2003). Independently of detachment of cells, inactivation of especially Rac and Cdc42 is a satisfactory explanation for toxin-induced apoptosis. As Rac and Cdc42 function as prosurvival signalling proteins, they functionally shut off further apoptotic processes (Coleman and Olson 2002; Gomez et al. 1998).

Glucosyltransferase-independent properties of toxins A and B

Recently, findings have been reported raising the question whether there are additional nonenzymatic or non-Rho-dependent biological effects of toxins A and B. The mitochondrial targeting by toxin A is now the focus of research on the pathogenesis of *Clostridium difficile*-associated diarrhea (He et al. 2002). The release of interleukin-8 (IL-8) from colonocytes was reported to be based on damage of mitochondria by toxin A. Toxin-induced damage resulted in a decreased ATP production and formation of reactive oxygen ROS, which induced a sequelae of reactions involving activation of NFkB and eventually release of the proinflammatory cytokine IL-8. Since this sequelae takes place in a time frame of 30 min in which no glucosylation of Rho-GTPases were detected, it was concluded that the mitochondrial effects of toxin A are Rho-independent, particularly because isolated mitochondria are also directly affected by toxin A (He et al. 2000, 2002). However, a contrary finding was reported showing that mitochondrial damage as initiation of apoptosis started after 18–24 h of intoxication and was clearly enzyme-dependent. Since enzymatically inactive toxin A, generated by covalent modification of toxin A, had no effect on apoptosis, it was concluded that this toxin effect is mediated by a Rho-dependent mechanism (Brito et al. 2002)

A further non-Rho-dependent effect was reported by Warny et al. showing that activation of the MAP-kinases ERK, p38-kinase, and JNK started 1–2 min after toxin A application to the monocytic THP-1 cell line (Warny et al. 2000). This early onset of kinase cascades is clearly before cell entry of toxin A and the glucosylation of the Rho-GTPases. Especially p38-kinase activation results in monocyte activation and IL-8 production, thus explaining how toxin A may cause the inflammatory process of the colitis. The authors suggest that the interaction of the toxin with the toxin-receptor may trigger the MAP kinase cascade (Warny et al. 2000).

The group of Ballard studied toxin B-induced apoptosis by comparing the effects of the catalytic domain of toxin B covering amino acids 1–556 with the holotoxin B (Qa'Dan et al. 2002). Whereas holotoxin B induced apoptosis of intoxicated cells via activation of caspase 3, the catalytic domain—delivered as chimeric anthrax toxin or expressed in the cells—did so via a caspase-independent mechanism. The authors concluded that inactivation of Rho-GTPases was involved in a caspase-dependent way but that the holotoxin had

the property to do so also via a non-Rho and noncaspase-dependent mechanism. However, this finding is hard to reconcile with the finding that only the proteolytically cleaved catalytic domain of toxin B is delivered to the cytoplasm, whereas the remainder cleavage product and the nontranslocated holotoxin B remain in endosomes (Pfeifer et al. 2003).

Also the increase in paracellular permeability was reported to be Rho-independent. Through an unknown mechanism, toxin A stimulated the protein kinases PKCα and β, which regulate sorting and assembly of the tight junction protein ZO-1. After toxin A application, ZO-1 time-dependently translocated from the tight junctions accompanied by a decrease in the transepithelial resistance TER (Chen et al. 2002). PKC activation preceded the glucosylation of Rho and, furthermore, the specific PKC inhibitor "myristoylated PKCα/β peptide" blocked toxin A-mediated glucosylation, indicating Rho-independent effects of toxin A. However, the applied PKC inhibitor in fact does not block glucosylation reaction of Rho but rather inhibits cell entry of toxin A (I. Just et al., unpublished data). Only a small pool of Rho-GTPases, i.e., the membrane-bound, has to be glucosylated to achieve the full cytotoxic effect although the majority of Rho is still unmodified and therefore substrate for subsequent C3-ADP-ribosylation (see the section entitled "The large clostridial cytotoxins as tools in cell biology"). Thus, assessing Rho glucosylation by C3-catalyzed [^{32}P]ADP-ribosylation of whole cell lysates does not reflect the exact time course of inactivation of functional Rho in cells by toxin A/B, but rather do so with a delay of hours (Just et al. 1997). In this way the reported effects of toxin A to activate PKC by a non-Rho-dependent mechanism seem to be questionable.

The large clostridial cytotoxins as tools in cell biology

Prerequisites for LCTs to serve as biological tool are: (1) cell accessibility, (2) target specificity, (3) well-known mode of action, and (4) no secondary effects. All cell lines studied so far are sensitive to the LCTs although there are great differences in sensitivity. For example, CHO cells are highly sensitive to toxin B acting at femtomolar range, whereas HEp2 cells are quite insensitive; most fibroblasts and epithelial cells are insensitive to lethal toxin, but RBL (mast) cells are highly sensitive (see also "Cellular uptake"). Thus, the LCTs have access to cultured cell lines, primary cell culture, or isolated cells from organs. The basis for cell accessibility is the property of the LCTs to cause their own cell entry by receptor-mediated endocytosis, so that techniques such as cell permeabilization, electroporation, or transfection are not needed. Treatment of cells with LCTs usually results in more than 90% of intoxicated cells, which is an essential prerequisite for biochemical studies of the cell lysates.

The cellular targets of LCTs are the Rho-GTPases and in case of lethal toxin Rho and Ras GTPases (Table 1). Rho, Rac, and Cdc42 are the canonical substrates of toxins A and B, but the Rho subfamily comprises more than these three members. Recently, is was reported that in addition to the canonical substrates also RhoG and TC10 are glucosylated and that in case of toxin A even Rap, a member of the Ras subfamily, is modified. Furthermore, it is conceivable that additional substrates may exist which have been overlooked, because they are only expressed in faint amounts (thus escaping the identification through [^{14}C]glucosylation) or solely present in some cell types. Unless the structural features of the substrate recognition by the toxins are not well understood, additional cellular substrates cannot be definitely ruled out.

The Rho-GTPases are the master regulators of the actin cytoskeleton, but they are also involved in cytoskeleton-independent processes such as gene expression, cell cycle progression, apoptosis, and cell transformation. To distinguish between cytoskeletal and non-cytoskeletal effects, application of agents or toxins which directly interfere with the actin cytoskeleton can be used. Two of such agents/toxins are available, latrunculin B and the binary C2 toxin from *C. botulinum*. The C2 toxin consists of the enzyme component C2I and the binding component C2II, which is only active after trypsin treatment. C2II translocates C2I through receptor-mediated endocytosis into the cytoplasm, where C2I mono-ADP-ribosylates G-actin. ADP-ribosylated actin is incapable of polymerization and eventually leads to complete depolymerization of the actin filaments (Aktories et al. 1997a, b; Barbieri et al. 2002).

The morphological changes (cell rounding and formation of arborized morphology) induced by the LCTs are an excellent read out to check cell sensitivity and toxin activity. However, in nonadherent cells, changes in cell-shape are hard to detect. The visualization of the submembranous actin cytoskeleton is applicable but gives no strong evidence for intracellular toxin activity. The only reliable method is to perform a differential glucosylation. The rationale for this experiment is the fact that toxin-catalyzed glucosylation in intact cells prevents a second [^{14}C]glucosylation of the lysates. A decrease in radioactive labeling of the Rho-GTPases in lysates compared to nontreated cells indicates previous glucosylation in the intact cell and proves active toxin. A less expensive alternative with the advantage of stronger signal in autoradiography/phosphorimaging is the usage of the C3-catalyzed [^{32}P]ADP-ribosylation which, however, only proves modification of Rho but not of Rac or Cdc42. The differential glucosylation and ADP-ribosylation, respectively, is also applicable to estimate the amount of inactivated (glucosylated) Rho-GTPases. This approach is generally applied but implies a pitfall: Surprisingly, cell rounding precedes intracellular glucosylation when C3-catalyzed [^{32}P]ADP-ribosylation is performed with whole cell lysates. However, when only membranes—reflecting functional membranous RhoA—are used, a clear temporal correlation between intracellular glucosylation and cell rounding exists (Just et al. 1997). Thus, intracellular glucosylation of a small fraction of cellular Rho is sufficient to cause effects even if subsequent C3-ADP-ribosylation indicates little or no modification of Rho.

The mode of action of LCTs is well-characterized, i.e., glucosylation of the pivotal threonine in the effector region of Rho and Ras GTPases resulting in functional inactivation. Whether the toxins possess additional nonenzymatic effects is under debate. One enzyme-independent effect has been reported—a cytochrom C-release from mitochondria induced by toxin A (He et al. 2000, 2002). An additional uncertainty is whether LCTs are able to induce secondary effects which are not directly associated with the Rho/Ras GTPases such as mere cytoskeleton-based effects that can easily be checked, as discussed above. Thus, the LCT can only be used for the initial orienting studies. Mandatorily, the findings have to be checked by other methods, such as expression of dominant negative GTPases or application of siRNA.

Usually, toxin B is used as tool because it is more active than toxin A. Toxin activity is the only reliable parameter to guarantee reproducible results in cell biology. Toxin activity is meant as titer of cytotoxicity but not as enzyme activity. The latter is less reliable, whereas mere protein concentration is absolutely unreliable. (for reviews see Bobak 1999; Boquet 2002; Just and Boquet 2000; Just et al. 1997; Schiavo and van der Goot 2001).

Involvement of *Clostridium difficile* toxins A and B in disease

Toxins A and B are the major pathogenicity factors of the antibiotic-associated diarrhea and the pseudomembranous colitis. Based on animal studies, toxin A has been assigned as the true enterotoxin which is biologically active and secondarily allows access of toxin B to subepithelial tissue. However, in human disease it seems that both toxins are comparable or that even toxin B is of more relevance (Savidge et al. 2003). Human colonic epithelial cells are about equisensitive to both toxins. In about 5%–7% of cases of *Clostridium difficile*–associated diarrhea variant strains are involved which lack functional toxin A, but possess a variant toxin B (Barbut et al. 2002; Johnson et al. 2003; Kuijper et al. 2001; Rupnik et al. 2003b). Variant toxin B resembles lethal toxin from *C. sordelli* with respect to substrate specificity but harbors the identical receptor-binding domain as toxin B-10463. The variant toxin B is detected in human disease but is not able to induce diarrhea and PMC in animals. These findings support the notion that the animal model, in which only toxin A possesses a biological activity, does not correctly reflect the conditions of the human disease.

The symptoms of CDAD are characterized by secretory diarrhea and inflammatory processes of colonic mucosa. Thus, mucosal barrier function is decreased, immune cells of the mucosa are activated triggering inflammation and, finally, the enteric nervous system is altered. Mast cells and macrophages are activated to release cytokines, especially IL-1, IL-6, IL-8, TNF, and IFN-γ (Pothoulakis et al. 1998; Pothoulakis and LaMont 2001; Thelestam and Chaves-Olarte 2000). Release of chemoattractants causes invasion of neutrophils which are characteristic for PMC. Furthermore, the enteric nervous system (ENS) is activated by the toxins through an unknown sequel of steps, causing secretory diarrhea and amplifying inflammation (Farrell and LaMont 2000; Jones and Blikslager 2002; Mantyh, McVey et al. 2000; Neunlist et al. 2003; Pothoulakis et al. 1998). However, the cellular and molecular mechanisms through which the toxins induce inflammatory processes are less clear and cannot be fully explained so far by their intracellular transferase activity to inactivate small GTPases (for reviews on the clinical aspects see Bartlett 2002; Farrell and LaMont 2000; Poxton et al. 2001; Stoddart and Wilcox 2002).

Acknowledgement. Work carried out in the authors' lab was supported by the Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft (SFB 621, project B5 and SSP 1150).

References

Aktories K, Prepens U, Sehr P, Just I (1997a) Probing the actin cytoskeleton by *Clostridium botulinum* C2 toxin and *Clostridium perfringens* iota toxin. In: Aktories K (ed) Bacterial toxins. Chapman & Hall, Weinheim, pp 129–139

Aktories K, Sehr P, Just I (1997b) Actin-ADP-ribosylating toxins: Cytotoxic mechanism of *Clostridium botulinum* C2 toxin and *Clostridium perfringens* iota toxin. In: Aktories K (ed) Bacterial toxins. Chapman & Hall, Weinheim, pp 93–101

Alfano F, Russell A, Gambardella R, Duckett JG (1993) The actin cytoskeleton of the liverwort *Riccia fluitans*: Effects of cytochalasin B and aluminium ions on rhizoid tip growth. J Plant Physiol 142:569–574

Barbieri JT, Riese MJ, Aktories K (2002) Bacterial Toxins that modify the actin cytoskeleton. Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol 18:315–344

Barbut F, Lalande V, Burghoffer B, Thien HV, Grimpel E, Petit JC (2002) Prevalence and genetic characterization of toxin A variant strains of Clostridium difficile among adults and children with diarrhea in France. J Clin Microbiol 40:2079–2083

Barroso LA, Wang S-Z, Phelps CJ, Johnson JL, Wilkins TD (1990) Nucleotide sequence of *Clostridium difficile* toxin B gene. Nucleic Acids Res 18(13):4004

Barth H, Pfeifer G, Hofmann F, Maier E, Benz R, Aktories K (2001) Low pH-induced formation of ion channels by *Clostridium difficile* toxin B in target cells. J Biol Chem 276:10670–10676

Bartlett JG (1994) *Clostridium difficile*: history of its role as an enteric pathogen and the current state of knowledge about the organism. Clin Infect Dis 18:265–272

Bartlett JG (2002) Antibiotic-associated diarrhea. N Engl J Med 346:334–339

Bette P, Oksche A, Mauler F, Von Eichel-Streiber C, Popoff MR, Habermann E (1991) A comparative biochemical, pharmacological and immunological study of *Clostridium novyi* α-toxin, *C. difficile* toxin B and *C. sordellii* lethal toxin. Toxicon 29:877–887

Bishop AL, Hall A (2000) Rho GTPases and their effector proteins. Biochem J 348:241–255

Bobak DA (1999) Clostridial toxins: Molecular probes of Rho-dependent signaling and apoptosis. Mol Cell Biochem 193:37–42

Boeggeman E, Quasb PK (2002) Studies on the metal binding sites in the catalytic domain of beta1,4-galactosyltransferrase. Glycobiology 12:395–407

Boix E, Swaminathan J, Zhang Y, Natesh R, Brew K, Acharya KR (2002). Structure of UDP complex of UDP-galactose:ß-galactoside-a-1,3-galactosyltransferase at 1.53-A resolution reveals a conformational change in the catalytic important C terminus. J Biol Chem 276:48608–48614

Boquet P (2002) Modification of small GTP-binding proteins by bacterial protein toxins. Methods Microbiol 31:225–244

Boquet P, Lemichez E (2003) Bacterial virulence factors targeting Rho GTPases: parasitism or symbiosis? Trends Cell Biol 13:238–246

Borriello SP, Wren BW, Hyde S, Seddon SV, Sibbons P, Krishna MM, Tabaqchali S, Manek S, Price AB (1992) Molecular, immunological, and biological characterization of a toxin A-negative, toxin B-positive strain of *Clostridium difficile*. Infect Immun 60(10):4192–4199

Braun V, Hundsberger T, Luekel P, Sauerborn M, Von Eichel-Streiber C (1996) Definition of the single integration site of the pathogenicity locus in Clostridium difficile. Gene 181:29–38

Brito GAC, Fujji J, Carneiro BA, Lima AAM, Obrig T, Guerrant RL (2002) Mechanism of Clostridium difficile toxin A-induced apoptosis in T84 cells. J Infect Dis 186:1438–1447

Burger S, Tatge H, Hofmann F, Just I, Gerhard R (2003) Expression of recombinant Clostridium difficile toxin A using the Bacillus megaterium system. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 307:584–588

Busch C, Aktories K (2000) Microbial toxins and the glycosylation of rho family GTPases. Curr Opin Struct Biol 10:528–535

Busch C, Hofmann F, Selzer J, Munro J, Jeckel D, Aktories K (1998) A common motif of eukaryotic glycosyltransferases is essential for the enzyme activity of large clostridial cytotoxins. J Biol Chem 273:19566–19572

Busch C, Hofmann F, Gerhard R, Aktories K (2000) Involvement of a conserved tryptophan residue in the UDP-glucose binding of large clostridial cytotoxin glycosyltransferases. J Biol Chem 275:13228–13234

Calderon GM, Torres-Lopez J, Lin TJ, Chavez B, Hernandez M, Munoz O, Befus AD, Enciso JA (1998) Effects of toxin A from *Clostridium difficile* on mast cell activation and survival. Infect Immun 66:2755–2761

Chaves-Olarte E, Florin I, Boquet P, Popoff M, Von Eichel-Streiber C, Thelestam M (1996) UDP-glucose deficiency in a mutant cell line protects against glucosyltransferase toxins from *Clostridium difficile* and *Clostridium sordellii*. J Biol Chem 271:6925–6932

Chaves-Olarte E, Weidmann M, Von Eichel-Streiber C, Thelestam M (1997) Toxins A and B from *Clostridium difficile* differ with respect to enzymatic potencies, cellular substrate specificities, and surface binding to cultured cells. J Clin Invest 100:1734–1741

Chaves-Olarte E, Low P, Freer E, Norlin T, Weidmann M, von Eichel-Streiber C, Thelestam M (1999) A novel cytotoxin from *Clostridium difficile* serogroup F is a functional hybrid between two other large clostridial cytotoxins. J Biol Chem 274:11046–11052

Chaves-Olarte E, Freer E, Parra A, Guzmán-Verri C, Moreno E, Thelestam, M (2003) R-Ras glucosylation and transient RhoA activation determine the cytopathic effect produced by toxin B variants from toxin A-negative strains of Clostridium difficile. J Biol Chem 278:7956–7963

Chen ML, Pothoulakis C, LaMont JT (2002) Protein kinase C signaling regulates ZO-1 translocation and increased paracellular flux of T84 colonocytes exposed to Clostridium difficile toxin A. J Biol Chem 277:4247–4254

Ciesielski-Treska J, Ulrich G, Rihn B, Aunis D (1989) Mechanism of action of *Clostridium difficile* toxin B: role of external medium and cytoskeletal organization in intoxicated cells. Eur J Cell Biol 48:191–202

Ciesielski-Treska J, Ulrich G, Baldacini O, Monteil H, Aunis D (1991) Phosphorylation of cellular proteins in response to treatment with Clostridium difficile toxin B and Clostridium sordellii toxin L. Eur J Cell Biol 56:68–78

Ciesla WP Jr, Bobak DA (1998) Clostridium difficile toxins A and B are cation-dependent UDP-glucose hydrolases with differing catalytic activities. J Biol Chem 273:16021–16026

Coleman ML, Olson MF (2002) Rho GTPase signalling pathways in the morphological changes associated with apoptosis. Cell Death Differ 9:493–504

Depitre C, Delmee M, Avesani V, L'Haridon R, Roels A, Popoff M, Corthier G (1993) Serogroup F strains of Clostridium difficile produce toxin B but not toxin A. J Med Microbiol 38:434–441

Magdesian KG, Hirsh DC, Jang SS, Hansen LM, Madigan JE (1990) Molecular characterization of the *Clostridium difficile* toxin A gene. Infect Immun 58:480–488

Dupuy B, Sonenshein AL (1998) Regulated transcription of *Clostridium difficile* toxin genes. Mol Microbiol 27:107–120

Etienne-Manneville S, Hall A (2002) Rho GTPases in cell biology. Nature 420:629–635

Falnes PO, Sandvig K (2000) Penetration of protein toxins into cells. Curr Opin Cell Biol 12:407–413

Farrell RJ, LaMont JT (2000) Pathogenesis and clinical manifestations of Clostridium difficile diarrhea and colitis. Curr Top Microbiol Immunol 250:109–125

Faust C, Ye B, Song K-P (1998) The enzymatic domain of *Clostridium difficile* toxin A is located within its N-terminal region. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 251:100–105

Fiorentini C, Arancia G, Paradisi S, Donelli G, Giuliano M, Piemonte F, Mastrantonio P (1989) Effects of Clostridium difficile toxins A and B on cytoskeleton organization in HEp-2 cells: a comparative morphological study. Toxicon 27:1209–1218

Fiorentini C, Fabbri A, Falzano L, Fattorossi A, Matarrese P, Rivabene R, Donelli G (1998) Clostridium *difficile* toxin B induces apoptosis in intestinal cultured cells. Infect Immun 66:2660–2665

Fiorentini C, Thelestam M (1991) Clostridium difficile toxin A and its effects on cells. Toxicon 29:543–567

Fiorentini C, Malorni W, Paradisi S, Giuliano M, Mastrantonio P, Donelli G (1990) Interaction of Clostridium difficile toxin A with cultured cells: cytoskeletal changes and nuclear polarization. Infect Immun 58:2329–2336

Florin I, Thelestam M (1983) Internalization of *Clostridium difficile* cytotoxin into cultured human lung fibroblasts. Biochim Biophys Acta 763:383–392

Florin I, Thelestam M (1986) Lysosomal involvement in cellular intoxication with Clostridium difficile toxin B. Microb Pathogen 1:373–385

Frey SM, Wilkins TD (1992) Localization of two epitopes recognized by monoclonal antibody PCG-4 on *Clostridium difficile* toxin A. Infect Immun 60:2488–2492

Frisch C, Gerhard R, Aktories K, Hofmann F, Just I (2003) The complete receptor-binding domain of Clostridium difficile toxin A is required for endocytosis. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 300:706–711

Garcia JL, Sánchez-Beato AR, Medrano FJ, López R (1998) Versatility of choline-binding domain. Microb Drug Resist 4:25–36

Genth H, Hofmann F, Selzer J, Rex G, Aktories K, Just I (1996) Difference in protein substrate specificity between hemorrhagic toxin and lethal toxin from *Clostridium sordellii*. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 229:370–374

Genth H, Aktories K, Just I (1999) Monoglucosylation of RhoA at Threonine-37 blocks cytosol-membrane cycling. J Biol Chem 274:29050–29056

Genth H, Selzer J, Busch C, Dumbach J, Hofmann F, Aktories F, Just I (2000) New method to generate enzymatically deficient *Clostridium difficile* toxin B as an antigen for immunization. Infect Immun 68:1094–1101

Gerhard R, Schmidt G, Hofmann F, Aktories K (1998) Activation of Rho GTPases by Escherichia coli cytotoxic necrotizing factor 1 increases intestinal permeability in Caco-2 cells. Infect Immun 66:5125–5131

Geric B, Johnson S, Gerding DN, Grabnar M, Rupnik M (2003) Frequency of binary toxin genes among Clostridium difficile strains that do not produce large clostridial cytotoxins. J Clin Microbiol 41:5227–5232

Geyer M, Wilde C, Selzer J, Aktories K, Kalbitzer HR (2003) Glucosylation of Ras by Clostridium sordellii lethal toxin: consequences for effector loop conformations observed by NMR spectroscopy. Biochemistry 42:11951–11959

Gomez J, Martinez C, Gonzalez A, Rebollo A (1998) Dual role of Ras and Rho proteins—at the cutting edge of life and death. Immunol Cell Biol 76:125–134

Green GA, Schué V, Monteil H (1995) Cloning and characterization of the cytotoxin L-encoding gene of *Clostridium sordellii*: Homology with *Clostridium difficile* cytotoxin B. Gene 161:57–61

Gründling A, Manson MD, Young R (2001) Holins kill without warning. Proc Natl Acad Sci 98:9348–9352
Hall A (1998) Rho GTPases and the actin cytoskeleton. Science 279:509–514
Hammond GA, Johnson JL (1995) The toxinogenic element of Clostridium difficile strain VPI 10463. Microb Pathogen 19 203–213
Hatheway CL (1990) Toxigenic clostridia. Clin Microbiol Rev 3:66–98
Haug G, Leemhuis J, Tiemann D, Meyer DK, Aktories K, Barth H (2003) The host cell chaperone Hsp90 is essential for translocation of the binary Clostridium botulinum C2 toxin into the cytosol. J Biol Chem 278:32266–32274
He D, Hagen J, Pothoulakis C, Chen M, Medina ND, Warny M, LaMont JT (2000) Clostridium difficile toxin A causes early damage to mitochondria in cultured cells. Gastroenterology 119:139–150
He D, Sougioultzis S, Hagen S, Liu J, Keates S, Keates AC, Pothoulakis C, LaMont JM (2002) Clostridium difficile toxin A triggers human colonocyte IL-8 release via mitochondrial oxygen radical generation. Gastroenterology 122:1048–1057
Hecht G, Pothoulakis C, LaMont JT, Madara JL (1988) *Clostridium difficile* toxin A perturbs cytoskeletal structure and tight junction permeability of cultured human intestinal epithelial monolayers. J Clin Invest 82:1516–1524
Hecht G, Koutsouris A, Pothoulakis C, LaMont JT, Madara JL (1992) *Clostridium difficile* toxin B disrupts the barrier function of T_{84} monolayers. Gastroenterology 102:416–423
Henriques B, Florin I, Thelestam M (1987) Cellular internalization of *Clostridium difficile* toxin A. Microb Pathogen 2:455–463
Herrmann C, Ahmadian MR, Hofmann F, Just I (1998) Functional consequences of monoglucosylation of H-Ras at effector domain amino acid threonine-35. J Biol Chem 273:16134–16139
Hofmann F, Herrmann A, Habermann E, Von Eichel-Streiber C (1995) Sequencing and analysis of the gene encoding the α-toxin of *Clostridium novyi* proves its homology to toxins A and B of *Clostridium difficile*. Mol Gen Genet 247:670–679
Hofmann F, Rex G, Aktories K, Just I (1996) The Ras-related protein Ral is monoglucosylated by *Clostridium sordellii* lethal toxin. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 227:77–81
Hofmann F, Busch C, Prepens U, Just I, Aktories K (1997) Localization of the glucosyltransferase activity of *Clostridium difficile* toxin B to the N-terminal part of the holotoxin. J Biol Chem 272:11074–11078
Hofmann F, Busch C, Aktories K (1998) Chimeric clostridial cytotoxins: identification of the N-terminal region involved in protein substrate recognition. Infect Immun 66:1076–1081
Hundsberger T, Braun V, Weidmann M, Leukel P, Sauerborn M, Von Eichel-Streiber C (1997) Transcription analysis of the genes *tcdA-E* of the pathogenicity locus of *Clostridium difficile*. Eur J Biochem 244:735–742
Johal SS, Solomon K, Dodson S, Borriello P, Mahida YR (2004) Differential effects of varying concentrations of Clostridium difficile toxin A on epithelial barrier function and expression of cytokines. J Infect Dis 189:2110–2119
Johnson S, Sambol SP, Brazier JS, Delmee M, Avesani V, Gerding DN (2003) International typing study of toxin A-negative, toxin B-positive Clostridium difficile variants. J Clin Microbiol 41:1543–1547
Jones SL, Blikslager AT (2002) Pole of the enteric nervous system in the pathophysiology of secretory diarrhea. J Vet Intern Med 16:222–228
Just I, Boquet P (2000) Large clostridial cytotoxins as tools in cell biology. Curr Top Microbiol Immunol 250:97–107
Just I, Selzer J, Wilm M, Von Eichel-Streiber C, Mann M, Aktories K (1995a) Glucosylation of Rho proteins by *Clostridium difficile* toxin B. Nature 375:500–503
Just I, Wilm M, Selzer J, Rex G, von Eichel-Streiber C, Mann M, Aktories K (1995b) The enterotoxin from *Clostridium difficile* (ToxA) monoglucosylates the Rho proteins. J Biol Chem 270:13932–13936
Just I, Selzer J, Hofmann F, Green GA, Aktories K (1996) Inactivation of Ras by *Clostridium sordellii* lethal toxin-catalyzed glucosylation. J Biol Chem 271:10149–10153
Just I, Selzer J, Hofmann F, Aktories K (1997) Clostridium difficile toxin B as a probe for Rho GTPases. In: Aktories K (ed) Bacterial toxins—tools in cell biology and pharmacology. Chapman & Hall, Weinheim, pp 159–168
Karlsson KA (1995) Microbial recognition of target-cell glycoconjugates. Curr Opin Struct Biol 5:622–635
Kaul P, Silverman J, Shen WH, Blanke SR, Huynh PD, Finkelstein A, Collier RJ (1996) Roles of Glu 349 and Asp 352 in membrane insertion and translocation by diphtheria toxin. Protein Sci 5:687–692
Kelly CP, LaMont JT (1998) *Clostridium difficile* infection. Annu Rev Med 49:375–390
Kelly CP, Pothoulakis C, LaMont JT (1994) *Clostridium difficile* colitis. N Engl J Med 330:257–262
Krivan HC, Wilkins TD (1987) Purification of *Clostridium difficile* toxin A by affinity chromatography on immobilized thyroglobulin. Infect Immun 55(8):1873–1877

Krivan HC, Clark GF, Smith DF, Wilkins TD (1986) Cell surface binding site for *Clostridium difficile* enterotoxin: evidence for a glycoconjugate containing the sequence Galα1–3Galβ1–4GlcNAc. Infect Immun 53:573–581

Kuijper EJ, de Weerdt J, Kato H, Kato N, van Dam AP, van der Vorm ER, Weel J, van Rheenen C, Dankert J (2001) Nosocomial outbreak of Clostridium difficile-associated diarrhea due to a clindamycin-resistant enterotoxin A-negative strain. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis 20:528–534

Kushnaryov VM, Sedmark JJ (1989) Effect of *Clostridium difficile* enterotoxin A on ultrastructure of Chinese hamster ovary cells. Infect Immun 57(12):3914–3921

Kushnaryov VM, Redlich PN, Sedmak JJ, Lyerly DM, Wilkins TD, Grossberg SE (1992) Cytotoxicity of *Clostridium difficile* toxin A for human colonic and pancreatic carcinoma cell lines. Cancer Res 52:5096–5099

Larsen RD, Rivera-Marrero CA, Ernst LK, Cummings RD, Lowe JB (1990) Frameshift and nonsense mutations in a human genomic sequence homologous to a murine UDP-Gal:β-$_{D}$-Gal(1,4)-$_{D}$-GlcNAc α(1,3)-galactosyltransferase cDNA. J Biol Chem 265:7055–7061

Laughlin MR, Petit WA, Dizon JM, Shulman RG, Barrett EJ (1988) NMR measurements of in vivo myocardial glycogen metabolism. J Biol Chem 263:2285–2291

Lyerly DM, Lockwood DE, Richardson SH, Wilkins TD (1982) Biological activities of toxins A and B of *Clostridium difficile*. Infect Immun 35:1147–1150

Lyerly DM, Saum KE, MacDonald DK, Wilkins TD (1985) Effects of *Clostridium difficile* toxins given intragastrically to animals. Infect Immun 47:349–352

Lyerly DM, Phelps CJ, Toth J, Wilkins TD (1986) Characterization of toxins A and B of *Clostridium difficile* with monoclonal antibodies. Infect Immun 54:70–76

Mahida YR, Makh S, Hyde S, Gray T, Borriello SP (1996) Effect of *Clostridium difficile* toxin A on human intestinal epithelial cells: induction of interleukin 8 production and apoptosis after cell detachment. Gut 38:337–347

Mahida YR, Galvin A, Makh S, Hyde S, Sanfilippo L, Borriello SP, Sewell JL (1998) Effect of Clostridium difficile toxin A on human colonic lamina propria cells: early loss of macrophages followed by T-cell apoptosis. Infect Immun 66:5462–5469

Malorni W, Fiorentini C, Paradisi S, Giuliano M, Mastrantonio P, Donelli G (1990) Surface blebbing and cytoskeletal changes induced in vitro by toxin B from Clostridium difficile: an immunochemical and ultrastructural study. Exp Mol Pathol 52:340–356

Mani N, Dupuy B (2001) Regulation of toxin synthesis in Clostridium difficile by an alternative RNA polymerase sigma factor. Proc Natl Acad Sci 98:5844–5849

Mantyh CR, McVey DC, Vigna SR (2000) Extrinsic surgical denervation inhibits Clostridium difficile toxin A-induced enteritis in rats. Neurosci Lett 292:95–98

Moore R, Pothoulakis C, LaMont JT, Carlson S, Madara JL (1990) C. difficile toxin A increases intestinal permeability and induces Cl-. Am J Physiol 259:G165–G172

Moos M, Von Eichel-Streiber C (2000) Purification and evaluation of large clostridial cytotoxins that inhibit small GTPases of the Rho and Ras subfamily. Methods Enzymol 325:114–125

Mukherjee K, Karlsson S, Burman LG, Akerlund T (2002) Proteins released during high toxin production in Clostridium difficile. Microbiology-Sgm 148:2245–2253

Müller S, Von Eichel-Streiber C, Moos M (1999) Impact of amino acids 22–27 of Rho-subfamily GTPases on glucosylation by the large clostridial cytotoxins TcsL-1522, TcdB-1470 and TcdB-8864. Eur J Biochem 266:1073–1080

Mylonakis E, Ryan ET, Calderwood SB (2001) Clostridium difficile-associated diarrhea. Arch Intern Med 161:525–533

Neunlist M, Barouk J, Michel K, Just I, Oreshkova T, Schemann M, Galmiche JP (2003) Toxin B of Clostridium difficile activates human VIP submucosal neurons in part via an Il-1beta-dependent pathway. Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol 285:G1028–G1036

Nusrat A, Giry M, Turner JR, Colgan SP, Parkos CA, Carnes D, Lemichez E, Boquet P, Madara JL (1995) Rho protein regulates tight junctions and perijunctional actin organization in polarized epithelia. Proc Natl Acad Sci 92:10629–10633

Oksche A, Nakov R, Habermann E (1992) Morphological and biochemical study of cytoskeletal changes in cultured cells after extracellular application of *Clostridium novyi* alpha-toxin. Infect Immun 60:3002–3006

Peppelenbosch MP, Qiu R-G, De Vries-Smits AMM, Tertoolen LGJ, de Laat SW, McCormick F, Hall A, Symons MH, Bos JL (1995) Rac mediates growth factor-induced arachidonic acid release. Cell 81:849–856

Perelle S, Gibert M, Bourlioux P, Corthier G, Popoff MR (1997) Production of a complete binary toxin (actin-specific ADP-ribosyltransferase) by *Clostridium difficile* CD196. Infect Immun 65:1402–1407

Petit P, Bréard J, Montalescot V, El Hadj NB, Levade T, Popoff M, Geny B (2003) Lethal toxin from Clostridium sordellii induces apoptotic cell death by disruption of mitochondrial homeostasis in HL-60 cells. Cell Microbiol 5:761–771

Pfeifer G, Schirmer J, Leemhuis J, Busch C, Meyer DK, Aktories K, Barth H (2003) Cellular uptake of Clostridium difficile toxin B. Translocation of the N-terminal catalytic domain into the cytosol of eucaryotic cells. J Biol Chem 278(45):44535–44541

Popoff MR (1987) Purification and characterization of *Clostridium sordellii* lethal toxin and cross-reactivity with *Clostridium difficile* cytotoxin. Infect Immun 55:35–43

Popoff MR, Rubin EJ, Gill DM, Boquet P (1988) Actin-specific ADP-ribosyltransferase produced by a clostridium difficile strain. Infect Immun 56:2299–2306

Popoff MR, Chaves OE, Lemichez E, Von Eichel-Streiber C, Thelestam M, Chardin P, Cussac D, Chavrier P, Flatau G, Giry M, Gunzburg H, Boquet P (1996) Ras, Rap, and Rac small GTP-binding proteins are targets for Clostridium sordellii lethal toxin glucosylation. J Biol Chem 271:10217–10224

Pothoulakis C, LaMont JT (2001) Microbes and microbial toxins: Paradigms for microbial-mucosal interactions. Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol 280:G178–G183

Pothoulakis C, LaMont JT, Eglow R, Gao N, Rubins JB, Theoharides TC, Dickey BF (1991) Characterizing of rabbit ileal receptors for *Clostridium difficile* toxin A. J Clin Invest 88:119–125

Pothoulakis C, Galili U, Castagliuolo I, Kelly CP, Nikulasson S, Dudeja PK, Brasitus TA, LaMont JT (1996a) A human antibody binds to α-galactose receptors and mimics the effects of *Clostridium difficile* toxin A in rat colon. Gastroenterology 110:1704–1712

Pothoulakis C, Gilbert RJ, Cladaras C, Castagliuolo I, Semenza G, Hitti Y, Montcrief JS, Linevsky J, Kelly CP, Nikulasson S, Desai HP, Wilkins TD, LaMont JT (1996b) Rabbit sucrase-isomaltase contains a functional intestinal receptor for *Clostridium difficile* toxin A. J Clin Invest 98:641–649

Pothoulakis C, Castagliuolo I, LaMont JT (1998) Nerves and intestinal mast cells modulate responses to enterotoxins. News Physiol Sci 13:58–63

Poxton IR, McCoubrey J, Blair G (2001) The pathogenicity of Clostridium difficile. Clin Microbiol Infect 7:421–427

Qa'Dan M, Spyres LM, Ballard JD (2000) pH-induced conformational changes in *Clostridium difficile* toxin B. Infect Immun 68:2470–2474

Qa'Dan M, 'Ramsey M, Daniel J, Spyres LM, Safiejko-Mroczka B, Ortiz-Leduc W, Ballard JD (2002) Clostridium difficile toxin B activates dual caspase-dependent and caspase-independent apoptosis in intoxicated cells. Cell Microbiol 4:425–434

Ratts R, Zeng H, Berg EA, Blue C, McComb ME, Costello CE, VanderSpek J, Murphy JR (2003) The cytosolic entry of diphtheria toxin catalytic domain requires a host cell cytosolic translocation factor complex. J Cell Biol 160:1139–1150

Ridley AJ (2001) Rho family proteins: coordinating cell responses. Trends Cell Biol 11:471–477

Rolfe RD (1991) Binding kinetics of *Clostridium difficile* toxins A and B to intestinal brush border membranes from infant and adult hamsters. Infect Immun 59:1223–1230

Rolfe RD, Song W (1995) Immunoglobulin and non-immunoglobulin components of human milk inhibit *Clostridium difficile* toxin A-receptor binding. J Med Microbiol 42:10–19

Rosenow C, Ryan P, Weiser JN, Johnson S, Fontan P, Ortqvist A, Masure HR (1997) Contribution of novel choline-binding proteins to adherence, colonization and immunogenicity of Streptococcus pneumonia. Mol Microbiol 25:819–829

Ruoslahti E (1997) Stretching is good for a cell. Science 276:1345–1346

Rupnik M, Avesani V, Janc M, Von Eichel-Streiber C, Delmée M (1998) A novel toxinotyping scheme and correlation of toxinotypes with serogroups of *Clostridium difficile* isolates. J Clin Microbiol 36:2240–2247

Rupnik M, Grabnar M, Geric B (2003a) Binary toxin producing Clostridium difficile strains. Anaerobe 9:289–294

Rupnik M, Kato N, Grabnar M, Kato H (2003b) New types of toxin A-negative, toxin B-positive strains among Clostridium difficile isolates from Asia. J Clinic Microbiol 41:1118–1125

Sambol SP, Merrigan MM, Lyerly D, Gerding DN, (2000) Toxin gene analysis of a variant strain of Clostridium difficile that causes human clinical disease. Infect Immun 68:5480–5487

Sauerborn M, Von Eichel-Streiber C (1990) Nucleotide sequence of *Clostridium difficile* toxin A. Nucleic Acids Res 18:1629–1630

Savidge TC, Pan W-H, Newman P, O'Brien M, Anton PM, Pothoulakis C (2003) Clostridium difficile toxin B is an inflammatory enterotoxin in human intestine. Gastroenterology 125:413–420

Schallehn G, Eklund MW, Brandis H (1980) Phage conversion of Clostridium novyi type A. Zbl Bakt. A247:95–100

Schiavo G, van der Goot FG (2001) The bacterial toxin toolkit. Nat Mol Cell Biol 2:530–537

Schmidt M, Vo M, Thiel M, Bauer B, Grannass A, Tapp E, Cool RH, De Gunzburg J, Von Eichel-Streiber C, Jakobs KH (1998) Specific inhibition of phorbol ester-stimulated phospholipase D by *Clostridium sordellii* lethal toxin and *Clostridium difficile* toxin B-1470 in HEK-293 cells. J Biol Chem 273:7413–7422

Sehr P, Joseph G, Genth H, Just I, Pick E, Aktories K (1998) Glucosylation and ADP-ribosylation of Rho proteins—effects on nucleotide binding, GTPase activity, and effector-coupling. Biochemistry 37:5296–5304

Selzer J, Hofmann F, Rex G, Wilm M, Mann M, Just I, Aktories K (1996) *Clostridium novyi* α-toxin-catalyzed incorporation of GlcNAc into Rho subfamily proteins. J Biol Chem 271:25173–25177

Shibata Y, Nakamura H, Kato S, Tomoike H (1996) Cellular detachment and deformation induce IL-8 gene expression in human bronchial epithelial cells. J Immunol 156:772–777

Siffert J-C, Baldacini O, Kuhry J-G, Wachsmann D, Benabdelmoumene S, Faradji A, Monteil H, Poindron P (1993) Effects of *Clostridium difficile* toxin B on human monocytes and macrophages: Possible relationship with cytoskeletal rearrangement. Infect Immun 61:1082–1090

Smith JA, Cooke DL, Hyde S, Borriello SP, Long RG (1997) *Clostridium difficile* toxin A binding to human intestinal epithelial cells. J Med Microbiol 46:953–958

Spyres LM, Qa'Dan M, Meader A, Tomasek JJ, Howard EW, Ballard JD (2001) Cytosolic delivery and characterization of the TcdB glucosylating domain by using heterologous protein fusion. Infect Immun 69:599–601

Spyres LM, Daniel J, Hensley A, Qa'Dan M, Ortiz-Leduc W, Ballard J (2003) Mutational analysis of the enzymatic domain of Clostridium difficile toxin B reveals novel inhibitors of the wild-type toxin. Infect Immun 71:3294–3301

Stoddart B, Wilcox MH (2002) Clostridium difficile. Curr Opin Infect Dis 15:513–518

Surawicz CM, McFarland LV (1999) Pseudomembranous colitis: causes and cures. Digestion 60:91–100

Takai Y, Sasaki T, Matozaki T (2001) Small GTP-binding proteins. Physiol Rev 81:153–208

Teneberg S, Lönnroth I, López JFT, Galili U, Halvarsson MÖ, Ångström J, Karlsson KA (1996) Molecular mimicry in the recognition of glycosphingolipids by Galα3Galβ4GlcNAcβ-binding *Clostridium difficile* toxin A, human natural anti α-galactosyl IgG and the monoclonal antibody Gal-13: characterization of a binding-active human glycosphingolipid, non-identical with the animal receptor. Glycobiology 6:599–609

Thelestam M, Chaves-Olarte E (2000) Cytotoxic effects of the Clostridium difficile toxins. Curr Top Microbiol Immunol 250:85–96

Torres J, Camorlinga-Ponce M, Munoz O (1992) Sensitivity in culture of epithelial cells from rhesus monkey kidney and human colon carcinoma to toxins A and B from Clostridium difficile. Toxicon 30:419–426

Triadafilopoulos G, Pothoulakis C, O'Brien MJ, LaMont JT (1987) Differential effects of *Clostridium difficile* toxins A and B on rabbit ileum. Gastroenterology 93:273–279

Triadafilopoulos G, Pothoulakis C, Weiss R, Tiampaolo C, LaMont JT (1989) Comparative study of Clostridium difficile toxin A and cholera toxin in rabbit ileum. Gastroenterology 97:1186–1192

Tucker KD, Wilkins TD (1991) Toxin A of *Clostridium difficile* binds to the human carbohydrate antigens I, X, and Y. Infect Immun 59:73–78

Unligil UM, Rini JM (2000) Glycosyltransferase structure and mechanism. Curr Opin Struct Biol 10:510–517

Unligil UM, Zhou S, Yuwaraj S, Sarkar M, Schachter H, Rini JM (2000) X-ray crystal structure of rabbit N-acetylglucosaminyltransferase I: catalytic mechanism and a new protein superfamily. EMBO J 19:5269–5280

Van Aelst L, D'Souza-Schorey C (1997) Rho GTPases and signaling networks. Genes & Dev 11:2295–2322

Vetter IR, Hofmann F, Wohlgemuth S, Herrmann C, Just I (2000) Structural consequences of mono-glucosylation of Ha-Ras by Clostridium sordellii lethal toxin. J Mol Biol 301:1091–1095

Von Eichel-Streiber C (1993) Molecular biology of the clostridium difficile toxins. In: Sebald M (ed) Genetics and molecular biology of anaerobic bacteria. Springer-Verlag, New York, pp 264–289

Von Eichel-Streiber C, Sauerborn M (1990) Clostridium difficile toxin A carries a C-terminal structure homologous to the carbohydrate binding region of streptococcal glycosyltransferase. Gene 96:107–113

Von Eichel-Streiber C, Harperath U, Bosse D, Hadding U (1987) Purification of two high molecular weight toxins of Clostridium difficile which are antigenically related. Microb Pathogen 2:307–318

Von Eichel-Streiber C, Laufenberg-Feldmann R, Sartingen S, Schulze J, Sauerborn M (1990) Cloning of *Clostridium difficile* toxin B gene and demonstration of high N-terminal homology between toxins A and B. Med Microbiol Immunol 179:271–279

Von Eichel-Streiber C, Warfolomeow I, Knautz D, Sauerborn M, Hadding U (1991) Morphological changes in adherent cells induced by Clostridium difficile toxins. Biochem Soc Trans 19:1154–1160

Von Eichel-Streiber C, Laufenberg-Feldmann R, Sartingen S, Schulze J, Sauerborn M (1992a) Comparative sequence analysis of the Clostridium difficile toxins A and B. Mol Gen Genet 233:260–268

Von Eichel-Streiber C, Sauerborn M, Kuramitsu HK (1992b) Evidence for a modular structure of the homologous repetitive C-terminal carbohydrate-binding sites of *Clostridium difficile* toxins and *Streptococcus mutans* glucosyltransferases. J Bacteriol 174:6707–6710

Von Eichel-Streiber C, Meyer zu Heringdorf D, Habermann E, Sartingen S (1995) Closing in on the toxic domain through analysis of a variant *clostridium difficile* cytotoxin B. Mol Microbiol 17:313–321

Von Eichel-Streiber C, Boquet P, Sauerborn M, Thelestam M (1996) Large clostridial cytotoxins—a family of glycosyltransferases modifying small GTP-binding proteins. Trends Microbiol 4:375–382

Warny M, Keates AC, Keates S, Castagliuolo I, Zacks JK, Aboudola S, Qamar A, Pothoulakis C, LaMont JT, Kelly CP (2000) p38MAP kinase activation by Clostridum difficile toxin A mediates monocytes necrosis, IL-8 production, and enteritis. J Clin Invest 105:1147–1156

Wennerberg K, Der CJ (2004) Rho-family GTPases: it's not only Rac and Rho (and I like it). J Cell Sci 117:1301–1312

Wettschureck N, Offermanns S (2002) Rho/Rho-kinase mediated signaling in physiology and pathophysiology. J Mol Med 80:629–638

Wiggins CAR, Munro S (1998) Activity of the yeast *MNN1* α-1,3-mannosyltransferase requires a motif conserved in many other families of glycosyltransferases. Proc Natl Acad Sci 95:7945–7950

Wren BW (1991) A family of clostridial and streptococcal ligand-binding proteins with conserved C-terminal repeat sequences. Mol Microbiol 5:797–803

Zhang Z, Vuori K, Wang H-G, Reed JC, Ruoslahti E (1996) Integrin activation by R-ras. Cell 85:61–69

Zohn IM, Campbell SL, Khosravi-Far R, Rossman KL, Der CJ (1998) Rho family proteins and Ras transformation: the RHOad less traveled gets congested. Oncogene 17:1415–1438

Rev Physiol Biochem Pharmacol (2004) 152:49–63
DOI 10.1007/s10254-004-0026-4

C. Hoffmann · G. Schmidt

CNF and DNT

Published online: 29 July 2004

Abstract The actin cytoskeleton of mammalian cells is involved in many processes that affect the growth and colonization of bacteria, such as migration of immune cells, phagocytosis by macrophages, secretion of cytokines, maintenance of epithelial barrier functions and others. With respect to these functions, it is not surprising that many bacterial protein toxins, which are important virulence factors and causative agents of human and/or animal diseases, target the actin cytoskeleton of the host. Some toxins target actin directly, such as the C2 toxin produced by *Clostridium botulinum.* Moreover, bacterial toxins target the cytoskeleton indirectly by modifying actin regulators such as the low-molecular-mass guanosine triphosphate (GTP)-binding proteins of the Rho family. Remarkably, toxins affect these GTPases in a bidirectional manner. Some toxins inhibit and some activate the GTPases. Here we review the Rho-activating toxins CNF1 and CNF2 (cytotoxic necrotizing factors) from *Escherichia coli*, the *Yersinia* CNF_Y and the dermonecrotic toxin (DNT) from *Bordetella* species. We describe and compare their uptake into mammalian cells, mode of action, structure–function relationship, substrate specificity and role in diseases.

Rho GTPases

Rho guanosine triphosphatases (GTPases) belong to the Ras superfamily of low-molecular-mass GTPases and act as molecular switches in various signalling pathways. Rho GTPases are ubiquitously expressed. The family consists of more than 15 members, which share more than 50% sequence identity (for review see Takai et al. 2001). Like all members of GTP-binding proteins, they are active in the GTP-bound form and inactive when guanosine diphosphate (GDP)-bound. Activation occurs by nucleotide exchange catalysed by guanine nucleotide exchange factors (GEFs) and is inhibited by binding of guanine nucleotide dissociation inhibitors (GDIs). Inactivation occurs by hydrolysis of the bound

C. Hoffmann · G. Schmidt (✉)
Institut für Experimentelle und Klinische Pharmakologie und Toxikologie
der Albert-Ludwigs-Universität Freiburg, Albert-Str. 25, 79104 Freiburg, Germany
e-mail: Gudula.Schmidt@uni-freiburg.de · Tel.: +49-761-203-5316 · Fax: +49-761-203-5311

GTP. The intrinsic GTPase activity is catalysed by GTPase-activating proteins (GAPs) (Symons and Settleman 2000; Van Aelst and D'Souza-Schorey 1997).

Low-molecular-mass GTPases of the Rho family are known as master regulators of the actin cytoskeleton. Best studied are the morphological changes induced by RhoA, Rac1 and Cdc42. Activation of RhoA leads to the formation of actin stress fibres, bundles of actin filaments associated with myosin and other proteins. Cdc42 is known to induce the formation of filopodia, small actin protrusions at the leading edge of migrating cells, which appear to act as sensory elements more than to be driving forces for migrating cells.

The third well-characterized member of the Rho family, Rac, is involved in the formation of lamellipodia and membrane ruffles. These actin-containing structures are necessary for phagocytosis and cell movement. Besides their actin-regulating functions, Rho GTPases are involved in the control of transcriptional activation, cell transformation, apoptosis, cell polarization and others. Many Rho GTPase effectors involved in these processes have been identified, including protein kinases, lipid kinases, phospholipase D, scaffolding proteins and numerous adaptor proteins (for review see Takai et al. 2001; Etienne-Manneville and Hall 2002; Burridge and Wennerberg 2004).

As mentioned above, Rho GTPases are the eukaryotic targets of a variety of bacterial protein toxins that either inhibit or activate the Rho proteins.

Rho-inactivating toxins

One of the first toxins, identified as an inactivator of RhoA, was the C3 toxin from *Clostridium botulinum.* This toxin is an adenosine diphosphate (ADP)-ribosyltransferase that covalently modifies the small GTPases RhoA, B and C at Asn41 (Sekine et al. 1989). Other C3-like toxins, which share 30–70% amino acid sequence identity, are produced by *C. limosum* and *Staphylococcus aureus.* These toxins also ADP-ribosylate Rho GTPases, thereby inactivating them. The large clostridial cytotoxins modify GTPases by glucosylation (Just et al. 1995, 2000; Busch and Aktories 2000). Members of this toxin family are *C. difficile* toxins A and B, the lethal and the hemorrhagic toxins from *C. sordellii* and the alpha-toxin from *C. novyi*. These toxins modify a highly conserved threonine residue (Thr37 in RhoA) in the switch I region of the GTPases, which is involved in Mg^{2+}, nucleotide and effector binding. Thus, modification of this threonine causes inactivation of the GTPases (Sehr et al. 1998; Genth et al. 1999; Herrmann et al. 1998). The *Yersinia pseudotuberculosis* outer protein T (YopT) inactivates Rho GTPases by cleaving off the isoprene moiety of the GTPase thereby preventing membrane localization (Shao et al. 2002).

Recent studies indicate that Rho proteins are not exclusively covalently modified by bacterial toxins. Some bacterial effectors like the *Salmonella* SopEs and SptP modulate the activity of Rho GTPases by acting as regulatory proteins with GAP (SptP) or GEF (SopEs) functions (Galan and Fu 2000; Stender et al. 2000).

Rho-activating toxins

Besides the Rho-inactivating toxins, bacteria have evolved mechanisms for constitutive activation of Rho GTPases. Interestingly, not only inactivation, but also permanent activation of the GTPases leads to inhibition of immune responses of the host (Hofmann et

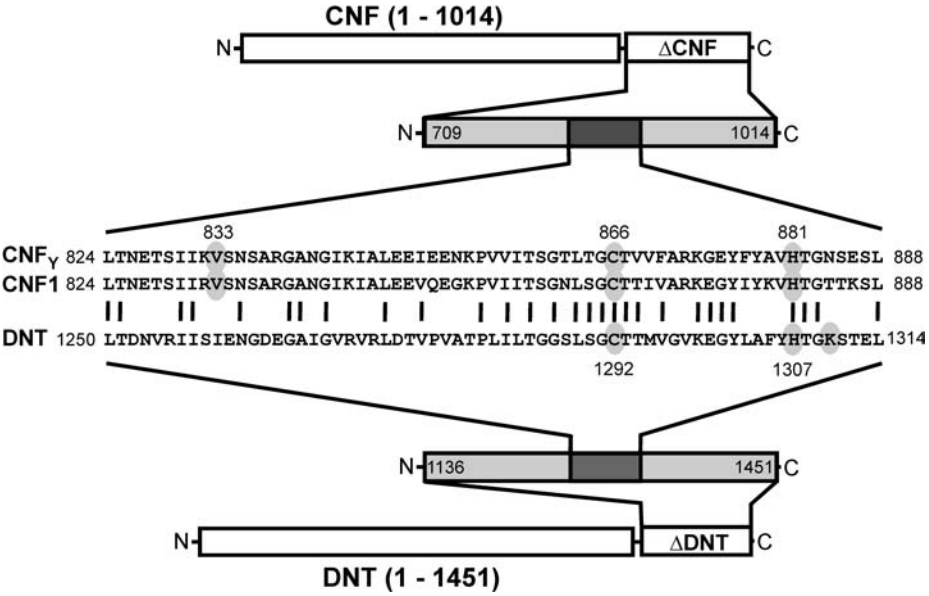


Fig. 1 Homology between CNF1, CNF_Y and DNT: CNF, CNF_Y and DNT consist of 1014 or 1451 (DNT) amino acids. The toxins share homology within their catalytic domains (ΔCNF and ΔCNF_Y, aa 709–1014 and ΔDNT, aa 1136–1451) which are located at the C termini of the proteins. Highest sequence similarity between DNT and the CNFs is observed in a stretch of 64 amino acid residues, which covers residue 1250–1314 of DNT, showing ~45% sequence identity (DNT and CNF1), whereas the amino acid sequence of the whole catalytic domain of DNT is only ~13% identical with the sequence of the catalytic domain of CNF1. Catalytically essential residues are marked with a *grey circle*

al. 2000; Rippere-Lampe et al. 2001a) and, for example, to opening of tight junctions (Gerhard et al. 1998).

More than 20 years ago, a toxin from *Escherichia coli* obtained from enteritis-affected children was isolated by Caprioli and co-workers. Because of its necrotizing effects on rabbit skin, they called the toxin cytotoxic necrotizing factor (CNF) (Caprioli et al. 1983). CNF1 and the homologue CNF2, which was identified later [90% sequence identity, (Oswald et al. 1994)], are produced by various pathogenic *E. coli* strains isolated from animals [e.g. piglets and calves (de Rycke et al. 1987)] and man (de Rycke et al. 1990). In contrast to CNF1, which is chromosomally encoded, CNF2 is located on a transmissible plasmid (Oswald and de Rycke 1990).

More recently, the gene for a CNF of *Yersinia pseudotuberculosis* (CNF_Y) with 65% nucleotide sequence identity was identified, and it is not located on the so-called virulence plasmid encoding the *Yersinia* outer proteins but is on the genome of the bacteria (Lockman et al. 2002).

All three CNFs have molecular masses of about 115 kDa. They are single-chain AB toxins with an N-terminal cell-binding domain [amino acids (aa) 53–190] and a C-terminal catalytic domain (aa 720–1014, Fig. 1) (Lemichez et al. 1997). The central part contains two hydrophobic helices (aa 350–372 and aa 387–412), which appear to be involved in membrane translocation (Pei et al. 2001) (see below).

DNT, which is produced by *Bordetella pertussis, B. parapertussis* and *B. bronchiseptica*, received its name from dermonecrotic effects caused by its intradermal injection

(Horiguchi et al. 1989). DNT is a large, 160-kDa, heat-labile protein that shares significant sequence similarity to the *E. coli* toxins. The homology with CNF1 and CNF2 is restricted to the catalytic domains at the C termini of the toxins, suggesting that both toxins share a similar molecular mechanism (see below).

Mechanism of uptake of CNFs

CNFs are cytotoxic for a wide variety of cells, including 3T3 fibroblasts, Chinese hamster ovary cells, Vero cells, T cells, epithelial cells, HeLa cells and cell lines of neuronal origin. This implies that a commonly expressed receptor is responsible for the uptake of CNF1. Recently, the receptor for the entry of the toxin into cells was suggested to be the 37-kDa laminin receptor precursor, which is ubiquitously expressed and interacts with the N-terminal part of the toxin in the yeast two-hybrid screen (Chung et al. 2003). Moreover, CNF-mediated RhoA activation and the uptake of CNF1-producing bacteria were inhibited by the addition of laminin receptor precursor (Chung et al. 2003). For the uptake of CNF, clathrin-dependent and independent endocytosis is crucial as has been shown with the use of filipin, which blocks clathrin-independent endocytosis (Torgersen et al. 2001). In both experiments, the cells were sensitive to CNF1. Following endocytosis and acidification of the endosomal compartment, CNF1 crosses the endosomal membrane to get into the cytosol (Contamin et al. 2000). For this translocation step, the translocation domain containing two hydrophobic helices connected by a loop of 5 amino acids seems to be necessary. It was suggested that the low pH of the endosome causes unfolding of CNF1 and leads to protonation of acidic residues and facilitates insertion into the membrane. According to this model, mutation of specific acidic residues in the translocation domain inhibits translocation of the toxin (Pei et al. 2001). These acidic residues are identical in CNF_Y, indicating that translocation of the *Yersinia* toxin occurs similar to that shown for the *E. coli* CNF1. It is not yet clear whether the CNF holotoxin or a fragment is translocated into the cytosol.

Uptake of DNT

The *Bordetella* DNT is a large, 160-kDa, heat-labile single-chain toxin that is composed—similar to CNFs—of a receptor-binding domain at the N-terminus and a C-terminal catalytic domain. Like CNF, it is endocytosed and released from the endosomal compartment after acidification. It was found that aa 1–531 of DNT blocked the intoxication of cells by full-length DNT, suggesting that this fragment retains the cell-binding domain of DNT (Kashimoto et al. 1999). The very N-terminal aa 1–54 of DNT are sufficient for binding to the cellular receptor. The iodinated DNT fragment (aa 1–54) binds to target cells. Moreover, the fragment competitively inhibits DNT uptake (Matsuzawa et al. 2002). More recently, a furin cleavage site within this binding domain was identified. Proteolytic processing of DNT by furin seems to be necessary for translocation of the toxin across cellular membranes. After cleavage, the translocation seems to be independent of the DNT receptor (Matsuzawa et al. 2003).

Mode of action of Rho-activating toxins

CNFs have been shown to induce the enlargement, spreading and multinucleation of culture cells. The toxins lead to the formation of filopodia, membrane ruffles and a dense network of actin stress fibres, indicating an activation of Rho proteins (compare Fig. 3) (Fiorentini et al. 1997). Moreover, CNFs change the migration behaviour of RhoA in sodium dodecyl sulphate polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (SDS-PAGE) (Oswald and de Rycke 1990; Oswald et al. 1994), a finding, which quite early suggested that a covalent modification of RhoA is catalysed by the toxins. Indeed, CNF1 deamidates glutamine 63 of RhoA (Schmidt et al. 1997; Flatau et al. 1997) or glutamine 61 of Rac and Cdc42 (Lerm et al. 1999a). Glutamine 63/61 is essential for the GTP hydrolysis catalysed by the GTPase. Exchange to any other amino acid blocks the GTP hydrolysing activity. Thus, GTP hydrolysis is blocked after treatment of Rho with CNF1/2 or CNF_Y also in the presence of a GAP and RhoA is held constitutively active (Hoffmann et al. 2004). CNF is highly specific for Rho GTPases. The minimal Rho sequence allowing deamidation or transglutamination (see below) by CNF1 is a peptide covering mainly the switch II region (Asp59–Asp78) of RhoA (Lerm et al. 1999a; Flatau et al. 2000). The high specificity of CNF1 can be explained by the localization of the catalytic core of CNF1 in a deep cleft, as was deduced from the crystal structure of the catalytic domain [see below (Buetow et al. 2001)]. In contrast to CNF1 and CNF2, CNF_Y has even higher substrate specificity. It has been shown to selectively activate RhoA, and only moderately activate other Rho GTPases like Rac and Cdc42 in HeLa cells and Rat hippocampal cells, whereas no difference could be detected in vitro (Hoffmann et al. 2004). The reason for the RhoA specificity of CNF_Y in living cells might be due to a different uptake mechanism or different localization within the cell and remains to be analysed.

Transglutaminases are mammalian enzymes that catalyse the deamidation of glutamine residues within protein chains (Lorand and Graham 2003). In the presence of primary amines, however, these enzymes covalently link the amine to glutamine, thereby polyaminating the amino acid. Moreover, transglutaminases are protein crosslinking enzymes that connect glutamine residues with lysines of a different protein. CNFs ability to crosslink Rho GTPases or to polyaminate them has been analysed. Besides CNFs deamidating ac-

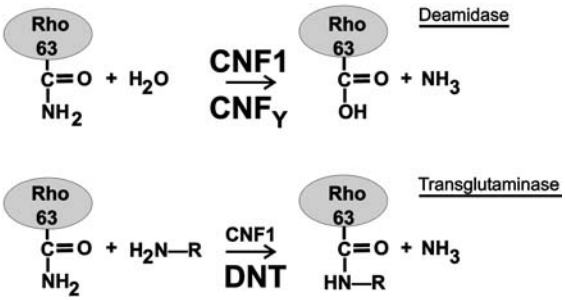


Fig. 2 Molecular mechanism of Rho activation by CNF1, CNF_Y and DNT: Glutamine 63 of RhoA (Gln 61 of Rac and Cdc42) is essential for the hydrolysis of bound GTP. CNF1, CNF_Y and DNT deamidate this glutamine residue, creating glutamic acid, and the GTP hydrolysing activity of the GTPase is blocked. In the presence of primary amines, CNF1 and DNT can transglutaminate Rho at the same residue, thereby also blocking hydrolysis of GTP. Polyamination is the preferred activity of DNT. During deamidation as well as during transglutamination ammonia is released

tivity, they have been shown to catalyse the transglutamination of the same glutamine residue of Rho. This modification also leads to permanent activation of the GTPases (Schmidt et al. 1998). In contrast, no crosslinking activity has been found.

A similar mechanism of Rho modification as catalysed by CNF1 was reported for the CNF1-related DNT from *Bordetella* species (Horiguchi et al. 1997; Kashimoto et al. 1999; Schmidt et al. 1999b; Horiguchi 2001).

It was demonstrated that DNT causes two different covalent modifications of Rho resulting in either slightly slower or slightly faster migration of the GTPase in SDS-PAGE. The faster migrating RhoA represents the transglutaminated GTPase, whereas the slower form is the deamidated GTPase (Schmidt et al. 1999b). DNT causes the polyamination of glutamine 63/61 of Rho GTPases in the presence of primary amines and can also catalyse the deamidation with water. Both modifications of Rho occur at position Gln63. No crosslinking activity has been found for DNT. However, it appears that DNT prefers transglutamination, whereas CNF is primarily a deamidase (Fig. 2) (Schmidt et al. 1999b). Recently, putrescine, spermidine and spermine have been identified as in vivo substrates for the transglutamination (Masuda et al. 2000; Schmidt et al. 2001). At least in vitro, lysine is a preferred substrate for transglutamination by DNT (Schmidt et al. 2001). Similar to CNF, the DNT targets are not only Rho but also Cdc42 and Rac.

Although CNF and DNT modify the same set of Rho GTPases, they differ in their respective requirements for substrate recognition. A peptide covering the switch II region of RhoA (Asp59–Asp78) is sufficient for deamidation by CNF1 even though the reaction is about 110 times slower. Mutations of amino acids Arg68 and Leu72 within this region of RhoA block its modification by CNF, indicating the involvement of these residues in substrate recognition (Lerm et al. 1999a). However, a shorter peptide (aa 59–69) has been identified as the minimal RhoA sequence required for deamidation (Flatau et al. 2000). In contrast to CNF1, no deamidation or transglutamination of these peptides by DNT is detected, supporting the notion that other regions besides switch II are essentially required. A good candidate is the switch I region, since prior glucosylation of Thr37 by toxin B prevents modification by DNT. Modification by DNT is dependent on the type of nucleotide bound to RhoA, and only GDP-bound RhoA is substrate (Masuda et al. 2000; Schmidt et al. 1999a), while CNF1 equally accepts the GTP- and the GDP-bound form. Taken together, these findings show that structural requirements for DNT substrate recognition are more stringent than for CNF1 and that additional elements in RhoA are needed.

Cell biological effects

As mentioned above, cultured mammalian cells treated with CNFs are characterized by dramatic changes of actin-containing structures, including stress fibres, lamellipodia and filopodia (Fig. 3). The formation of lamellipodia and membrane ruffles is required for phagocytosis and endocytosis. Accordingly, activation of Rho GTPases by CNF induces phagocytic behaviour and macropinocytosis in mammalian cells (e.g. human epithelial cells), which are non-professional phagocytes (Falzano et al. 1993; Fiorentini et al. 2001). One of the most striking effects of CNF1 is the formation of multinucleated cells (Oswald et al. 1989). It is not yet clear whether activation of all Rho GTPases is needed for this effect or which GTPases are involved. The effect might be caused by blocking cell division without changes in nuclear cycling, or by increasing in the rate of nuclear cycles within

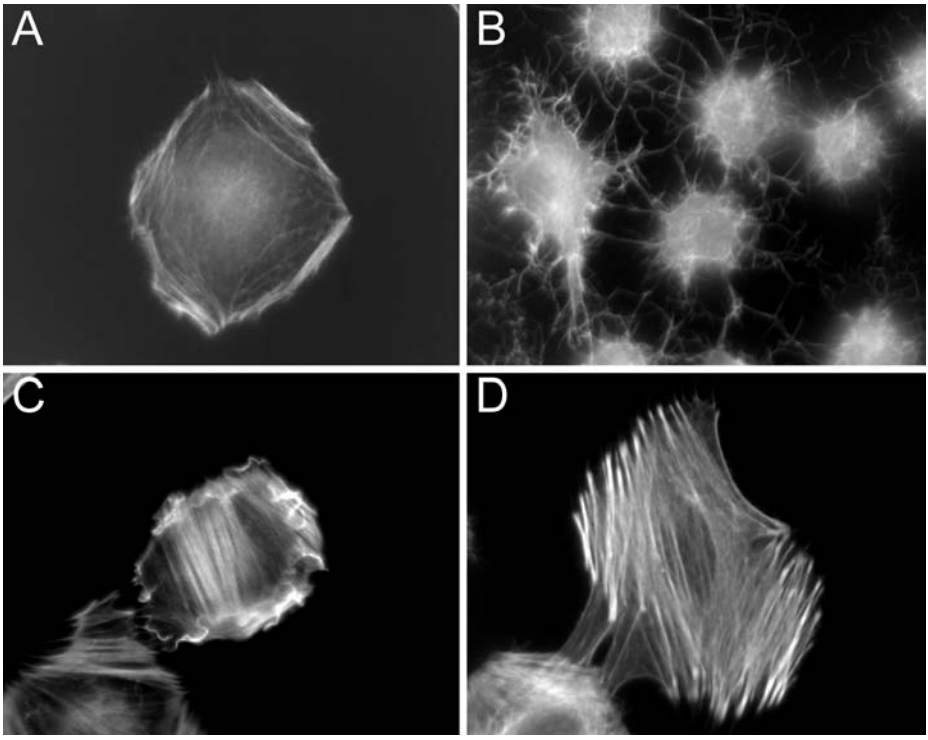


Fig. 3A–D Changes of the actin cytoskeleton of HeLa cells induced by ToxB, CNF1 and CNF_Y, respectively. HeLa cells (untreated; **A**) have been treated with *Clostridium difficile* toxin B (ToxB; **B**), *Escherichia coli* cytotoxic necrotizing factor 1 (CNF1; **C**) or *Yersinia pseudotuberculosis* cytotoxic necrotizing factor 1 (CNF_Y; **D**) for 2 h at 37°C, fixed and stained with rhodamine-phalloidine (F-actin staining)

one cell division cycle. It has been shown that CNF2 uncouples S-phase from mitosis (Denko et al. 1997). Thus, it affects the synthesis of cytoplasmic material without a complete mitosis before starting another S-phase. Quite early it was found that CNF causes phosphorylation of paxillin and Fak kinase, which are known to also be involved in nuclear signalling. This pathway is Rho dependent but does not involve the classical Map kinase pathway (Lacerda et al. 1997).

Rac is involved in the activation of c-Jun kinase. Therefore, CNF1 causes activation of this kinase. Surprisingly, c-Jun kinase activity is only transiently increased after CNF treatment of cells, although the GTPases are constitutively activated (Lerm et al. 1999b). Recently, the reason for the transient activation was identified. It was shown that Rac, which induces c-Jun kinase activation, is ubiqitinated and markedly degraded by a proteasome-dependent pathway in CNF1-treated HEK293 cells (Lerm et al. 2002; Doye et al. 2002). Thus, it appears that the targeted cell is able to block the persistent activation of deamidated Rac by rapid degradation. This effect is functionally comparable with the tight regulation of GTPases by *Salmonella* strains producing a GAP as well as a GEF for Rho GTPases (Kubori and Galan 2003). Thereby the bacteria are able to cause activation of Rho GTPases directly followed by their inactivation. An important functional role of the degradation of Rac in the infection process is proposed, whereby elimination of the Rac GTPase increases the mobility of CNF-affected target cells and facilitates invasion of host

cells and crossing of the epithelial barrier by the CNF-producing *E. coli* (Doye et al. 2002). A further function of limited activation of Rho GTPases by deamidation and subsequent degradation could be the restriction of an inflammatory response of the host cells, since activated Rho GTPases lead to upregulation of inflammatory mediators in human umbilical vein endothelial cells (HUVEC) cells, mostly triggered by Rac and Cdc42 (Munro et al. 2004).

The DNT-induced morphological changes have not been precisely analysed so far. DNT modifies the same target amino acid in the same set of Rho GTPases leading to their constitutive activation. This suggests that both toxins induce comparable morphological changes in mammalian cells. In fact, DNT induces similar but not identical morphological changes (enlargement of cells, multinucleation, actin polymerization) as CNF. For example, DNT did not induce membrane ruffling in HeLa cells. Such differences could be explained by a possible sterical hindrance of interactions with some effectors due to transglutamination of Rac. In line with this, it was observed recently that DNT-modified Rac is activated but not degraded in mammalian cells (Pop et al. 2004). Although RhoA, Rac and Cdc42 are activated by CNF1, the set of Rho-GTPases that are degraded seem to be cell-type specific. In HUVEC cells CNF-activated RhoA, Rac and Cdc42 are degraded (Munro et al. 2004), whereas in HEK293 cells degradation is restricted to Rac and even isotype-specific Rac1 (Pop et al. 2004). Therefore, the requirements for degradation of CNF-activated Rac have been analysed in detail, recently. Interaction of this protein with Rac depends on the integrity of the effector domain (Doye et al. 2002). Moreover, the presence of a putative destruction box, correct localization of the GTPase and/or specific protein interactions at the C-terminus seem to be essential for degradation. The polybasic region and amino acids 90, 107, 147 and 151 define isotype-specific degradation of Rac in HEK293 cells. Although these residues have not been identified as crucial for any effector interaction, they are located on the same side of the Rac1 molecule and may be involved in binding of as-yet-unidentified proteins that specify Rac1 function (Pop et al. 2004).

Structure–function relationship

Recently, the crystal structure of the C-terminal fragment harbouring the catalytic domain of CNF1 was solved (Buetow et al. 2001). The structure provided new insight into the catalytic mechanism and how restriction to the specific substrate is achieved. It revealed a protein fold previously unknown that is likely to be unique to the family of deamidating/transglutaminating toxins. The centre of the catalytic domain is formed by a β-sandwich consisting of two mixed β-sheets (Fig. 4). It is surrounded by α-helices and extensive loop regions that line the entrance to a deep and narrow pocket, with the catalytic residues situated at the base of the pocket. This may explain the tight substrate specificity of CNF (see above). CNF possesses a catalytic triad reminiscent of that found in cysteine proteases and other members of the catalytic triad superfamily, e.g. eukaryotic transglutaminases.

The amino acids crucial for catalytic activity, Cys866 and His881, were first identified by mutation studies (Schmidt et al. 1998). These residues are conserved in all members of the CNF/DNT family. Mutation of Cys866 and His881 to serine and alanine, respectively, abolishes enzyme activity of CNF1. The crystal structure definitely defined the role of these residues and, moreover, identified the third amino acid residue involved in catalysis as Val833. Most catalytic triad enzymes have an asparagine (e.g. papain) or an aspartate

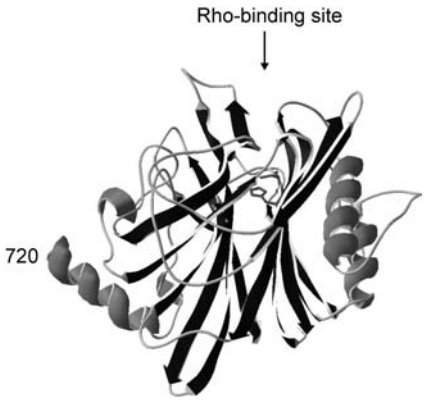


Fig. 4 Structure of the CNF1 catalytic domain. Ribbon representation of CNF1 aa 720–1014. The catalytic residues Cys866 and His881 are situated in a pocket—formed by two extensive β-sheets—that is surrounded by α-helices. The entrance to the pocket (indicated by an *arrow*) is lined by *flexible loops*. (The figure was created using Swiss-PDBViewer 3.7)

(e.g. blood coagulation factor XIII) that takes the role of orienting the imidazole ring of the histidine during catalysis. However, in CNF1 it is the main chain carbonyl of Val833 that instead interacts with the histidine (Buetow et al. 2001). Although CNF1 does not share the overall structure of other catalytic triad enzymes, the positions of key atoms at the active site superimpose impressively well with those of factor XIII and the amidotransferase GMP synthetase (Buetow et al. 2001). Additional residues that affect RhoA deamidation are Asn835 and Ser864 that are located in close proximity to the catalytic residues, but their mutation does not completely abolish enzymatic activity (Buetow et al. 2001).

It has been hypothesized that the flexible loops lining the entrance to the catalytic pocket could rearrange during RhoA binding. In their recent publication, Buetow and Ghosh have deleted five of these nine loops to further investigate their role in substrate recognition and binding of RhoA. Deletion of loop 8 (aa 964–970) and loop 9 (aa 996–1003) nearly or completely abolished the deamidation activity of the C-terminal fragment of CNF1 (aa 720–1014), while the complete fragment possesses full deamidation activity towards RhoA (Buetow and Ghosh 2003). This hints at an important role of loops 8 and 9 in substrate recognition and/or binding. In contrast, deletion of loop 2 (aa 790–795) resulted in a five- to sevenfold increase in deamidation of RhoA. Therefore the authors suggest that loop 2 might have to rearrange during RhoA binding (Buetow and Ghosh 2003).

The crystal structure of DNT has not been obtained thus far. However, some information has been gained from biochemical and other data. CNF1 and DNT can both act as a deamidase and a transglutaminase. CNF1 mainly catalyses the deamidation reaction while DNT preferentially catalyses transglutamination (Schmidt et al. 1999b). Buetow and colleagues (Buetow et al. 2001) suggest that a possible contribution to that preference might be the negatively charged active site pocket of DNT that is predicted by modelling the structure of DNT. The negative charges within the DNT molecule could attract positively charged amines to the active site. CNF1, in contrast, does not expose such charges (Buetow et al. 2001).

CNFs as virulence factors

Several studies have analysed the role of CNFs as virulence factors for *E. coli*-caused diseases (Table 1). Using CNF1-deficient *E. coli* strains, it was shown that the colonization and tissue damage of the urinary tract of mice was less pronounced when no CNF was produced than with the isogenic wild-type strains (Rippere-Lampe et al. 2001b). The same was found for tissue damage of rat prostates (Rippere-Lampe et al. 2001a). In contrast, no difference in lung and serosal inflammation of infected piglets has been observed when CNF1-producing and -deficient strains have been compared (Fournout et al. 2000). In order to study the influence of the toxin on the epithelial barrier function, its effect on the resistance of epithelial monolayers has been analysed in vitro. CNF1 increases the intestinal permeability in human colon carcinoma cells (Caco-2) (Gerhard et al. 1998). Similarly, a marked reduction in tight junctions gate function, accompanied by displacement of the tight junction proteins occludin and zonula occludens-1 (ZO-1) was observed in intestinal T84 cells (Hopkins et al. 2003). Recently, it was shown that CNF1-activated T lymphocytes are cytotoxic against intestinal epithelial cells, probably by an enhanced cytokine release. Loss of epithelial cells could also reduce the barrier function of the intestinal epithelium (Brest et al. 2003). Moreover, the involvement of the toxin in the traversal of the blood–brain barrier in a meningitis animal model has been studied. Only bacteria producing CNF were able to cross the blood–brain barrier (Khan et al. 2002). Taken together, several findings support the notion that CNFs are major virulence factors in various infection models.

Without doubt, effects of CNFs on immune cells are of major importance for their role as virulence factors. The actin as well as the microtubule cytoskeleton is known to play an important role in the activity of cell-mediated immune responses. Thus, constitutive activation of regulators of the actin cytoskeleton (Rho GTPases) should influence immune responses. For example, it was reported recently that CNF1 increases the cytotoxicity of natural killer (NK) cells by Rac-mediated effector cell binding and NK cell recruitment (Malorni et al. 2003). Moreover, it has been shown that CNF-producing bacteria are able to resist killing by human neutrophils (Rippere-Lampe et al. 2001b). CNF activates T lym-

Table 1 Involvement of CNFs in bacterial virulence. The deamidating and transglutaminating toxins CNFs and DNT, which activate Rho GTPases, have been shown to be major virulence factors in various infection models (*NK* natural killer, *PMN* polymorphonuclear)

Tissue damage	Urinary tract of mice	Rippere-Lampe et al. 2001b
	Rat prostates	Rippere-Lampe et al. 2001a
Barrier functions	Decrease in resistance of Caco2 cells	Gerhard et al. 1998
	Displacement of tight junction proteins in T84 cells	Hopkins et al. 2003
	Increased cytotoxicity of T lymphocytes against epithelial cells	Brest et al. 2003
	Crossing the blood–brain barrier	Khan et al. 2002
Immune cells	Increased cytotoxicity of NK cells	Malorni et al. 2003
	Activation of cytokine release of T lymphocytes	Brest et al. 2003
	Increase in oxidative burst and decrease in phagocytosis of PMN leucocytes	Hofmann et al. 2000 Capo et al. 1998
	Induction of phagocytic activity of non-professional phagocytes	Falzano et al. 1993
Development of cancer	Increased expression of Cox-2	Thomas et al. 2001
	Possible tumorigenic potential	Lax and Thomas 2002

phocytes to release several cytokines that are known to augment inflammatory processes (Brest et al. 2003) and the toxin increases the oxidative burst of human polymorphonuclear leucocytes (Hofmann et al. 2000). By changing the cytoskeletal organization, CNF1 was shown to decrease the phagocytosis of polymorphonuclear leucocytes and monocytes probably by preventing the co-distribution of CR3 with F-actin (Hofmann et al. 2000; Capo et al. 1998). In contrast, CNF induces the phagocytic activity of non-professional phagocytes (Falzano et al. 1993).

Doye and coworkers recently showed that degradation of Rac, which is induced by CNF (Lerm et al. 2002), increases the motility of target cells and increases the dynamics of cellular junctions (Doye et al. 2002). Moreover, they showed that CNF increases the internalization of bacteria by 804G-rat bladder carcinoma cells after degradation of Rac, indicating that down-regulation as well as activation of Rho GTPases might be essential for CNF action. Taken together, CNFs largely interfere with the innate and with the acquired immunity by switching Rho GTPases on and off (degradation).

Rho GTPases are increasingly recognized as essential factors in the development of cancer and metastasis. This fact has initiated a discussion about whether activation of Rho proteins by CNFs might be involved in tumourigenesis. It has been shown that CNF1 increases the expression of the cyclooxygenase-2 (Cox-2) gene in fibroblasts (Thomas et al. 2001). Interestingly, an increased expression of Cox-2 is also observed in some types of tumours e.g. colon carcinoma. Lipid mediators produced by the enzyme are suggested to be responsible for tumour progression (Oshima et al. 1996). Thus, it is feasible that chronic infections with CNF-producing *E. coli* might carry a tumourigenic potential important for the pathogenesis of some types of cancer (Lax and Thomas 2002).

DNT as virulence factors

The role of DNT in the pathogenesis of respiratory diseases in swine has been studied. Turbinate atrophy and pneumonia of pigs developed only after infection with a DNT-producing *Bordetella bronchiseptica* strain and not with an isogenic DNT-deficient strain (Brockmeier et al. 2002). DNT has vasoconstrictive and splenoatrophic activities (Cowell et al. 1979; Nakai et al. 1985) and induces mucosal damage in swine nasal tissue as well as degenerative changes of the periosteum after injection into subcutaneous tissues in neonatal rats (Horiguchi et al. 1995). Moreover, DNT has been shown to be involved in turbinate atrophy in mice. In contrast, DNT does not play a role in the lethal mouse model, since DNT-negative strains are as virulent as wild-type *Bordetella* strains (Magyar et al. 2000).

Conclusion

The deamidating and transglutaminating toxins CNFs and DNT, which activate Rho GTPases, have been shown to be major virulence factors in various infection models. Rho GTPases are crucial switches in signalling pathways responsible for cell transformation and metastasis. Thus CNFs may also play a potential role in pathogenesis of certain types of cancer. CNF-activated Rac is degraded, but it is still not clear whether degradation of Rac is also a physiological mechanism to down-regulate Rac signalling. Degradation of

RhoA has recently been shown to play a role in cell polarity and directed migration of cells (Wang et al. 2003).

Moreover, because the toxins constitutively activate Rho GTPases, they can be used as pharmacological tools to study Rho function.

References

Brest P, Mograbi B, Hofmann V, Loubat A, Rossi B, Auberger P, Hofmann P (2003) Rho GTPase is activated by cytotoxic necrotizing factor 1 in peripheral blood T lymphocytes: potential cytotoxicity for intestinal epithelial cells. Infect Immun 71:1161–1169

Brockmeier SL, Register KB, Magyar T, Lax AJ, Pullinger GD, Kunkle RA (2002) Role of the dermonecrotic toxin of Bordetella bronchiseptica in the pathogenesis of respiratory disease in swine. Infect Immun 70:481–490

Buetow L, Ghosh P (2003) Structural elements required for deamidation of RhoA by cytotoxic necrotizing factor 1. Biochemistry 42:12784–12791

Buetow L, Flatau G, Chiu K, Boquet P, Ghosh P (2001) Structure of the Rho-activating domain of *Escherichia coli* cytotoxic necrotizing factor 1. Nat Struct Biol 8:584–588

Burridge K, Wennerberg K (2004) Rho and Rac take center stage. Cell 116:167–179

Busch C, Aktories K (2000) Microbial toxins and the glucosylation of Rho family GTPases. Curr Opin Struct Biol 10:528–535

Capo C, Meconi S, Sanguedolce MV, Bardin N, Flatau G, Boquet P, Mege JL (1998) Effect of cytotoxic necrotizing factor-1 on actin cytoskeleton in human monocytes: role in the regulation of integrin-dependent phagocytosis. J Immunol 161:4301–4308

Caprioli A, Falbo V, Roda LG, Ruggeri FM, Zona C (1983) Partial purification and characterization of an *Escherichia coli* toxic factor that induces morphological cell alterations. Infect Immun 39:1300–1306

Chung JW, Hong SJ, Kim KJ, Goti D, Stins MF, Shin S, Dawson VL, Dawson TM, Kim KS (2003) 37 kDa laminin receptor precursor modulates cytotoxic necrotizing factor 1-mediated RhoA activation and bacterial uptake. J Biol Chem in press (M301028200)

Contamin S, Galmiche A, Doye A, Flatau G, Benmerah A, Boquet P (2000) The p21 Rho-activating toxin cytotoxic necrotizing factor 1 is endocytosed by a clathrin-independent mechanism and enters the cytosol by an acidic-dependent membrane translocation step. Mol Biol Cell 11:1775–1787

Cowell JL, Hewlett EL, Manclark CR (1979) Intracellular localization of the dermonecrotic toxin of *Bordetella pertussis*. Infect Immun 25:896–901

de Rycke J, Guillot JF, Boivin R (1987) Cytotoxins in non-enterotoxigenic strains of *Escherichia coli* isolated from feces of diarrheic calves. Vet Microbiol 15:137–150

de Rycke J, González EA, Blanco J, Oswald E, Blanco M, Boivin R (1990) Evidence for two types of cytotoxic necrotizing factor in human and animal clinical isolates of *Escherichia coli*. J Clin Microbiol 28:694–699

Denko N, Langland R, Barton M, Lieberman MA (1997) Uncoupling of S-phase and mitosis by recombinant cytotoxic necrotizing factor 2 (CNF2). Exp Cell Res 234:132–138

Doye A, Mettouchi A, Bossis G, Clément R, Buisson-Touati C, Flatau G, Gagnoux L, Piechaczyk M, Boquet P, Lemichez E (2002) CNF1 exploits the ubiquitin-proteasome machinery to restrict Rho GTPase activation for bacterial host cell invasion. Cell 111:553–564

Etienne-Manneville S, Hall A (2002) Rho GTPases in cell biology. Nature 420:629–635

Falzano L, Fiorentini C, Donelli G, Michel E, Kocks C, Cossart P, Cabanié L, Oswald E, Boquet P (1993) Induction of phagocytic behaviour in human epithelial cells by *Escherichia coli* cytotoxic necrotizing factor type 1. Mol Microbiol 9:1247–1254

Fiorentini C, Fabbri A, Flatau G, Donelli G, Matarrese P, Lemichez E, Falzano L, Boquet P (1997) *Escherichia coli* cytotoxic necrotizing factor 1 (CNF1), a toxin that activates the Rho GTPase. J Biol Chem 272:19532–19537

Fiorentini C, Falzano L, Fabbri A, Stringaro A, Logozzi M, Travaglione S, Contamin S, Arancia G, Malorni W, Fais S (2001) Activation of Rho GTPases by cytotoxic necrotizing factor 1 induces macropinocytosis and scavenging activity in epithelial cells. Mol Biol Cell 12:2061–2073

Flatau G, Lemichez E, Gauthier M, Chardin P, Paris S, Fiorentini C, Boquet P (1997) Toxin-induced activation of the G protein p21 Rho by deamidation of glutamine. Nature 387:729–733

Flatau G, Landraud L, Boquet P, Bruzzone M, Munro P (2000) Deamidation of RhoA glutamine 63 by the *Escherichia coli* CNF1 toxin requires a short sequence of the GTPase switch 2 domain. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 267:588–592

Fournout S, Dozois CM, Odin M, Desautels C, Pérès S, Hérault F, Daigle F, Segafredo C, Laffitte J, Oswald E, Fairbrother JM, Oswald IP (2000) Lack of a role of cytotoxic necrotizing factor 1 toxin from *Escherichia coli* in bacterial pathogenicity and host cytokine response in infected germfree piglets. Infect Immun **68**:839–847

Galan JE, Fu Y (2000) Modulation of actin cytoskeleton by Salmonella GTPase activating protein SptP. Methods Enzymol 325:496–504

Genth H, Aktories K, Just I (1999) Monoglucosylation of RhoA at Threonine-37 blocks cytosol-membrane cycling. J Biol Chem 274:29050–29056

Gerhard R, Schmidt G, Hofmann F, Aktories K (1998) Activation of Rho GTPases by Escherichia coli cytotoxic necrotizing factor 1 increases intestinal permeability in Caco-2 cells. Infect Immun 66:5125–5131

Herrmann C, Ahmadian MR, Hofmann F, Just I (1998) Functional consequences of monoglucosylation of H-Ras at effector domain amino acid threonine-35. J Biol Chem 273:16134–16139

Hoffmann C, Pop M, Leemhuis J, Schirmer J, Aktories K, Schmidt G (2004) The Yersinia pseudotuberculosis cytotoxic necrotizing factor (CNFY) selectively activates RhoA. J Biol Chem 279

Hofmann P, Le Negrate G, Mograbi B, Hofmann V, Brest P, Alliana-Schmid A, Flatau G, Boquet P, Rossi B (2000) *Escherichia coli* cytotoxic necrotizing factor-1 (CNF-1) increases the adherence to epithelia and the oxidative burst of human polymorphonuclear leukocytes but decreases bacteria phagocytosis. J Leukoc Biol 68:522–528

Hopkins AM, Walsh SV, Verkade P, Boquet P, Nusrat A (2003) Constitutive activation of Rho proteins by CNF-1 influences tight junction structure and epithelial barrier function. J Cell Sci 116:725–742

Horiguchi Y (2001) *Escherichia coli* cytotoxic necrotizing factors and *Bordetella* dermonecrotic toxin: the dermonecrosis-inducing toxins activating Rho small GTPases. Toxicon 39:1619–1627

Horiguchi Y, Nakai T, Kume K (1989) Purification and characterization of *Bordetella bronchiseptica* dermonecrotic toxin. Microb Pathog 6:361–368

Horiguchi Y, Okada T, Sugimoto N, Morikawa Y, Katahira J, Matsuda M (1995) Effects of *Bordetella bronchiseptica* dermonecrotizing toxin on bone formation in calvaria of neonatal rats. FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol 12:29–32

Horiguchi Y, Inoue N, Masuda M, Kashimoto T, Katahira J, Sugimoto N, Matsuda M (1997) Bordetella bronchiseptica dermonecrotizing toxin induces reorganization of actin stress fibers through deamidation of Gln-63 of the GTP-binding protein Rho. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 94:11623–11626

Just I, Selzer J, Wilm M, Von Eichel-Streiber C, Mann M, Aktories K (1995) Glucosylation of Rho proteins by *Clostridium difficile* toxin B. Nature 375:500–503

Just I, Hofmann F, Aktories K (2000) Molecular mechanisms of large clostridial cytotoxins. In: Just I, Aktories K (eds) Handbook of experimental pharmacology. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, pp 307–331

Kashimoto T, Katahira J, Cornejo WR, Masuda M, Fukuoh A, Matsuzawa T, Ohnishi T, Horiguchi Y (1999) Identification of functional domains of *Bordetella* dermonecrotizing toxin. Infect Immun 67:3727–3732

Khan NA, Wang Y, Kim KJ, Chung JW, Wass CA, Kim KS (2002) Cytotoxic necrotizing factor-1 contributes to *Escherichia coli* K1 invasion of the central nervous system. J Biol Chem 277:15607–15612

Kubori T, Galan JE (2003) Temporal regulation of *Salmonella* virulence effector function by proteasome-dependent protein degradation. Cell 115:333–342

Lacerda HM, Pullinger GD, Lax AJ, Rozengurt E (1997) Cytotoxic necrotizing factor 1 from *Escherichia coli* and dermonecrotic toxin from *Bordetella bronchiseptica* induce $p21^{rho}$-dependent tyrosine phosphorylation of focal adhesion kinase and paxillin in swiss 3T3 cells. J Biol Chem 272:9587–9596

Lax AJ, Thomas W (2002) How bacteria could cause cancer: one step at a time. Trends Microbiol 10:293–299

Lemichez E, Flatau G, Bruzzone M, Boquet P, Gauthier M (1997) Molecular localization of the *Escherichia coli* cytotoxic necrotizing factor CNF1 cell-binding and catalytic domains. Mol Microbiol 24:1061–1070

Lerm M, Schmidt G, Goehring U-M, Schirmer J, Aktories K (1999a) Identification of the region of Rho involved in substrate recognition by Escherichia coli cytotoxic necrotizing factor 1 (CNF1). J Biol Chem 274:28999–29004

Lerm M, Selzer J, Hoffmeyer A, Rapp UR, Aktories K, Schmidt G (1999b) Deamidation of Cdc42 and Rac by *Escherichia coli* cytotoxic necrotizing factor 1 (CNF1)—activation of c-Jun-N-terminal kinase in HeLa cells. Infect Immun 67:496–503

Lerm M, Pop M, Fritz G, Aktories K, Schmidt G (2002) Proteasomal degradation of cytotoxic necrotizing factor 1-activated Rac. Infect Immun 70:4053–4058

Lockman HA, Gillespie RA, Baker BD, Shakhnovich E (2002) *Yersinia pseudotuberculosis* produces a cytotoxic necrotizing factor. Infect Immun 70:2708–2714

Lorand L, Graham RM (2003) Transglutaminases: crosslinking enzymes with pleiotropic functions. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 4:140–156

Magyar T, Glavits R, Pullinger GD, Lax AJ (2000) The pathological effect of the Bordetella dermonecrotic toxin in mice. Acta Vet Hung 48:397–406

Malorni W, Quaranta MG, Straface E, Falzano L, Fabbri A, Viora M, Fiorentini C (2003) The Rac-activating toxin cytotoxic necrotizing factor 1 oversees NK cell-mediated activity by regulating the actin/microtubule interplay. J Immunol 171:4195–4202

Masuda M, Betancourt L, Matsuzawa T, Kashimoto T, Takao T, Shimonishi Y, Horiguchi Y (2000) Activation of Rho through a cross-link with polyamines catalyzed by *Bordetella* dermonecrotizing toxin. EMBO J 19:521–530

Matsuzawa T, Kashimoto T, Katahira J, Horiguchi Y (2002) Identification of a receptor-binding domain of *Bordetella* dermonecrotic toxin. Infect Immun 70:3427–3432

Matsuzawa T, Fukui A, Kashimoto T, Nagao K, Oka K, Miyake M, Horiguchi Y (2003) *Bordetella* dermonecrotic toxin undergoes proteolytic processing to be translocated from a dynamin-related endosome into the cytoplasm in an acidification-independent manner. J Biol Chem M310340200

Munro P, Flatau G, Doye A, Boyer L, Oregioni O, Mege JL, Landraud L, Lemichez E (2004) Activation and proteasomal degradation of Rho GTPases by CNF1 elicit a controlled inflammatory response. J Biol Chem M401580200

Nakai T, Sawata A, Kume K (1985) Intracellular locations of dermonecrotic toxins in *Pasteurella multocida* and in *Bordetella bronchispetica.* Am J Vet Res 46:870–874

Oshima M, Dinchuk JE, Kargman SL, Oshima H, Hancock B, Kwong E, Trzaskos JM, Evans JF, Taketo MM (1996) Suppression of intestinal polyposis in Apc delta716 knockout mice by inhibition of cyclooxygenase 2 (COX-2). Cell 87:803–809

Oswald E, de Rycke J (1990) A single protein of 110 kDa is associated with the multinucleating and necrotizing activity coded by the Vir plasmid of *Escherichia coli*. FEMS Microbiol Lett 68:279–284

Oswald E, de Rycke J, Guillot JF, Boivin R (1989) Cytotoxic effect of multinucleation in HeLa cell cultures associated with the presence of Vir plasmid in *Escherichia coli* strains. FEMS Microbiol Lett 58:95–100

Oswald E, Sugai M, Labigne A, Wu HC, Fiorentini C, Boquet P, O'Brien AD (1994) Cytotoxic necrotizing factor type 2 produced by virulent *Escherichia coli* modifies the small GTP-binding proteins Rho involved in assembly of actin stress fibers. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 91:3814–3818

Pei S, Doye A, Boquet P (2001) Mutation of specific acidic residues of the CNF1 T domain into lysine alters cell membrane translocation of the toxin. Mol Microbiol 41:1237–1247

Pop M, Aktories K, Schmidt G (2004) Isotype-specific degradation of Rac activated by the cytotoxic necrotizing factor 1 (CNF1). J Biol Chem M404346200

Rippere-Lampe KE, Lang M, Ceri H, Olson M, Lockman HA, O'Brien AD (2001a) Cytotoxic necrotizing factor type 1-positive *Escherichia coli* causes increased inflammation and tissue damage to the prostate in a rat prostatitis model. Infect Immun 69:6515–6519

Rippere-Lampe KE, O'Brien AD, Conran R, Lockman HA (2001b) Mutation of the gene encoding cytotoxic necrotizing factor type 1 ($cnf_{1)}$ attenuates the virulence of uropathogenic *Escherichia coli*. Infect Immun 69:3954–3964

Schmidt G, Sehr P, Wilm M, Selzer J, Mann M, Aktories K (1997) Gln63 of Rho is deamidated by *Escherichia coli* cytotoxic necrotizing factor 1. Nature 387:725–729

Schmidt G, Selzer J, Lerm M, Aktories K (1998) The Rho-deamidating cytotoxic-necrotizing factor CNF1 from *Escherichia coli* possesses transglutaminase activity—cysteine-866 and histidine-881 are essential for enzyme activity. J Biol Chem 273:13669–13674

Schmidt G, Goehring U-M, Aktories K (1999a) The C-terminal part of dermonecrotic toxin (DNT) is sufficient for enzymatic activity. Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch Pharmacol 359:R60

Schmidt G, Goehring U-M, Schirmer J, Lerm M, Aktories K (1999b) Identification of the C-terminal part of Bordetella dermonecrotic toxin as a transglutaminase for Rho GTPases. J Biol Chem 274:31875–31881

Schmidt G, Goehring U-M, Schirmer J, Uttenweiler-Joseph S, Wilm M, Lohmann M, Giese A, Schmalzing G, Aktories K (2001) Lysine and polyamines are substrates for transglutamination of Rho by the *Bordetella* dermonecrotic toxin. Infect Immun 69:7663–7670

Sehr P, Joseph G, Genth H, Just I, Pick E, Aktories K (1998) Glucosylation and ADP-ribosylation of Rho proteins—effects on nucleotide binding, GTPase activity, and effector-coupling. Biochemistry 37:5296–5304

Sekine A, Fujiwara M, Narumiya S (1989) Asparagine residue in the rho gene product is the modification site for botulinum ADP-ribosyltransferase. J Biol Chem 264:8602–8605

Shao F, Merritt PM, Bao Z, Innes RW, Dixon JE (2002) A *Yersinia* effector and a *Pseudomonas* avirulence protein define a family of cysteine proteases functioning in bacterial pathogenesis. Cell 109:575–588

Stender S, Friebel A, Linder S, Rohde M, Mirold S, Hardt W-D (2000) Identification of SopE2 from *Salmonella typhimurium*, a conserved guanine nucleotide exchange factor for Cdc42 of the host cell. Mol Microbiol 36:1206–1221

Symons M, Settleman J (2000) Rho family GTPases: more than just simple switches. Trends Cell Biol 10:415–419

Takai Y, Sasaki T, Matozaki T (2001) Small GTP-binding proteins. Physiol Rev 81:153–208

Thomas W, Ascott ZK, Harmey D, Slice LW, Rozengurt E, Lax AJ (2001) Cytotoxic necrotizing factor from *Escherichia coli* induces RhoA-dependent expression of the cyclooxygenase-2 gene. Infect Immun 69:6839–6845

Torgersen ML, Skretting G, Van Deurs B, Sandvig K (2001) Internalization of cholera toxin by different endocytic mechanisms. J Cell Sci 114:3737–3747

Van Aelst L, D'Souza-Schorey C (1997) Rho GTPases and signaling networks. Genes Dev 11:2295–2322

Wang HR, Zhang Y, Ozdamar B, Ogunjimi AA, Alexandrova E, Thomsen GH, Wrana JL (2003) Regulation of cell polarity and protrusion formation by targeting RhoA for degradation. Science 302:1775–1779

Rev Physiol Biochem Pharmacol (2004) 152:65–77
DOI 10.1007/s10254-004-0035-3

M. Aepfelbacher

Modulation of Rho GTPases by type III secretion system translocated effectors of *Yersinia*

Published online: 18 September 2004

Abstract Pathogenic species of the bacterial genus *Yersinia* subdue the immune system to proliferate and spread within the host organism. For this purpose yersiniae employ a type III secretion apparatus which governs injection of six effector proteins (*Yersinia* outer proteins; Yops) into host cells. Yops control various regulatory and signalling proteins in a unique and highly specific manner. YopE, YopT, and YpkA/YopO modulate the activity of Rho GTP-binding proteins, whereas YopH dephosphorylates phospho-tyrosine residues in focal adhesion proteins. Furthermore, YopP/YopJ and YopM affect cell survival/apoptosis and cell proliferation, respectively. In this review the focus will be on the biochemistry and cellular effects of YopT, YopE, YopO/YpkA, and YopH.

Introduction

There are three human pathogenic *Yersinia* species: (1) *Y. pestis* is the causative agent of plague, (2) *Y. pseudotuberculosis*, and (3) *Y. enterocolitica* cause acute or chronic gastroenteric infections. In contrast to other enteropathogenic bacteria such as salmonellae and shigellae, which can replicate intracellularly, yersiniae proliferate extracellularly. The latter also have a preference for lymphatic tissues. To resist the attack of the immune system, pathogenic *Yersinia* spp. are endowed with a 70-kb virulence plasmid (called pYV) which carries genes encoding (1) a protein type III secretion system (TTSS), (2) a set of six effector proteins (*Yersinia* outer proteins, Yops), (3) regulators for gene expression and Yop-secretion/translocation, and (4) a *Yersinia* adhesin (YadA), which among other functions can mediate *Yersinia* attachment to host cells (Cornelis et al. 1998; Hoiczyk et al. 2000). *Y. enterocolitica* and *Y. pseudotuberculosis* also express a chromosomally encoded outer membrane protein—Invasin—that binds with high affinity to $\beta 1$ integrin receptors (Isberg and Leong 1990). In the initial phase of an oral infection invasin triggers internalization of yersiniae into M-cells of the intestinal mucosa and thereby allows transversal of

M. Aepfelbacher (✉)
Max von Pettenkofer-Institut für Hygiene und Medizinische Mikrobiologie, Pettenkoferstr. 9a, 80336 München, Germany
e-mail: aepfelbacher@m3401.mpk.med.uni-muenchen.de

the intestinal mucosa. Details about type III secretion, the pYV plasmid, as well as the structure and function of the *Yersinia* adhesins have been reviewed elsewhere (Cornelis et al. 1998; El Tahir and Skurnik 2001; Hueck 1998; Isberg et al. 2000).

Upon contact with target cells, yersiniae employ their TTSS to translocate the six effector proteins named YopH, YopO/YpkA, YopP/YopJ, YopE, YopM, and YopT into the cell. Yops interfere with a variety of cell functions including cytoskeletal regulation, cytokine production, and control of apoptosis to suppress the immune response to infection (Aepfelbacher and Heesemann 2001; Bliska 2000; Cornelis and Wolf Watz 1997; Juris et al. 2002). Controlling the actin cytoskeleton seems to be the major function of at least four Yops, namely YopT, YopE, YopO/YpkA, and YopH. To do so YopT, YopE, and YopO/YpkA modulate the function of Rho GTPases whereas YopH dephosphorylates tyrosine residues of focal adhesion proteins. Noteworthy, *Y. pseudotuberculosis* also produces a homolog of the *E. coli* exotoxin cytotoxic-necrotizing-factor (CNF), which was named CNF-Y (Hoffmann et al. 2004; Lockman et al. 2002). CNF-Y specifically activates RhoA by deamidation of Gln-63, in contrast to CNF from *E. coli* which modifies RhoA, Rac, and Cdc42 (Hoffmann et al. 2004).

Rho GTP-binding proteins constitute ideal targets for pathogens because they are master regulators of the actin cytoskeleton, control cell cycle, intracellular vesicle transport, and gene transcription (Symons and Settleman 2000; van Aelst and D'Souza-Schorey 1997). Most Rho-family proteins are molecular switches which are "on" when bound to GTP and "off" when bound to GDP. In the GTP-bound state Rho proteins stimulate a variety of effector proteins, which include protein kinases, lipid kinases, and multidomain scaffolds (Bishop and Hall 2000). The GDP/GTP cycling of Rho GTPases is regulated by (1) their intrinsic GTPase activity; (2) GTPase activating proteins (GAPs), which greatly increase the intrinsic GTPase activity; and (3) guanine nucleotide exchange factors (GEFs), which promote the exchange of GTP for bound GDP. Furthermore, by binding to guanine nucleotide dissociation inhibitors (GDIs) the hydrophobic isoprenoid moiety at the C-terminus of Rho GTPases is neutralized and this is involved in cytosol/membrane cycling. GDIs also "freeze" Rho GTPases in their actual guanine nucleotide bound state (GDP or GTP) and block their interaction with regulators and effectors (Fig. 1; Olofsson 1999).

An emerging theme is that Yops modulate and exploit the signal transduction pathways which are stimulated initially in host cells after infection with yersiniae (Ruckdeschel et al. 2001; Ruckdeschel 2002). Rho GTPases can get activated through different *Yersinia* factors. Invasin-triggered uptake has been shown to involve Rac, either individually or in cooperation with Rho and Cdc42Hs, dependent on the cell type (Alrutz et al. 2001; McGee et al. 2001; Wiedemann et al. 2001). With the help of cofactors such as phosphatidylinositolphosphates Cdc42Hs and Rac activate N-WASp and WAVE, respectively, which greatly enhance the actin polymerizing activity of Arp2/3 complex (Higgs and Pollard, 1999). Assembly of an actin-rich phagocytic cup by these mechanisms then mediates bacterial uptake. Besides by surface adhesins, Rho and Rac could be activated by lipolysaccharide (LPS) of yersiniae acting via Toll-like receptors (Arbibe et al. 2000). In this review we will focus on the biochemistry and cell biology of the Rho GTPase modulating Yops YopT, YopO/YpkA, YopE, and the focal adhesion regulator YopH. Important features of YopM and YopP will also be mentioned; a more detailed description of their function has been published elsewhere (Juris et al. 2002; Ruckdeschel 2002). Figure 1 de-

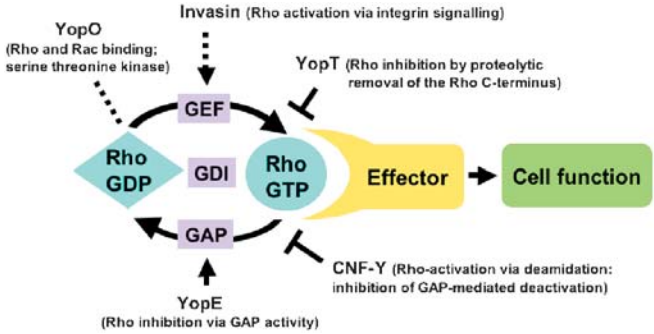


Fig. 1 Interference of *Yersinia* virulence factors with the Rho activation/deactivation cycle. The major biochemical mechanisms by which the respective factors modulate Rho GTPases are in *brackets*. *CNF-Y*, cytotoxic necrotizing factor of yersiniae; *GAP*, GTPase activating protein; *GEF*, guanine nucleotide exchange factor; *GDI*, guanine nucleotide dissociation inhibitor; *RhoGDP*, inactive, GDP-bound Rho GTPase; *RhoGTP*, active, GTP-bound Rho GTPase; *Invasin*, *Yersinia* adhesin binding to β1-integrins.

picts a scheme of the multiple "mechanisms" whereby *Yersinia* virulence factors interfere with the Rho activation/deactivation cycle.

YopT: a cysteine protease removing the isoprenoid group of Rho GTPases

YopT is a 35-kDa protein (322 amino acids) that belongs to the CA clan of cysteine proteases. It is expressed by *Y. enterocolitica*, *Y. pestis*, and only some *Y. pseudotuberculosis* strains (Iriarte and Cornelis 1998; Shao et al. 2002; Zumbihl et al. 1999). In addition to the three *Yersinia yopT* sequences, 16 homologous open reading frames derived from animal pathogens such as *Haemophilus ducreyi*, *E. coli* O157:H7, or *Pasteurella multocida,* plant pathogens such as *Pseudomonas syringae pv. phaseolicola* and entomopathogenic *Photorhabdus luminescens* have been extracted from databases. Despite great sequence diversity, all YopT family members possess conserved C/H/D amino acid residues which appear to be essential for protein activity. The cDNA-inferred YopT family proteins can be divided into two groups. The first group, which includes YopT, contains proteins of 30–40 kDa; the second group contains proteins of >300 kDa which harbor additional functional domains (Shao et al. 2002).

Cellular overexpression and in vitro studies showed that YopT proteolytically removes the geranylgeranyl isoprenoid moiety of RhoA, Rac1, and Cdc42 and this activity is dependent on the invariant C/H/D residues C139, H258, and D274. YopT cleaves just before the C-terminal cysteine to which the geranylgeranyl group is attached via a thioether bond (Shao et al. 2002, 2003). Catalytically inactive YopTC139S can still bind to RhoA and thus can be used for pull-down experiments (Aepfelbacher et al. 2003; Shao et al. 2002; Sorg et al. 2003). Although YopT requires an isoprenoid group for binding and activity, it does not distinguish between geranylgeranylated or farnesylated RhoA. YopT also seems to act equally well on GDP- and GTP-bound RhoA. In the test tube and in cells overexpressing the reaction components, YopT works best on RhoA, is less active on Rac and Cdc42, and does not cleave H-Ras. When the 5 basic amino acid residues (3 x lysine and 2 x arginine) at the C-terminus of RhoA were mutated to glutamine residues, the resulting

RhoA mutant became insensitive to YopT cleavage. Furthermore, an intracellularly expressed GFP fusion construct containing the last 13 amino acids of RhoA (including the 5 basic residues), but not a construct containing the last 4 amino acids of RhoA, was cleaved by YopT, although both GFP constructs became isoprenylated (Shao et al. 2002, 2003). Together these data suggest that YopT recognizes an isoprenoid group in combination with a stretch of basic amino acid at the C-terminus of Rho GTPases. The structural requirements of YopT for binding and cleavage of RhoA were also tested. Whereas deletion of 8 amino acids from the C-terminus abrogated YopT activity, deletion of 74 amino acids from the N-terminus had no effect. When more than 100 amino acids were deleted from the N-terminus of YopT its activity was abolished. In comparison, binding to RhoA was not greatly affected by deleting 14 amino acids from the C-terminus, whereas the N-terminal 74 amino acid deletion mutant displayed considerably reduced RhoA binding. These findings suggest that catalytic activity is mainly located at the C-terminus, whereas Rho GTPase binding also involves the very N-terminal amino acids of YopT (Sorg et al. 2003).

Considering that yersiniae inject only minute amounts of Yops into target cells and intracellular Yop activity is temporally and spatially controlled, cellular infection models provided specific informations as to the physiological functions of Yops. In fact, destruction of actin stress fibers in *Y. enterocolitica*-infected cells was the first activity pointing to the function of YopT (Iriarte and Cornelis 1998). The basis for this YopT effect was subsequently shown to be modification and inactivation of the Rho GTPase RhoA (Zumbihl et al. 1999). Thereafter, the biochemical activity of YopT was identified (Shao et al. 2002, 2003).

RhoA modification by removal of the isoprenoid group has a variety of consequences in *Yersinia*-infected cells. RhoA is released from the plasma membrane and from its cytoplasmic binding partner guanine nucleotide dissociation inhbitor-1 (GDI-1) and accumulates as a monomeric protein in the cytoplasm. Notably, neither Rac1 nor Cdc42 are removed from cell membranes or GDI-1, suggesting that YopT does not work on these proteins in infected cells (Aepfelbacher et al. 2003; Zumbihl et al. 1999). As part of a systematic approach, the role of YopT in preventing opsonized and unopsonized phagocytosis of *Yersinia enterocolitica* by human neutrophils and mouse macrophages was investigated also. Mutant bacteria lacking YopT were phagocytosed in significantly higher amounts than wild-type bacteria both under opsonizing and nonopsonizing conditions. *Yersinia* mutants translocating only YopT were not resistant to phagocytosis by neutrophils or macrophages (Grosdent et al. 2002). However, in primary macrophages YopT overexpressing mutants disrupted actin rich phagocytic cups induced by *Yersinia* invasin as well as podosomal adhesion structures required for chemotaxis (Aepfelbacher et al. 2003). Hence, YopT alone and in combination with partner Yops can disrupt immune cell function thereby promoting *Yersinia* infection. At least in some cell types RhoA seems to be the major target of YopT, whereas Rac and Cdc42 are not affected. However, at present it cannot be excluded that YopT has additional substrates that may be within the large RhoGTPase family or even unrelated to it.

In infected cells YopT is located in membranes, whereas the majority of its target protein RhoA is complexed to GDI in the cytosol. Furthermore YopT can modify RhoA complexed to GDI-1 in vitro only when additional factors such as the membrane lipid phosphatidylinositolbisphosphate (PIP2) are present or when RhoA is artificially loaded with GTP-γS (Aepfelbacher et al. 2003). Thus, YopT likely requires additional signalling molecules (such as PIP2 production and GEFs) to modify RhoA in cells. Taken all these data

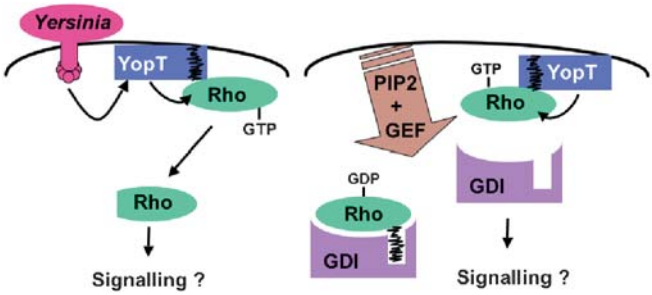


Fig. 2 How YopT may function after translocation into cells. The effects of YopT in cells infected with yersiniae is depicted taking into account temporal and spatial considerations (*left*). Upon injection by the *Yersinia* TTS YopT locates to the plasma membrane where it binds RhoA via its isoprenoid membrane anchor. Through proteolytic removal of the isoprenoid group RhoA is released into the cytosol (*right*). Through action of PIP2 and/or guanine nucleotide exchange factors (*GEFs*) RhoA is released from its cytosolic complex with GDI and then cleaved by YopT. It is unclear what signalling activities the cleaved RhoA and the free GDI in the cytosol have. For details see the section entitled "YopT: A cysteine protease removing the isoprenoid group of Rho GTPases" and reference Aepfelbacher et al. 2003.

together, a model of YopT function within *Yersinia*-infected cells is proposed which includes temporal and spatial considerations: YopT translocated into target cells by the *Yersinia* TTS binds to the plasma membrane where it "meets" RhoA and cleaves off its isoprenoid membrane anchor. The truncated RhoA is released from the membrane and trapped in the cytosol. By a mechanism likely involving membrane lipids and exchange factors, the remaining isoprenylated RhoA is released from GDI and then translocates either directly to YopT or to cell membranes where it is cleaved by YopT. This cycle proceeds until all of the RhoA is modified (Fig. 2).

Within the last years much has been learned about the biochemistry and cell biology of YopT. An exact understanding of the structural basis of YopT cleavage of Rho GTPases will require crystallographic data. The crystal structure of the remote YopT-homolog AvrPphB has been solved and revealed similarities with papain-like cysteine proteases. Consistent with the differing substrate specificities of YopT and AvrPphB, the residues corresponding to the substrate binding sites are highly divergent among the YopT family proteins (Zhu et al. 2004).

YopE: GAP activity for rapid and specific downregulation of Rho GTPases

YopE is a 25-kDa protein (219 amino acids) which, like the homologous domains within exoenzyme S from *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and SptP from *Salmonella* Typhimurium, works as GAP for Rho-family proteins (Andor et al. 2001; Black and Bliska 2000; Fu and Galan 1999; Goehring et al. 1999; Pawel-Rammingen et al. 2000). The Rho GAP domain of YopE ranges from amino acids 96 to 219. Residues 54–75 have been shown to be both necessary and sufficient for targeting of YopE to an unidentified perinuclear compartment (Krall et al. 2004). The bacterial RhoGAPs, like all mammalian Rho GAPs, possess an arginine finger motif known to be essential for activity (Scheffzek et al. 1998; Wurtele et al. 2001). Mutation of the arginine finger in YopE (R144A) abolished most of the YopE activities in cells and mouse infection models (Aili et al. 2003; Pawel-Rammingen et al.

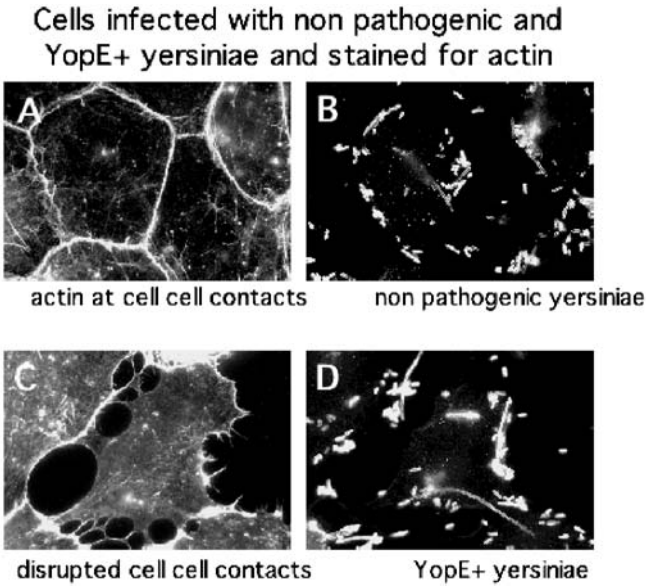


Fig. 3 Disruption of cell–cell contacts by yersiniae expressing YopE. Confluent human endothelial cells were infected with nonpathogenic yersiniae or yersiniae expressing YopE (*YopE+*). Thereafter the actin cytoskeleton of the cells (**A**, **C**) and the bacteria (**B**, **D**) were stained and recorded in separate channels. **A** In confluent cells infected with the nonpathogenic yersiniae, actin is exclusively located at cell-cell contacts. **B** Bacteria attached to the cell in **A** are shown. **C** *Yersinia* YopE+ disrupts actin at cell-cell contacts and changes cell shape. **D** Bacteria attached to the cell in **C** are shown.

2000; Black and Bliska 2000; Andor et al. 2001). Five different triple alanine substitution mutants within amino acids 166–208 abrogated in vitro GAP activity but not cellular cytotoxicity of YopE. It was therefore suggested that YopE may have additional targets/functions within cells which are dependent on the arginine 144 residue but not on GAP activity (Aili et al. 2003). In vitro YopE and ExoS work on Rho, Rac, and Cdc42 whereas SptP acts on Rac and Cdc42 (Black and Bliska 2000; Fu and Galan 1999; Goehring et al. 1999; Pawel-Rammingen et al. 2000). Introduction of YopE into transformed cell lines by *Yersinia* infection or microinjection was found to disrupt actin filaments (Black and Bliska, 2000; Pawel-Rammingen et al. 2000; Rosqvist et al. 1991). In primary endothelial cells, a *Y. enterocolitica* strain that translocates YopE but none of the other effector Yops did not affect direct Rho activation by thrombin, direct Rac activation by sphingosine-1-phosphate, or direct Cdc42 activation by bradykinin, as tested by normal formation of actin stress fibers, membrane ruffles, or filopodia respectively. However, a basal Rac activity required for maintaining cell-cell contacts, as well as Rac activation by Cdc42 resulting in ruffling, was blocked by YopE (Fig. 3; Andor et al. 2001). This finding demonstrates that YopE can modulate Rho GTPase-dependent signal pathways with a remarkable specificity in primary target cells of yersiniae. It also confirms earlier findings showing that the substrate specificity of GAPs may differ in vitro and inside cells (Moon and Zheng 2003; Ridley et al. 1993). The molecular basis for the intracellular specificity of YopE is not known, but YopE may act in a compartmentalized fashion, i.e., may not get access to the membrane compartments in which Cdc42 and Rho are localized. The specific perinuclear membrane localization of YopE supports this notion (Krall et al. 2004). It has not been

tested, however, to what extent the compartments containing the RhoGTPases and YopE overlap.

YopE contributes to the antiphagocytic activity of *Y. enterocolitica* and *Y. pseudotuberculosis* in cooperation with fellow Yops. It blocks phagocytosis of opsonized or unopsonized yersiniae by macrophages, neutrophils, and epithelial cells (Grosdent et al. 2002; Fällman et al. 1995; Ruckdeschel et al. 1996). Furthermore, *Y. pseudotuberculosis* mutants deleted in YopE are clearly attenuated in general virulence/lethality (Rosqvist et al. 1998). Interestingly, in a mouse infection model a YopE-deficient *Y. pseudotuberculosis* strain showed only minor defects in colonization of and persistence in intestinal and lymphoid tissues. However, a YopH/E double mutant was essentially avirulent whereas a YopH mutant wasn't. Furthermore, the YopE-deficient *Y. pseudotuberculosis* strain was outcompeted by *Y. pseudotuberculosis* wild type in coinfection models (Logsdon and Mecsas 2003).

Together these findings suggest that YopE has both individual and redundant functions and synergizes with other Yops during the complex infection cycle of yersiniae. Likely there are additional, hitherto unknown functions of YopE. First, YopE without in vitro GAP activity still has cytotoxic effects (Aili et al 2003). Second, specific intracellular membrane localization of YopE may indicate effects on vesicle transport (Krall et al 2004). Third, although the GAP function individually shuts down activity of Rho GTP-binding proteins, the coordinated activities of GEFs and GAPs can promote some cell functions by enhancing the on-off cycling of RhoGTPases (Symons and Settleman 2000). In addition, some GAPs also work as effector proteins by binding preferentially to the GTP-bound proteins (Moon and Zheng 2003). Thus, introduction of bacterial GAPs into cells may in cooperation with other cellular factors also result in a gain of function.

YopO/YpkA: a serine threonine kinase activated by G-actin and binding to Rho GTPases

YopO from *Y. enterocolitica* (called YpkA in *Y. pseudotuberculosis*) is a 80-kDa (729 amino acids) multidomain protein for which different activities have been demonstrated: (a) serine/threonine kinase activity causing autophosphorylation and phosphorylation of artificial basic substrates, (b) actin binding which results in kinase activation, and (c) binding to the Rho GTPases RhoA and Rac. The protein organization of YopO reflects these distinct activities. An N-terminal secretion/translocation region (aa 1–77) is followed by the predicted catalytic domain (aa 150–400). Mutation of a critical lysine residue in YopO (K269A) or aspartic acid residue in YpkA (D270A), located within the putative catalytic domain, abolished kinase activity (Cornelis et al. 1998; Dukuzumuremyi et al. 2000; Galyov et al. 1993; Juris et al. 2000). The C-terminal half of YopO contains four regions (within aa 436–710) with homology to Rho binding domains (RBDs). In yeast two hybrid assays a construct (residues 442–732) consisting of the RBDs of YpkA was able to bind to RhoA, whereas deletion of residues 543–640 (which include three of the RBDs) from YpkA abolished RhoA binding. The very C-terminal stretch of 21 amino acids (aa 709–729) displays some homology to the actin bundling protein coronin (Dukuzumuremyi et al. 2000; Juris et al. 2000). Removal of these 21 C-terminal amino acids abolished actin binding and actin induced autophosphorylation (Juris et al. 2000). The protein organization of YopO is depicted in Fig. 4.

Purified actin was found to bind to and activate YopO, resulting in autophosphorylation and phosphorylation of artificial substrates (Juris et al. 2000). There may be additional YopO/YpkA activators, because in fetal calf serum the highest YpkA stimulatory activity

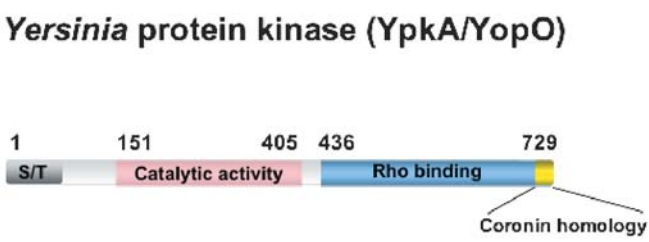


Fig. 4 Domain organization of YpkA/YopO. This figure is based on and summarizes the work of Barz et al. 2000; Cornelis et al. 1998; Dukuzumuremyi et al. 2000; Galyov et al. 1993; and Juris et al. 2000. *S/T*, secretion and translocation domain required by the type III secretion system; *Rho binding*, a region containing four amino acid stretches with homology to Rho binding domains; *coronin homology*, a stretch of 20 amino acids showing homology to the actin bundling protein coronin from *D. discoideum*. The amino acid *numbers* correspond to the sequence of the YopO protein.

was found between 100- to 300-kDa proteins where no actin was present (Dukuzumuremyi et al. 2000).

By yeast two hybrid assays and in immunoprecipitation experiments YpkA was shown to associate with Rho and Rac but not Cdc42Hs (Barz et al. 2000; Dukuzumuremyi et al. 2000). Rho and Rac binding were independent of the nucleotide bound state (GDP or GTP) of the GTPases, although in one report the GDP-bound form of RhoA bound three times more efficiently to YpkA than the GTP-bound form (Dukuzumuremyi et al. 2000). Moreover, YpkA did not alter guanine nucleotide exchange factor-stimulated GDP-release on RhoA in vitro. Although the in vitro data provide no basis for this so far, YpkA was able to reduce the level of GTP-bound RhoA in *Y. pseudotuberculosis*-infected HeLa cells (Dukuzumuremyi et al. 2000). In experiments aimed to relate the phosphorylating and Rho/Rac binding activities of YpkA, it was observed that (a) neither the GDP- nor the GTP-bound forms of Rho or Rac affect autophosphorylation, (b) autophosphorylated YpkA does not show altered binding to the GDP- or GTP-bound forms of Rho or Rac, and (c) in cells the kinase dead D270A mutant of YpkA reduces the levels of GTP-bound Rho as effectively as wild-type YpkA (Barz et al. 2000; Dukuzumuremyi et al. 2000).

HeLa cells infected with a *Y. pseudotuberculosis* mutant overexpressing YpkA responded by cell contraction and formation of pronounced retraction fibers whereby focal adhesions remained intact. In these experiments YpkA was localized at the plasma membrane, a property that was later shown to reside in the N-terminal half of the protein (Dukuzumuremyi et al. 2000; Hakansson et al. 1996). Divergent results where reported concerning the effects of kinase inactive YpkA/YopO mutants on the actin cytoskeleton. In one study, actin filament disruption by YpkAD270A was normal (Dukuzumuremyi et al. 2000), whereas in another study YopOK269A showed considerably attenuated actin filament destroying ability (Juris et al. 2000). In cooperation with YopT and YopE, YpkA contributes to the antiphagocytic activity of yersiniae towards neutrophils and macrophages (Grosdent et al 2002). It also synergizes with other Yops to confer upon yersiniae the ability to colonize and persist in different tissues (Logsdon and Mecsas 2003).

Important information concerning the biology and molecular functions of YopO/YpkA are missing to date. Its physiological substrates in cells are unknown and which of its different biochemical activities are responsible for the cellular and in vivo effects is not clear. Whether these activities work independently or synergistically with each other is worth investigation as well.

YopH: a tyrosine phosphatase working on focal adhesion proteins

YopH is a highly active phosphotyrosine phosphatase of 50 kDa (468 amino acids) with multiple substrates, many of which are components of focal adhesions (Cornelis 2002; Juris et al. 2002). The catalytic domain of YopH is situated in the C-terminal half of the protein (from amino acids 206–408). Mutation of a cysteine residue implicated in phosphate hydrolysis abolishes catalytic activity and leads to a substrate trapping protein (YopHC403S or YopHC403A) which localizes to focal adhesion complexes (Black and Bliska 1997; Persson et al. 1997). The N-terminal 129 amino acids of YopH both harbor the secretion/translocation domain and are crucial for substrate recognition (Black et al. 1998). Four single amino acid mutations (Q11R, V31G, A33D, and N34D) in YopH were identified that interfered with binding to tyrosine-phosphorylated $p130^{Cas}$ but not with YopH translocation into cells. One of these mutants (V31G) was also unable to localize to focal adhesions and dephosphorylate target proteins (Montagna et al. 2001). In addition, deletion of residues 223–226 blocks YopH targeting to focal adhesions and at the same time impairs antiphagocytic activity of *Yersinia* towards macrophages and mouse virulence (Persson et al. 1999).

YopH dephosphorylates $p130^{Cas}$, focal adhesion kinase (Fak), paxillin, Fyn-binding protein (FyB), and the scaffolding protein SKAP-HOM in different cell types such as neutrophils, macrophages, and epithelial cells (Black and Bliska 1997; Persson et al. 1997; Hamid et al. 1999). These YopH substrates regulate the interaction between the actin cytoskeleton and extracellular matrix-binding integrins in focal adhesions/complexes or similar structures (Brakebusch and Fässler 2003; Giancotti 2000). Cytoskeletal uptake structures formed upon interaction of *Yersinia* YadA or invasin with cellular integrins are thought to resemble focal adhesions, and their disruption by YopH may thus explain its antiphagocytic activity.

Previous studies using *Y. enterocolitica* or *Y. pseudotuberculosis* mutants suggested that YopH is responsible for up to 50% of the antiphagocytic activity of yersiniae towards neutrophils and J774 macrophages (Fällman et al. 1995; Ruckdeschel et al. 1996). Further studies showed that translocation of wild-type YopH but not of the catalytically inactive YopHC403S into HeLa cells or J774 macrophages prevented invasin/β1 integrin-mediated uptake of yersiniae (Persson et al. 1997, 1999). YopH has a variety of additional activities in *Yersinia*-infected cells, including suppression of the oxidative burst in macrophages, reduction of Ca^{++} signalling in neutrophils, inhibition of T- and B-lymphocyte activation, and blockage of monocyte chemoattractant protein 1 production by macrophages (Cornelis 2002; Alonso et al. 2004). Whether these functions are due to dephosphorylation of the known YopH substrates or involve unknown substrates is not clear at the moment. Nonetheless, YopH is among the most effective Yops with regard to mouse virulence and antiphagocytic activity.

YopM and YopP/YopJ: effectors modulating cell growth and survival

YopM is an approximately 40-kDa protein the exact size of which depends on the *Yersinia* strain from which it is isolated (Cornelis 2002). Size variation is due to varying numbers (13–20) of a 19-residue leucine-rich-repeat motif (LRR). LRRs which have been implicated in protein-protein interactions make up most of the YopM protein. YopM coimmuno-

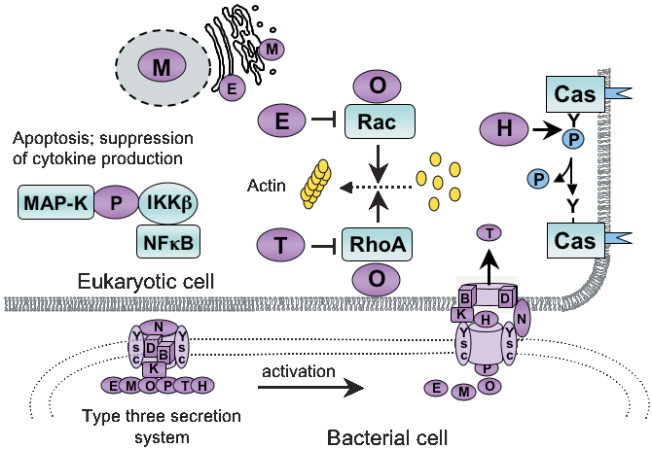


Fig. 5 *Yersinia* type III secretion system mediated injection of Yops into cells and Yop functions. Upon contact of yersiniae with target cells the type III secretion system is activated and a translocation needle is formed that spans the two bacterial membranes and the membrane of the eukaryotic host cell. Through this needle the effector Yops (*single letters in purple circles*) are translocated into the cell where they locate to distinct compartments such as plasma membrane (*YopO*) or Golgi apparatus (*YopE* and *YopM*). The proteins targeted by the Yops are depicted within *blue objects*. *MAP-K*, MAP kinase; *NFκB*, nuclear factor κB; *IKKβ*, inhibitory κB kinase *β*; *Ysc*, yop secretion proteins; *Cas*, p130 Crk-associated substrate; *LcrV*, V-antigen; *P*, phosphate group. For more detailed information, see specific sections of this article.

precipitates from cell lysates with two kinases, protein kinase C-like 2 (PRK2) and ribosomal S6 protein kinase 1 (RSK1). RSK1 is directly activated by YopM and this is required for stimulation of PRK2 (McDonald et al. 2003). The known cellular targets of YopM go well with its ability to affect the expression of genes involved in cell growth and cell cycle (Sauvonnet et al. 2002). It is also noteworthy that YopM is transported to the nucleus in a membrane-vesicle mediated pathway (Skrzypek et al. 1998). It is unclear, however, how this transport event relates to the role of YopM in cell growth or its association with the targets. Although YopM has no obvious antiphagocytic function, it is clearly required for mouse virulence of yersiniae (Leung et al. 1990).

YopP/YopJ (*Y. pseudotuberculosis*) has limited homology to the ubiquitin-like protease Ulp1 of yeast, which cleaves a small ubiquitin related modifier (SUMO1). YopP modulates SUMO activity and concentration in cells overexpressing these reaction components. Moreover, mutation of a critical cysteine or histadine residue within the putative catalytic region prevented some YopP/YopJ functions (Orth et al 1999). YopP/YopJ also associates with members of the MAPK kinase (MKK) superfamily, which represent upstream MAPK activators. Furthermore, it binds and inhibits the IκB kinase-*β* (IKK-*β*), which is the major NF-κB-activating kinase (Orth et al. 1999). Most likely through these properties YopP/YopJ disrupts NF-κB and MAPK signaling pathways, which leads to blockage of the release of TNF*α* by macrophages and of IL-8 by epithelial cells (Ruckdeschel 2002).

Interestingly, by downregulation of NF-κB signaling YopP/YopJ triggers apoptosis in infected macrophages (Ruckdeschel 2002). By enhancing the synthesis of antiapoptotic proteins, NF-κB is thought to protect cells that encounter bacteria or LPS (Karin and Lin 2002). Thus it has been proposed that LPS-responsive signaling by *Yersinia* infection co-

operates with the NF-κB-inhibitory action of YopP/YopJ to mediate apoptosis (Ruckdeschel et al. 2001).

Together, these findings emphasize the variety of strategies pathogenic *Yersinia* spp. have developed to undermine host defense mechanisms. Through the activity of different Yops, yersiniae disrupt the physiological sequence of immune functions that work on distinct cellular and molecular levels (Fig. 5). Initial effects are characterized by blockage of phagocytosis, oxidative burst, and cytokine production, and subsequent responses involve an effect on cell growth/proliferation and/or the induction of an intrinsic macrophage cell death program.

Acknowledgments. I want to thank the postdocs, graduate, and medical students, notably Andreas Andor, Agnès Wiedemann, Gerhardt Zenner and Robert Zumbihl for their important contribution to diverse topics of yersiniae cell interaction. The excellent technical support of Claudia Trasak is greatly appreciated. The continuous support of J. Heesemann is greatly appreciated. The work by the author is supported by the Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft.

References

Aepfelbacher M, Heesemann J (2001) Modulation of Rho GTPases and the actin cytoskeleton by Yersinia outer proteins (Yops). Int J Med Microbiol 291:269–276

Aepfelbacher M, Trasak C, Wilharm G, Wiedemann A, Trulzsch K, Krauss K, Gierschik P, Heesemann J (2003) Characterization of YopT effects on Rho GTPases in *Yersinia enterocolitica*-infected cells. J Biol Chem 278:33217–33223

Aili M, Telepnev M, Hallberg B, Wolf-Watz H, Rosqvist R (2003) In vitro GAP activity towards RhoA, Rac1 and Cdc42 is not a prerequisite for YopE-induced HeLa cell cytotoxicity. Microb Pathog 34:297–308

Alonso A, Bottini N, Bruckner S, Rahmouni S, Williams S, Schoenberger SP, Mustelin R (2004) Lck Dephosphorylation at Tyr-394 and inhibition of T cell antigen receptor signaling by Yersinia Phosphatase YopH. J Biol Chem 279:4922–4928

Alrutz MA, Srivastava A, Wong KW, D'Souza-Schorey C, Tang M, Ch'Ng LE, Snapper SB, Isberg RR (2001) Efficient uptake of *Yersinia pseudotuberculosis* via integrin receptors involves a Rac1-Arp 2/3 pathway that bypasses N-WASP function. Mol Microbiol 42:689–703

Andor A, Trülzsch K, Essler M, Wiedemann A, Roggenkamp A, Heesemann J, Aepfelbacher M (2001) YopE of Yersinia, a GAP for Rho-GTPases, selectively modulates Rac-dependent actin structures in endothelial cells. Cell Microbiol 3:301–310

Arbibe L, Mira JP, Teusch N, Kline L, Guha M, Mackman N, Godowski PJ, Ulevitch RJ, Knaus UG (2000) Toll-like receptor 2-mediated NF-kappa B activation requires a Rac1-dependent pathway. Nat Immunol 1:533–540

Barz C, Abahji TN, Trülzsch K, Heesemann J (2000) The Yersinia Ser/Thr protein kinase YpkA/YopO directly interacts with the small GTPases RhoA and Rac-1. FEBS Lett 482:139–143

Bishop AL, Hall A (2000) Rho GTPases and their effector proteins. Biochem J 348:241–255

Black DS, Bliska JB (2000) The RhoGAP activity of the *Yersinia pseudotuberculosis* cytotoxin YopE is required for antiphagocytic function and virulence. Mol Microbiol 37:515–527

Black DS, Bliska JB (1997) Identification of p130Cas as a substrate of Yersinia YopH (Yop51), a bacterial protein tyrosine phosphatase that translocates into mammalian cells and targets focal adhesions. EMBO J 16:2730–2744

Black DS, Montagna LG, Zitsmann S, Bliska JB (1998) Identification of an amino-terminal substrate-binding domain in the Yersinia tyrosine phosphatase that is required for efficient recognition of focal adhesion targets. Mol Microbiol 29:1263–1274

Bliska JB (2000) Yop effectors of Yersinia spp and actin rearrangements. Trends Microbiol 8:205–208

Brakebusch C, Fässler R (2003) The integrin-actin connection, an eternal love affair. EMBO J 22:2324–2333

Cornelis GR (2002) The Yersinia Ysc-Yop "Typ III" weaponry. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 3:742–752

Cornelis GR, Wolf-Watz H (1997) The Yersinia Yop virulon: a bacterial system for subverting eukaryotic cells. Mol Microbiol 23:861–867

Cornelis GR, Boland A, Boyd AP, Geuijen C, Iriarte M, Neyt C, Sory MP, Stainier I (1998) The virulence plasmid of Yersinia, an antihost genome. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 62:1315–1352

Dukuzumuremyi JM, Rosqvist R, Hallberg B, Akerstrom B, Wolf-Watz H, Schesser K (2000) The Yersinia protein kinase A is a host-factor inducible RhoA/Rac-binding virulence factor. J Biol Chem 275:35281–35290

El Tahir Y, Skurnik M (2001) YadA, the multifaceted Yersinia adhesin. Int J Med Microbiol 291:209–218

Fällman M, Andersson K, Hakansson S, Magnusson KE, Stendahl O, Wolf-Watz H (1995) *Yersinia pseudotuberculosis* inhibits Fc receptor-mediated phagocytosis in J774 cells. Infect Immun 63:3117–3124

Fu Y, Galan JE (1999) A Salmonella protein antagonizes Rac-1 and Cdc42 to mediate host-cell recovery after bacterial invasion. Nature 401:293–297

Galyov EE, Hakansson S, Forsberg A, Wolf Watz H (1993) A secreted protein kinase of *Yersinia pseudotuberculosis* is an indispensable virulence determinant. Nature 361:730–732

Giancotti FG (2000) Complexity and specificity of integrin signalling. Nat Cell Biol 2:13–14

Goehring UM, Schmidt G, Pederson KJ, Aktories K, Barbieri JT (1999) The N-terminal domain of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* exoenzyme S is a GTPase-activating protein for Rho GTPases. J Biol Chem 274:36369–36372

Grosdent N, Maridonneau-Parini I, Sory MP, Cornelis GR (2002) Role of Yops and adhesins in resistance of *Yersinia enterocolitica* to phagocytosis. Infect Immun 70:4165–4176

Hakansson S, Galyov EE, Rosqvist R, Wolf Watz H (1996) The Yersinia YpkA Ser/Thr kinase is translocated and subsequently targeted to the inner surface of the HeLa cell plasma membrane. Mol Microbiol 20:593–603

Hamid N, Gustavsson A, Andersson K, McGee K, Persson C, Rudd CE, Fallman M (1999) YopH dephosphorylates Cas and Fyn-binding protein in macrophages. Microb Pathog 27:231–242

Higgs HN, Pollard TD (1999) Regulation of actin polymerization by Arp2/3 complex and WASp/Scar proteins. J Biol Chem 274:3253–3254

Hoffmann C, Pop M, Leemhuis J, Schirmer J, Aktories K, Schmidt G (2004) The *Yersinia pseudotuberculosis* cytotoxic necrotizing factor (CNFY) selectively activates RhoA. J Biol Chem 279:16026–16032

Hoiczyk E, Roggenkamp A, Reichenbecher M, Lupas A, Heesemann J (2000) Structure and sequence analysis of Yersinia YadA and Moraxella UspAs reveal a novel class of adhesins. EMBO J 19:5989–5999

Hueck CJ (1998) Type III protein secretion systems in bacterial pathogens of animals and plants. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 62:379–433

Iriarte M, Cornelis GR (1998) YopT, a new Yersinia effector protein, affects the cytoskeleton of host cells. Mol Microbiol 29:915–929

Isberg RR, Leong JM (1990) Multiple beta 1 chain integrins are receptors for invasin, a protein that promotes bacterial penetration into mammalian cells. Cell 60:861–871

Isberg RR, Hamburger Z, Dersch P (2000) Signaling and invasin-promoted uptake via integrin receptors. Microbes Infect 2:793–801

Juris SJ, Rudolph AE, Huddler D, Orth K, Dixon JE (2000) A distinctive role for the Yersinia protein kinase: actin binding, kinase activation, and cytoskeleton disruption. Proc Natl Acad Sci 97:9431–9436

Juris SJ, Shao F, Dixon FE (2002) Yersinia effectors target mammalian signalling pathways. Cell Microbiol 4:201–211

Karin M, Lin A (2002) NF-kappaB at the crossroads of life and death. Nat Immunol 3:221–227

Krall R, Zhang Y, Barbieri JT (2004) Intracellular membrane localization of pseudomonas ExoS and Yersinia YopE in mammalian cells. J Biol Chem 279:2747–2753

Leung KY, Reisner BS, Straley SC (1990) YopM inhibits platelet aggregation and is necessary for virulence of Yersinia pestis in mice. Infect Immun 58:3262–3271

Lockman HA, Gillespie RA, Baker BD, Shakhnovich E (2002) *Yersinia pseudotuberculosis* produces a cytotoxic necrotizing factor. Infect Immun 70:2708–2714

Logsdon LK, Mecsas J (2003) Requirement of the *Yersinia pseudotuberculosis* effectors YopH and YopE in colonization and persistence in intestinal and lymph tissues. Infect Immun 71:4595–4607

McDonald C, Vacratsis PO, Bliska JB, Dixon JE (2003) The yersinia virulence factor YopM forms a novel protein complex with two cellular kinases. J Biol Chem 278:18514–18523

McGee K, Zettl M, Way M, Fallman M (2001) A role for N-WASP in invasin-promoted internalisation. FEBS Lett 509:59–65

Montagna LG, Ivanov MI, Bliska JB (2001) Identification of residues in the amino-terminal domain of the Yersinia tyrosine phosphatase that are critical for substrate recognition. J Biol Chem 276:5005–5011

Moon SY, Zheng Y (2003) Rho GTPase-activating proteins in cell regulation. Trends Cell Biol 13:13–22

Olofsson B (1999) Rho guanine dissociation inhibitors: pivotal molecules in cellular signalling. Cell Signal 11:545–554

Orth K, Palmer LE, Bao ZQ, Stewart S, Rudolph AE, Bliska JB, Dixon JE (1999) Inhibition of the mitogen-activated protein kinase kinase superfamily by a Yersinia effector. Science 285:1920–1923

Pawel-Rammingen von, U, Telepnev, MV, Schmidt, G, Aktories, K, Wolf-Watz, H, Rosqvist, R (2000) GAP activity of the Yersinia YopE cytotoxin specifically targets the Rho pathway: a mechanism for disruption of actin microfilament structure. Mol Microbiol 36:737–748

Persson C, Carballeira N, Wolf Watz H, Fallman M (1997) The PTPase YopH inhibits uptake of Yersinia, tyrosine phosphorylation of p130Cas and FAK, and the associated accumulation of these proteins in peripheral focal adhesions. EMBO J 16:2307–2318

Persson C, Nordfelth R, Andersson K, Forsberg A, Wolf-Watz H, Fallman M (1999) Localization of the Yersinia PTPase to focal complexes is an important virulence mechanism. Mol Microbiol 33:828–838

Ridley AJ, Self AJ, Kasmi F, Paterson HF, Hall A, Marshall CJ, Ellis C (1993) Rho family GTPase activating proteins p190, bcr and rhoGAP show distinct specificities in vitro and in vivo. EMBO J 12:5151–5160

Rosqvist R, Forsberg A, Wolf Watz H (1991) Intracellular targeting of the Yersinia YopE cytotoxin in mammalian cells induces actin microfilament disruption. Infect Immun 59:4562–4569

Rosqvist R, Bolin I, Wolf-Watz H (1998) Inhibition of phagocytosis in *Yersinia pseudotuberculosis*: a virulence plasmid-encoded ability involving the Yop2b protein. Infect Immun 56:2139–2143

Ruckdeschel K (2002) Immunomodulation of macrophages by pathogenic Yersinia species. Arch Immunol Therap Exp 50:131–137

Ruckdeschel K, Roggenkamp A, Schubert S, Heesemann J (1996) Differential contribution of *Yersinia enterocolitica* virulence factors to evasion of microbicidal action of neutrophils. Infect Immun 64:724–733

Ruckdeschel K, Mannel O, Richter K, Jacobi CA, Trulzsch K, Rouot B, Heesemann J (2001) Yersinia outer protein P of *Yersinia enterocolitica* simultaneously blocks the nuclear factor-kappaB pathway and exploits lipopolysaccharide signaling to trigger apoptosis in macrophages. J Immunol 166:1823–1831

Sauvonnet N, Pradet-Balade B, Garcia-Sanz JA, Cornelis GR (2002) Regulation of mRNA expression in macrophages after *Yersinia enterocolitica* infection. Role of different Yop effectors. J Biol Chem 277:25133–25142

Scheffzek K, Ahmadian MR, Wittinghofer A (1998) GTPase-activating proteins: helping hands to complement an active site. Trends Biochem Sci 23:257–262

Shao F, Merritt PM, Bao Z, Innes RW, Dixon JE (2002) A Yersinia effector and a Pseudomonas avirulence protein define a family of cysteine proteases functioning in bacterial pathogenesis. Cell 109:575–588

Shao F, Vacratsis PO, Bao Z, Bowers KE, Fierke CA, Dixon JE (2003) Biochemical characterization of the Yersinia YopT protease: cleavage site and recognition elements in Rho GTPases. Proc Natl Acad Sci 100:904–909

Skrzypek E, Cowan C, Straley SC (1998) Targeting of the Yersinia pestis YopM protein into HeLa cells and intracellular trafficking to the nucleus. Mol Microbiol 30:1051–1065

Sorg I, Hoffmann C, Dumbach J, Aktories K, Schmidt G (2003) The C terminus of YopT is crucial for activity and the N terminus is crucial for substrate binding. Infect Immun 71:4623–4632

Symons M, Settleman J (2000) Rho family GTPases: more than simple switches. Trends Cell Biol 10:415–419

Van Aelst L, D'Souza-Schorey C (1997) Rho GTPases and signaling networks. Genes Dev 11:2295–2322

Wiedemann A, Linder S, Grassl G, Albert M, Autenrieth I, Aepfelbacher M (2001) *Yersinia enterocolitica* invasin triggers phagocytosis via beta1 integrins, Cdc42Hs and WASp in macrophages. Cell Microbiol 3:693–702

Wurtele M, Wolf E, Pederson KJ, Buchwald G, Ahmadian MR, Barbieri JT, Wittinghofer A (2001) How the *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* ExoS toxin downregulates Rac. Nat Struct Biol 8:23–26

Zhu M, Shao F, Innes RW, Dixon JE, Xu Z (2004) The crystal structure of *Pseudomonas* avirulence protein AvrPphB: a papain-like fold with a distinct substrate-binding site. Proc Natl Acad Sci 101:302–307

Zumbihl R, Aepfelbacher M, Andor A, Jacobi CA, Ruckdeschel K, Rouot B, Heesemann J (1999) The cytotoxin YopT of *Yersinia enterocolitica* induces modification and cellular redistribution of the small GTP-binding protein RhoA. J Biol Chem 274:29289–29293

Rev Physiol Biochem Pharmacol (2004) 152:79–92
DOI 10.1007/s10254-004-0031-7

J. T. Barbieri · J. Sun

Pseudomonas aeruginosa ExoS and ExoT

Published online: 24 August 2004

Abstract ExoS and ExoT are bi-functional type-III cytotoxins of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* that share 76% primary amino acid homology and contain N-terminal RhoGAP domains and C-terminal ADP-ribosylation domains. The Rho GAP activities of ExoS and ExoT appear to be biochemically and biologically identical, targeting Rho, Rac, and Cdc42. Expression of the RhoGAP domain in mammalian cells results in the disruption of the actin cytoskeleton and interference of phagocytosis. Expression of the ADP-ribosyltransferase domain of ExoS elicits a cytotoxic phenotype in cultured cells, while expression of ExoT appears to interfere with host cell phagocytic activity. Recent studies showed that ExoS and ExoT ADP-ribosylate different substrates. While ExoS has poly-substrate specificity and can ADP-ribosylate numerous host proteins, ExoT ADP-ribosylates a more restricted subset of host proteins including the Crk proteins. Protein modeling predicts that electrostatic interactions contribute to the substrate specificity of the ADP-ribosyltransferase domains of ExoS and ExoT.

Abbreviations *GAP:* GTPase activating protein · *ADP-r:* Adenosine diphosphate ribose · *MLD:* Membrane localization domain · *FAS:* Factor activating exoenzyme S · *Crk:* CT-10 regulator of kinase · *SBTI:* Soybean trypsin inhibitor · *GEF:* Guanine nucleotide exchange factor

Introduction

Pseudomonas aeruginosa is an opportunistic human pathogen and the most common Gram-negative bacterium associated with nosocomial infections. *P. aeruginosa* is responsible for 16% of nosocomial pneumonia cases, 12% of hospital-acquired urinary tract infections, 8% of surgical wound infections, and 10% of bloodstream infections (Van

J. T. Barbieri (✉) · J. Sun
Microbiology and Molecular Genetics, Medical College of Wisconsin,
8701 Watertown Plk. Road, Milwaukee, WI, 53226, USA
e-mail: jtb01@mcw.edu · Tel.: +1-414-4568412 · Fax: +1-414-4566535

Delden and Iglewski 1998). Immunocompromised individuals, such as patients with cystic fibrosis, neutropenic cancer, burn wound, and bone marrow transplantation, are susceptible to infection by this pathogen and the prevalence of multi-drug resistant strains limits antibiotic therapy. *P. aeruginosa* pathogenesis depends on cell associated and secreted virulence factors. Cell-associated virulence factors include flagellum, pilus, adhesins, alginate, and lipopolysaccharide. Secreted virulence factors include: hemolysins, lipases, proteases, Exotoxin A and the type-III cytotoxins; ExoS, ExoT, ExoU, and ExoY.

The type-III secretion system delivers cytotoxins directly from the bacterium into a mammalian cell through a contact-dependent mechanism (Blocker et al. 2001). The type-III secretion apparatus is composed of 20–30 proteins that are conserved among Gram-negative bacteria. The genes encoding the *Pseudomonas* type-III secretion system are clustered in the 55 min region of the *P. aeruginosa* PA01 chromosome and are designated *psc*, *pcr*, *exs*, and *pop*. *psc* and *pcr* encode proteins of the type-III secretion apparatus and proteins involved in the regulation of expression of the system. In addition, PopB and PopD are responsible for the translocation of the type-III cytotoxins into mammalian cells (Frank 1997).

Pseudomonas aeruginosa type-III cytotoxins inhibit host innate immunity. ExoU is a phopholipase (Sato et al. 2003) and is correlated with acute cytotoxicity in epithelial cells and macrophages, and contributes to injury in models systems (Finck-Barbancon et al. 1997; Vallis et al. 1999). ExoY is an adenylate cyclase, which elevates the intracellular cAMP levels in cultured mammalian cells and causes actin cytoskeleton reorganiza tion (Yahr et al. 1998). ExoS and ExoT are similar, yet distinct, possessing N-terminal RhoGAP and C-terminal ADP-ribosyltransferase domains. The RhoGAP domains of ExoS and ExoT stimulate the reorganization of actin cytoskeleton through inactivation of Rho GTPases, while the ADP-ribosyltransferase domains ADP-ribosylate distinct host proteins.

This review will discuss the structural and biochemical properties of ExoS and ExoT and their relative roles in *P. aeruginosa* pathogenesis.

History of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* exoenzyme S

Exoenzyme S was first described as a secreted ADP-ribosyltransferase that was isolated from *P. aeruginosa* strain 388, possessing properties distinct from Exotoxin A (Iglewski et al. 1978). Exoenzyme S did not ADP-ribosylate elongation factor 2, as did Exotoxin A and diphtheria toxin, but ADP-ribosylated several proteins present in crude extracts of wheat germ or rabbit reticulocytes. In addition, the ADP-ribosyltransferase activity of exoenzyme S was not neutralized by α-Exotoxin A antibody and relative to Exotoxin A was heat stable. Together, these properties indicated that exoenzyme S was different from the previously described Exotoxin A.

From the culture supernatant fluid of *P. aeruginosa* strain 388, two proteins with molecular weight 53-kDa and 49-kDa (termed the 53- and 49-kDa forms of exoenzyme S) copurified with the ADP-ribosyltransferase activity of exoenzyme S (Kulich et al. 1993). The 53- and 49-kDa forms of exoenzyme S had similar N-terminal amino acid sequences (Coburn 1992), immunoreactivity (Nicas and Iglewski 1984), and peptides upon proteolytic cleavage (Kulich et al. 1994). Upon fractionation, the purified 49-kDa form of exoenzyme S possessed ADP-ribosylation activity, while the 53-kDa form lacked ADP-ribosylation activity. α-49-kDa-protein IgG inhibited the ADP-ribosyltransferase activity of purified exoenzyme S in a dose-dependent manner. This suggested that the 53-kDa form of

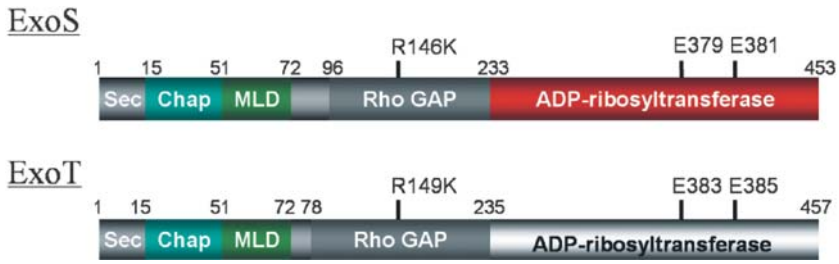


Fig. 1 Functional domains of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* ExoS and ExoT. ExoS and ExoT are similar yet distinct. They share 76% amino acid identity and similar functional domains with N-terminal RhoGAP activity and C-terminal ADP-ribosyltransferase activity. The N terminus of ExoS and ExoT are similar, containing secretion signals (*Sec*), chaperon binding domains (*Chap*), membrane localization domains (*MLD*) and RhoGAP domains (*RhoGAP*). The RhoGAP domains of ExoS and ExoT stimulate reorganization of the actin cytoskeleton through inactivating Rho, Rac and Cdc42. R146 of ExoS and R149 of ExoT are catalytic residues of the RhoGAP activity. ExoS and ExoT have distinct C-terminal ADP-ribosylation domains

exoenzyme S was an inactive precursor of the 49-kDa form of exoenzyme S. Subsequent studies showed that the 53- and 49-kDa forms of exoenzyme S are encoded by distinct genes, termed *exoT* and *exoS*, respectively (Yahr et al. 1996).

Functional domains of ExoS and ExoT

ExoS and ExoT share 76% amino acid identity (Fig. 1) and are bi-functional type-III cytotoxins with RhoGAP domains, which inactivate Cdc42, Rac and Rho, and C-terminal ADP-ribosyltransferase domains, which ADP-ribosylate unique cellular host proteins. The N termini of ExoS and ExoT also comprise a signal sequence required for secretion through the type-III apparatus, a chaperone binding region, and a membrane localization domain (MLD). The MLD, a hydrophobic region that is enriched with leucines, localizes ExoS and ExoT to intracellular membranes after translocation into host cells through the type-III secretion system.

Membrane localization domain

The MLD was first determined to be N-terminal to the GAP domain (Pederson et al. 2000), which resided within residues 96–219 of ExoS. The MLD was not required for expression of ExoS RhoGAP in cultured cells. Subsequent studies mapped the MLD to residues 51–72 of ExoS, and observed that these residues were necessary and sufficient for membrane localization within mammalian cells (Pederson et al. 2002). A deletion protein of ExoS that lacked the MLD (ExoS(ΔMLD) could be secreted through the type-III secretion system of ExoS and translocated into mammalian cells. This indicated that the MLD was not required for secretion through the type-III apparatus or translocation into mammalian cells. Although ExoS(ΔMLD) ADP-ribosylated Ras in vitro, type-III delivered ExoS(ΔMLD) did not ADP-ribosylate Ras, a membrane-associated target protein of ExoS (Riese and Barbieri 2002). This indicated that the subcellular localization of ExoS contributed to the targeting of Ras and other host proteins. Type III-delivered ExoS(ΔMLD)

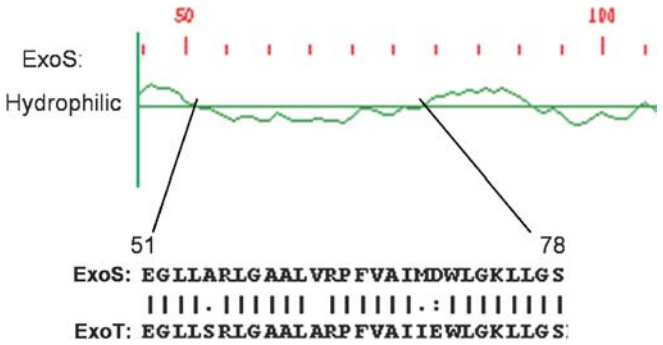


Fig. 2 Membrane localization domains of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa ExoS and ExoT. Upper panel:* the hydrophilic plot of N-terminal ExoS (residues *50–100*). *Lower panel:* the sequence alignment of the membrane localization domains of ExoS (*51–78*) and ExoT (*51–78*)

and ExoS showed similar capacities to elicit a cytotoxic response in CHO cells, which uncoupled the ADP-ribosylation of Ras from the cytotoxic action of ExoS (Riese and Barbieri 2002). Subsequently, the N terminus of *Yersinia* YopE was also shown to possess an intracellular membrane localization domain and that the MLD of YopE colocalized with the MLD of ExoS within mammalian cells and that the MLD of YopE functionally complemented the ExoS MLD for intracellular targeting in mammalian cells (Krall et al. 2004).

While the membrane localization domain of ExoT has not been experimentally mapped, primary amino acid sequences between the MLD of ExoS and the analogous region of ExoT are highly homologous (Fig. 2), indicating that ExoT possesses a similar targeting sequence to the ExoS MLD. This is supported by the determination that the type-III-delivered ExoT has a similar intracellular fractionation pattern with ExoS and that the RhoGAP domains of ExoS and ExoT have the same eukaryotic targets, Rho, Rac, and Cdc42 (Kazmierczak and Engel 2002; Krall et al. 2002). While the ADP-ribosylation domains of ExoS and ExoT have different in vivo target specificity, switching the ADP-ribosylation domains of ExoS and ExoT switched the in vivo substrate specificity of ExoS and ExoT. This suggests that the MLDs of ExoS and ExoT target these two toxins to a common intracellular trafficking pathway, where the intrinsic biochemical properties of the toxins become the only determinant for their different target specificity (Sun and Barbieri 2004).

RhoGAP domains

When ExoS was expressed in *Yersinia*, a mutated form of ExoS with deficient ADP-ribosyltransferase activity retained partial ability to disrupt the actin cytoskeleton in host cells and was resistant to phagocytosis, indicating ExoS could act through two different mechanisms on host cells (Frithz-Lindsten et al. 1997). Subsequently, the intracellular expression of the N-terminal 234 amino acids of ExoS (ExoS91–234) was observed to elicit the rounding of Chinese Hamster Ovary (CHO) cells and to disrupt the actin cytoskeleton. Cytoskeleton rearrangement elicited by ExoS(1–234) was reversed by the addition of cytotoxic necrotizing factor 1 (CNF 1), a toxin that constitutively activated Rho proteins

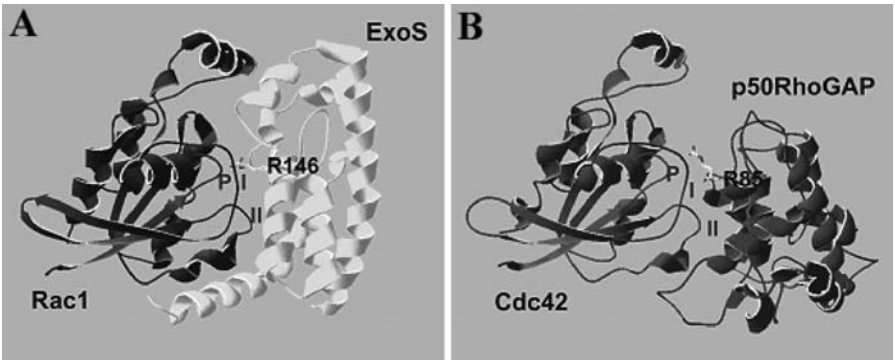


Fig. 3A, B Structures of bacterial GAP (*ExoS*) and eukaryotic GAP (*p50rhoGAP*). The atomic coordinates of Cdc42-p50rhoGAP complex (*1AM4*) and Rac1-ExoS RhoGAP complex (*1HE1*) were downloaded from PDB, and the structures were displayed in Swiss-Pdb-viewer v3.7. **A** Structure of Rac1-ExoS RhoGAP complex. Switch I (*I*), Switch II (*II*), and P-loop (*P*) in Rac1 are shown. The catalytic residue R146 in ExoS is shown. **B** Structure of Cdc42-p50RhoGAP complex. Switch I (*I*), Switch II (*II*), and P-loop (*P*) in Cdc42 are shown. The catalytic residue R85 in p50RhoGAP is shown

through deamidation of Gln61/63, which implicated a role for Rho GTPases in the disruption of the actin cytoskeleton by ExoS (Pederson et al. 1999). ExoS(1–234) was then shown to be a Rho GTPase Activating Protein (RhoGAP) for Rho, Rac, and Cdc42 and that Arg146 was a catalytic residue required for the expression of RhoGAP activity (Goehring et al. 1999). The 3-D crystal structure of the Rac-ExoSGAP complex showed that although ExoSGAP and the mammalian RhoGAPs did not share structural homology, like the eukaryotic RhoGAPs, ExoS RhoGAP stabilized the transition state of GTPase reaction, indicating ExoS RhoGAP was a functional mimic of eukaryotic GAPs (Wurtele, Renault et al. 2001; Wurtele, Wolf et al. 2001) (Fig. 3).

Similar to ExoS, the N terminus of ExoT is a Rho GAP for Rho, Rac, and Cdc42 in vitro and in vivo (Krall et al. 2000; Kazmierczak and Engel 2002), and that Arg149 (analogous to Arg146 on ExoS) is required for the Rho GAP activity of ExoT (Garrity-Ryan et al. 2000; Geiser et al. 2001). The function of ExoT Rho GAP activity has been proposed to be the inhibition of phagocytosis of bacterium by polarized epithelial cells and macrophage-like cells (Garrity-Ryan et al. 2000).

ADP-ribosyltransferase domains

ExoS was first described as an ADP-ribosyltransferase activity that was distinct from Exotoxin A, catalyzing the transfer of ADP-ribose from NAD^+ to a number of unknown eukaryotic proteins, but not EF-2 (Iglewski et al. 1978). The intermediate filament protein vimentin was first identified as a cellular target of ExoS (Coburn, Dillon et al. 1989). Ras and several Ras related proteins, including Rab3, Rab4, Ral, Rap1A, and Rap2, were subsequently identified as targets of ExoS (Coburn, Wyatt et al. 1989; Coburn and Gill 1991). The ADP-ribosylation of Arg41 by ExoS disrupted Ras signaling by inhibiting Guanine Nucleotide Exchange Factor (GEF) catalyzed nucleotide exchange, which uncoupled Ras signal transduction (Ganesan et al. 1998, 1999). ExoS also ADP-ribosylated Rap at Arg41, which also inhibited the ability of Rap GEF, C3G, to stimulate nucleotide exchange (Riese

et al. 2001). Type-III-delivered ExoS was found to be auto-ADP-ribosylated, which may regulate the toxin's catalytic potential (Riese et al. 2002). ExoS ADP-ribosyltransferase activity was dependent on a mammalian 14–3-3 protein termed *F*actor *A*ctivating Exo*S* (FAS) (Coburn et al. 1991; Fu et al. 1993). While FAS directly bound ExoS and Raf, activation of the ADP-ribosylation activity of ExoS by FAS appeared complex (Zhang et al. 1997, 1999; Petosa et al. 1998; Henriksson et al. 2000). The ADP-ribosyltransferase activity of ExoS was mapped to C-terminal residues 234–453 (Knight et al. 1995), where Glu 381 was determined to be a catalytic residue in the ADP-ribosylation reaction. The E381D mutation of ExoS reduced ADP-ribosyltransferase and NAD glycohydrolase activities. In contrast, the E379D mutation did not affect NAD glycohydrolase active, but inhibited ADP-ribosyltransferase activity, indicating that Glu379 contributed to the transfer of ADP-ribose to the target proteins (Liu et al. 1996; Radke et al. 1999). This identified ExoS as a bi-glutamic acid transferase.

While the C terminus of ExoT also has a FAS-dependent ADP-ribosyltransferase activity, it only possesses ~0.1% of ADP-ribosyltransferase activity relative to ExoS when soybean trypsin inhibitor (SBTI) is used as an artificial substrate. Interestingly, ExoT only possessed ~2% NAD glycohydrolase activity of ExoS (Liu et al. 1997). Intracellular expression of ExoS in the ADP-ribosylation domain was cytotoxic to culture cells, but ExoT was not cytotoxic to cultured cells (Note: the term "cytotoxicity" in the present review is defined as the ability of toxins to cause cell death). This implied that ExoT was a defective ADP-ribosyltransferase. However, recent studies observed that ExoT elicited reorganization of the actin cytoskeleton without interfering with Ras signal transduction, and the mutated form of ExoT (ExoTR149A) that was deficient in Rho GAP activity caused a morphological change of infected HeLa cells, suggesting that ExoT may ADP-ribosylate unique host proteins, distinct from Ras (Sundin et al. 2001). The observation that bacterial strains carrying point mutations at Arg149 of ExoT were internalized to an intermediate extent, compared to strains with a deletion of ExoT versus strains expressing wild-type ExoT, also suggested that the Rho GAP activity of ExoT accounted for only part of the anti-internalization activity (Garrity-Ryan et al. 2000). This implied that the ADP-ribosyltransferase domain of ExoT was active. Subsequent studies showed that ExoT ADP-ribosylated host proteins that were distinct to ExoS, Crk-I and Crk-II (CT10-regulator of kinase) both in vitro and in vivo. ExoT ADP-ribosylated Crk at a rate similar to the rate of ADP-ribosylation of SBTI by ExoS (Sun and Barbieri 2003). Crk proteins are SH2-SH3 domain-containing adaptor proteins that play an essential role in integrin-mediated phagocytosis and focal adhesion. Therefore, the ADP-ribosylation of the Crk proteins linked the antiphagocytic activity of ExoT to a mechanism distinct from the modulation of Rho GTPases by the RhoGAP domain. This leads to a hypothesis that ExoT ADP-ribosylates Crk proteins to block Rap1- and Rac1-mediated focal adhesion and phagocytosis.

Current models predict that the ADP-ribosylation of Crk by ExoT could either block interaction with upstream focal adhesion proteins or block interaction with downstream factor DOCK180, which would inhibit Rac-1-mediated phagocytosis (Fig. 4). Alternatively, ExoT ADP-ribosylation of Crk proteins may not block a physical interaction of Crk with its binding partners, but may result in nonfunctional signal complexes. Future studies will identify the sites of ADP-ribosylation on Crk proteins and investigate the mechanism of ExoT-mediated antiphagocytosis through ADP-ribosylation of Crk proteins.

Crk-mediated phagocytosis and focal adhesion appears to be a common pathway that is modulated by bacteria to either prevent uptake of bacteria by professional phagocytes or facilitate bacterial invasion into mammalian cells. *Yersinia* YopH, a type-III secreted

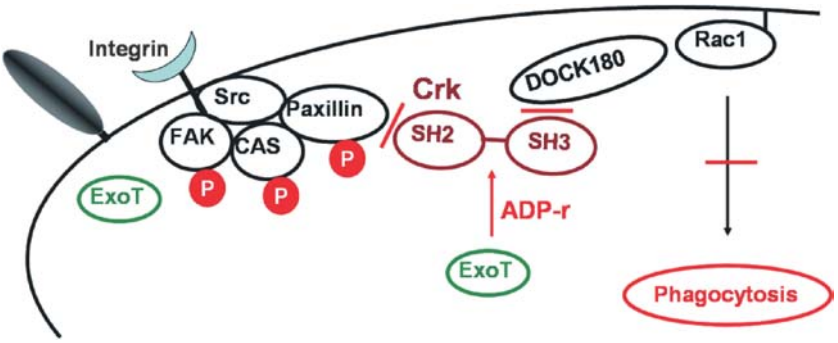


Fig. 4 . ADP-ribosylation of Crk proteins by ExoT inhibits phagocytosis. Once integrin receptors are activated by extracellular stimuli, Src kinase phosphorylates FAK (focal adhesion kinase), Cas (Crk-associated substrate) and Paxillin, which subsequently form a focal adhesion complex on the membrane. The phosphorylated focal adhesion complex recruits Crk proteins to the membrane through interaction with SH2 domain of Crk. The SH3 domain of Crk proteins brings the downstream factor DOCK180 that is the guanine nucleotide exchange factor for Rac1. Activated Rac1 stimulates downstream signal transduction leading to phagocytosis. The type-III delivered ExoT ADP-ribosylates Crk proteins. The ADP-ribosylation of Crk proteins either blocks the upstream interaction between focal adhesion complex and SH2 domain of Crk or blocks the downstream interaction between SH3 domain of Crk with DOCK180 to Rac-mediated phagocytosis

phosphatase, dephosphorylates focal adhesion complex proteins, which downregulate Crk-mediated phagocytosis (Persson et al. 1997; Black et al. 2000). *Shigella flexneri*, an opportunistic intracellular bacterial pathogen, activates Crk-mediated pathways to facilitate invasion. The Abl family of tyrosine kinases (Abl and Arg) is required during *Shigella* internalization. Abl and Arg were reported to be activated during a *Shigella* infection, accumulated at the site of bacterial entry, and were required for efficient bacterial uptake, as internalization was blocked upon deletion of these kinases or treatment with a specific inhibitor. The Abl kinases targeted Crk proteins during *Shigella* uptake, and a phosphorylation-deficient Crk mutant significantly inhibited bacterial uptake. Thus, *Shigella* appears to facilitate bacterial invasion through the modulation of a signal pathway that links Abl kinase phosphorylation of Crk to Rac-mediated phagocytosis (Burton et al. 2003).

Substrate recognition by the ADP-ribosyltransferases of ExoS and ExoT

While sharing 76% amino acid identity, ExoS and ExoT ADP-ribosylate different host proteins (Fig. 5). How ExoS and ExoT recognize different proteins is an intriguing question. Current structural and biochemical studies of bacterial ADP-ribosylating toxins provide insight into the mechanisms of NAD binding, cleavage, and ADP-ribose transfer; however, the mechanism by which bacterial ADP-ribosylating toxins recognize protein substrates is poorly defined. This is partially due to the lack of the structures of enzyme-protein substrate complexes. Recently, the 3-D structures of the ADP-ribosylation domains of ExoS and ExoT were generated by SWISS-MODEL, using VIP2, Iota, and C3 exoenzyme as templates (Fig. 6). Regions B (active site loop), C (ARTT motif), and E (PN loop) on ExoS were necessary and sufficient to recognize ExoS targets, while regions B, C and E on ExoT were necessary, but not sufficient, to recognize ExoT targets, the Crk

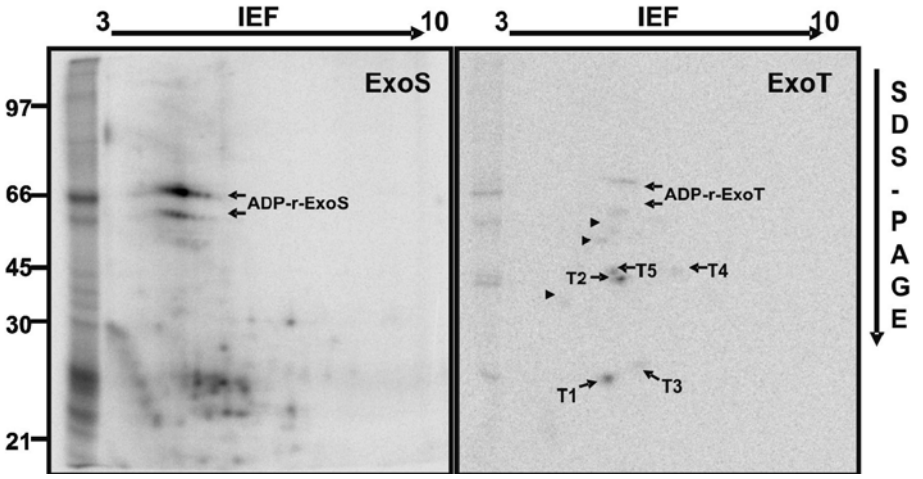


Fig. 5 Type-III delivered ExoS and ExoT ADP-ribosylated unique proteins in CHO cells. Postnuclear supernatant from CHO cells infected with *P. aeruginosa* PA103 Δ*exo*U,*exo*T::Tc expressing ExoS-HA (*ExoS*) or ExoT-HA (*ExoT*) were applied to 2-D SDS-PAGE, (pH 3–10), followed by auto-radiography. Auto-ADP-ribosylated ExoS and ExoT, and proteins that were ADP-ribosylated by ExoT are labeled with indicated *arrows*. Arrows indicate the migration of five radiolabeled spots. Spot T1, T2 and T3 correspond with Crk-I, Crk-II, and PGK-1. (Reproduction from J. Biol. Chem., Vol. 278, 32794–32800, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* ExoT ADP-ribosylates CT10 Regulator of Kinase (Crk) Proteins. (Jianjun Sun and Joseph T. Barbieri)

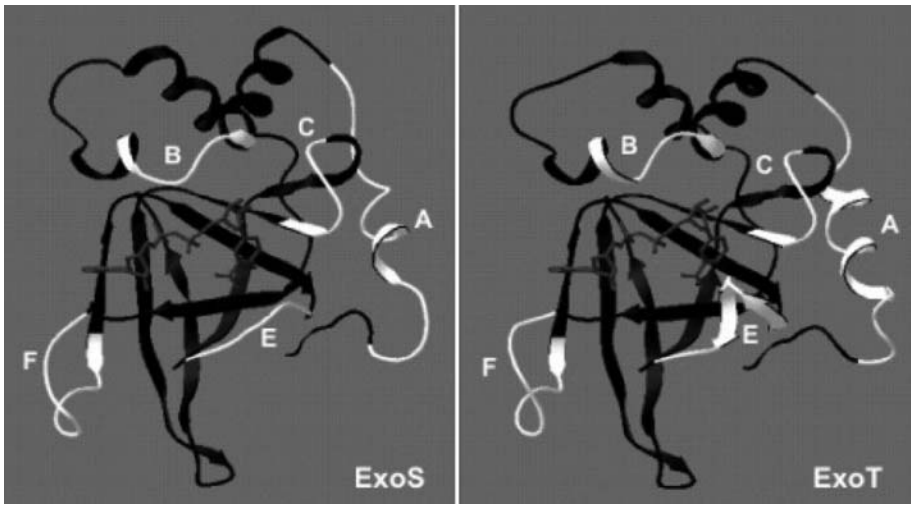


Fig. 6 Protein modeling of the ADP-ribosylation domains of ExoS and ExoT**.** Using the structures of C3 exoenzyme, Vip2 and Iota as templates, the 3-D structures of ExoS and ExoT ADP-ribosylation domains were generated by SWISS-MODEL. The regions that share low homology between ExoS and ExoT are highlighted and labeled as *A*, *B*, *F*, *C*, and *D*, respectively. Note that Regions A, B, C, and E are equivalent to the positions of helix α1, "active site loop," "ARTT" motif, and "PN loop," respectively

proteins. This indicated that an additional region was required for recognition of Crk. Subsequently, a specific Crk recognition motif on ExoT was defined as region A (Helix α1). The calculated electrostatic potentials of the substrate recognition surfaces on ExoS and ExoT displayed significant differences, where ExoS was a mixture of basic, acidic, and neutral charged residues, while ExoT was primarily composed of acidic residues. The electrostatic properties of the substrate recognition surfaces of Ras and Crk are complementary to ExoS and ExoT, respectively (Sun and Barbieri 2004).

ExoS recognizes a wide variety of genetically or structurally diverse proteins for ADP-ribosylation, including the monomeric GTPases, vimentin, and other undefined host proteins. ExoS also undergoes auto-ADP-ribosylation. Even with a one protein substrate, ExoS has multiple alternative sites for ADP-ribosylation. Arg41 of Ras is the preferred site for ExoS ADP-ribosylation, but when Arg41 is either ADP-ribosylated or mutated Arg128 becomes the preferred site of ADP-ribosylation (Ganesan et al. 1998). Arg41 and Arg128 are localized at the opposite sides of Ras molecule, indicating that ExoS could recognize multiple sites on Ras. While ExoS has a broad range of substrates relative to ExoT, it is not a nonspecific enzyme. In vitro and in vivo ExoS ADP-ribosylated a subset of proteins in mammalian cells. ExoS is a polysubstrate specific ADP-ribosyltransferase.

Polysubstrate specificity has been observed in several protein families, such as multidrug transporters, soluble multidrug recognizing proteins, and shark antibodies (Marchalonis et al. 1998). While the mechanism underlying polysubstrate specificity is not well understood, current biochemical and structural studies of multidrug transporters and their drug ligands indicate that polysubstrate specificity is due to a combination of hydrophobic effect, electrostatic attraction, and conformational complementarity, rather than a precise network established by hydrogen bonds and other specific interactions between proteins and ligands (Zheleznova et al. 1999, 2000; Neyfakh 2002). The hydrophobic interaction between proteins and ligands excludes interference of water molecules, which is in turn augmented by the electrostatic interaction surrounding the hydrophobic residues.

For the multidrug transporters, ligand property is not a strict factor in the binding mechanism, as molecules that contain hydrophobic and charged residues on the surface and physically fit into the binding site without including water molecules can be ligands. Different ligands interact with different subset of residues in the binding pocket. Compared to multidrug transporters, ExoS displays similar properties, requiring hydrophobic residues and charged residues to ADP-ribosylate substrates. ExoS may recognize multiple substrates through a similar mechanism to the multidrug transporters.

Evolutionary relationship and relative roles of ExoS and ExoT

Although bacterial ADP-ribosylating toxins target diverse mammalian proteins, structural and biochemical studies suggest that bacterial ADP-ribosyltransferases have similar 3-D structural backbones, which include a conserved NAD binding pocket and a conserved catalytic glutamate residue (Han et al. 1999, 2001). This indicates that the ADP-ribosylating enzymes evolved from a common ancestral ADP-ribosyltransferase, where the mechanisms of NAD binding and catalysis are relatively conserved, while the mechanism of substrate recognition diverged under various selection pressures. The phylogenetic trees derived from primary amino acid sequences of C3 exoenzyme, Vip2, Iota, C2 exoenzyme, ExoS, and ExoT show that ExoT is more closely related to the C2- or C3-like ADP-ribo-

sylating toxins than ExoS. ExoT and ExoS are probably the products of gene duplication, where the original gene product maintained protein function and the duplicated gene product diverged to attain a second independent function.

There are arguments for either ExoT or ExoS being the original gene product. Based upon prevalence among clinical isolates, *exoT* can be argued as the original gene, since *exoT* was more ubiquitous in strains of *P. aeruginosa* than *exoS.* Lomholt and Kilian et. al. screened clinical isolates of *P. aeruginosa* (145 strains) for the distribution of virulent factors (Lomholt et al. 2001); 59% of the 145 strains possess both *exoT* and *exoS*, 34% possess only *exoT*, and 6% possess only *exoS.* In another survey, 49% of *s*trains from patients with keratitis possessed only *exoT*, while 80%–100% strains from urine, lungs, wounds, and feces possessed a combination of *exoS* and *exoT*. Thirty-four percent of the 145 isolates contain *exoU*, another type-III cytotoxin recently characterized as a lipase (Sato et al. 2003). The presence of both *exoS* and *exoU* were essentially mutually exclusive. Based upon prevalence, *exoT* appears to be the more stable genotype and thus one can argue that *exoS* may have evolved and diverged from *exoT* to attain a novel property for polysubstrate recognition through gene duplication. In contrast, in environmental isolates ExoS is a common type-III cytotoxin, which could implicate ExoS as the progenitor gene product (Lanotte et al. 2004).

Biochemical studies can argue for the designation of either *exoT* or *exoS* as the progenitor. The biochemical studies that support the divergence of ExoS from ExoT through gene duplication include the determination that region A of ExoT is the Crk-specific recognition motif, while region A of ExoS does not play a role in substrate recognition. C3 and C3stau2 have slightly different substrate specificity, and show different molecular electrostatic surfaces on region A and E, indicating that region A of C3 ADP-ribosylating toxins also plays a role in substrate recognition. Therefore, upon duplication ExoS may have first become a nonfunctional duplicon that had limited affinity for Crk proteins due to mutations in region A and then evolved the polyspecificity of substrate recognition making ExoS a unique ADP-ribosylating enzyme relative to ExoT and the ADP-ribosylating enzymes from different species. This further indicates that ExoT and other orthologous ADP-ribosylating enzymes evolved at an earlier age, while ExoS evolved from ExoT paralogously through gene duplication. While paralogous proteins have dramatically different functions, they usually maintain similar 3-D structures. An important question is: can ExoS gain the polysubstrate specificity during evolution from ExoT without dramatic structural alterations? When only a limited number of residues of ExoT were replaced with residues from ExoS, the chimeras gained the ability to ADP-ribosylate different subsets of ExoS targets. These mutations do not appear to have dramatic structural alterations, since they have similar NAD glycohydrolase activity. Current studies from multi-drug transporters also indicate that the polyspecificity has arisen independently many times in protein evolution, without dramatic structural changes (Neyfakh 2002). Therefore, ExoS could gain the polysubstrate specificity during evolution from ExoT without dramatic structural alterations.

Biochemical properties that argue for the designation of ExoS as the progenitor and that exoT originated from gene duplication include the limited capacity for ExoT to catalyze the NAD glycohydrolase reaction, a common activity of other ADP-ribosylating proteins, where ExoT catalyzes the NAD glycohydrolase reaction at ~2% of the rate of ExoS. Second, ExoS and ExoT diverge in the primary amino acid sequence within the ARTT motifs, where ExoS has an aromatic residue that is conserved in most ADP-ribosylating

enzymes, while ExoT has a glutamate residue. Third, ExoS shows a limited capacity to ADP-ribosylate Crk, the preferred target of ExoT, while ExoT does not recognize the preferred targets of ExoS. Finally, a chimera that had the α-1 of ExoT engineered into ExoS efficiently ADP-ribosylated both ExoS targets and ExoT targets. This ExoS/ExoT chimera could represent an intermediate in the evolution of ExoS to ExoT, where α-1 evolved into an efficient Crk binding site and subsequently lost the ability to recognize ExoS targets through mutations within the ARTT motif (region C) and active site loop (region B).

Initially, since ExoT appeared to contain a "defective" ADP-ribosyltransferase domain relative to ExoS, the roles of ExoS and ExoT in bacterial pathogenesis and the selection for *P. aeruginosa* to maintain a "defective" gene, *exoT*, was unclear. The ADP-ribosylation of different eukaryotic proteins indicates that ExoS and ExoT play distinct roles in bacterial pathogenesis. While ExoS and ExoT are involved in antiphagocytosis, ExoT appears to be the major contributor for antiphagocytosis in most *P. aeruginosa* strains (Fleiszig et al. 1997; Cowell et al. 2000; Garrity-Ryan et al. 2000). While the RhoGAP domains of ExoS and ExoT stimulate reorganization of the actin cytoskeleton through inactivation of Rho, Rac, and Cdc42, which contributes to antiphagocytosis, this modulation is a reversible transient process. Moreover, the RhoGAP activity of ExoS and ExoT may be downregulated by ADP-ribosylation at their RhoGAP domains after delivery into host cells (Riese et al. 2002). Therefore, the ADP-ribosylation of Crk proteins by ExoT may represent the major contributor for antiphagocytosis. The ADP-ribosylation domain of ExoS is cytotoxic to mammalian cells. The mechanism of cell death caused by ExoS ADP-ribosyltransferase is not clear, but may be in part due to its polysubstrate specificity. The identification of new targets of ExoS ADP-ribosyltransferase will facilitate our understanding of ExoS-induced cell death. Recent studies show that the ADP-ribosylation activity of ExoS induces apoptosis of host cells (Frithz-Lindsten et al. 1997; Kaufman et al. 2000; Jia et al. 2003). Therefore, ExoS and ExoT are two type-III virulence factors that play distinct roles to disarm host defense, allowing the establishment of bacterial colonization.

Acknowledgements. The research described in the review that was conducted in the laboratory of JTB was supported by a grant from the NIH-NIAID.

References

Black DS, Marie-Cardine A, Schraven B, Bliska JB (2000) The Yersinia tyrosine phosphatase YopH targets a novel adhesion-regulated signalling complex in macrophages" Cell Microbiol 2(5):401–414

Blocker A, Jouihri N, Larquet E, Gounon P, Ebel F, Parsot C, Sansonetti P, Allaoui A (2001) Structure and composition of the Shigella flexneri "needle complex," a part of its type III secreton" Mol Microbiol 39(3):652–663

Burton EA, Plattner R, Pendergast AM (2003) Abl tyrosine kinases are required for infection by Shigella flexneri" EMBO J 22(20):5471–5479

Coburn J (1992) Pseudomonas aeruginosa exoenzyme S. Curr Top Microbiol Immunol 175:133–143

Coburn J and Gill DM (1991) ADP-ribosylation of p21ras and related proteins by Pseudomonas aeruginosa exoenzyme S. Infect Immun 59(11):4259–4262

Coburn J, Dillon ST, Iglewski BH, Gill DM (1989) Exoenzyme S of Pseudomonas aeruginosa ADP-ribosylates the intermediate filament protein vimentin. Infect Immun 57(3):996–998

Coburn J, Wyatt RT, Iglewski BH, Gill DM (1989) Several GTP-binding proteins, including p21c-H-ras, are preferred substrates of Pseudomonas aeruginosa exoenzyme S. J Biol Chem 264(15):9004–9008

Coburn J, Kane AV, Feig L, Gill DM (1991) Pseudomonas aeruginosa exoenzyme S requires a eukaryotic protein for ADP-ribosyltransferase activity. J Biol Chem 266(10):6438–6446

Cowell BA, Chen DY, Frank DW, Vallis AJ, Fleiszig SM (2000) ExoT of cytotoxic Pseudomonas aeruginosa prevents uptake by corneal epithelial cells" Infect Immun 68(1):403–406

Finck-Barbancon V, Goranson J, Zhu L, Sawa T, Wiener-Kronish JP, Fleiszig SM, Wu C, Mende-Mueller L, Frank DW (1997) ExoU expression by Pseudomonas aeruginosa correlates with acute cytotoxicity and epithelial injury. Mol Microbiol 25(3):547–557

Fleiszig SM, Wiener-Kronish JP, Miyazaki H, Vallas V, Mostov KE, Kanada D, Sawa T, Yen TS, Frank DW (1997) Pseudomonas aeruginosa-mediated cytotoxicity and invasion correlate with distinct genotypes at the loci encoding exoenzyme S. Infect Immun 65(2):579–586

Frank DW (1997) The exoenzyme S regulon of Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Mol Microbiol 26(4):621–629

Frithz-Lindsten E, Du Y, Rosqvist R, Forsberg A (1997) Intracellular targeting of exoenzyme S of Pseudomonas aeruginosa via type III-dependent translocation induces phagocytosis resistance, cytotoxicity and disruption of actin microfilaments. Mol Microbiol 25(6):1125–1139

Fu H, Coburn J, Collier RJ (1993) The eukaryotic host factor that activates exoenzyme S of Pseudomonas aeruginosa is a member of the 14-3-3 protein family. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 90(6):2320–2324

Ganesan AK, Frank DW, Misra RP, Schmidt G, Barbieri JT (1998) Pseudomonas aeruginosa exoenzyme S ADP-ribosylates Ras at multiple sites. J Biol Chem 273(13):7332–7337

Ganesan AK, Mende-Mueller L, Selzer J, Barbieri JT(1999) Pseudomonas aeruginosa exoenzyme S, a double ADP-ribosyltransferase, resembles vertebrate mono-ADP-ribosyltransferases. J Biol Chem 274(14):9503–9508

Garrity-Ryan L, Kazmierczak B, Kowal R, Comolli J, Hauser A, Engel JN (2000) The arginine finger domain of ExoT contributes to actin cytoskeleton disruption and inhibition of internalization of Pseudomonas aeruginosa by epithelial cells and macrophages. Infect Immun 68(12):7100–7113

Geiser TK, Kazmierczak BI, Garrity-Ryan LK, Matthay MA, Engel JN (2001) Pseudomonas aeruginosa ExoT inhibits in vitro lung epithelial wound repair. Cell Microbiol 3(4):223–236

Goehring UM, Schmidt G, Pederson KJ, Aktories K, Barbieri JT (1999) The N-terminal domain of Pseudomonas aeruginosa exoenzyme S is a GTPase-activating protein for Rho GTPases. J Biol Chem 274(51):36369–36372

Han S, Craig JA, Putnam CD, Carozzi NB, Tainer JA (1999) Evolution and mechanism from structures of an ADP-ribosylating toxin and NAD complex. Nat Struct Biol 6(10):932–936

Han S, Arvai AS, Clancy SB, Tainer JA (2001) Crystal structure and novel recognition motif of rho ADP-ribosylating C3 exoenzyme from Clostridium botulinum: structural insights for recognition specificity and catalysis. J Mol Biol 305(1):95–107

Henriksson ML, Troller U, Hallberg B (2000) 14-3-3 proteins are required for the inhibition of Ras by exoenzyme S. Biochem J 349 Pt 3:697–701

Iglewski BH, Sadoff J, Bjorn MJ, Maxwell ES (1978) Pseudomonas aeruginosa exoenzyme S: an adenosine diphosphate ribosyltransferase distinct from toxin A. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 75(7):3211–3215

Jia J, Alaoui-El-Azher M, Chow M, Chambers TC, Baker H, Jin S (2003) c-Jun NH2-terminal kinase-mediated signaling is essential for Pseudomonas aeruginosa ExoS-induced apoptosis. Infect Immun 71(6):3361–3370

Kaufman MR, Jia J, Zeng L, Ha U, Chow M, Jin S (2000) Pseudomonas aeruginosa mediated apoptosis requires the ADP-ribosylating activity of exoS. Microbiology 146 (Pt 10):2531–2541

Kazmierczak BI and Engel JN (2002) Pseudomonas aeruginosa ExoT acts in vivo as a GTPase-activating protein for RhoA, Rac1, and Cdc42. Infect Immun 70(4):2198–2205

Knight DA, Finck-Barbancon V, Kulich SM, Barbieri JT (1995) Functional domains of Pseudomonas aeruginosa exoenzyme S. Infect Immun 63(8):3182–3186

Krall R, Schmidt G, Aktories K, Barbieri JT (2000) Pseudomonas aeruginosa ExoT is a Rho GTPase-activating protein. Infect Immun 68(10):6066–6068

Krall R, Sun J, Pederson KJ, Barbieri JT (2002) In vivo rho GTPase-activating protein activity of Pseudomonas aeruginosa cytotoxin ExoS. Infect Immun 70(1):360–367

Krall R, Zhang Y, Barbieri JT (2004) Intracellular membrane localization of pseudomonas ExoS and Yersinia YopE in mammalian cells. J Biol Chem 279(4):2747–2753

Kulich SM, Frank DW, Barbieri JT (1993) Purification and characterization of exoenzyme S from Pseudomonas aeruginosa 388. Infect Immun 61(1):307–313

Kulich SM, Yahr TL, Mende-Mueller LM, Barbieri JT, Frank DW (1994) Cloning the structural gene for the 49-kDa form of exoenzyme S (exoS) from Pseudomonas aeruginosa strain 388. J Biol Chem 269(14):10431–10437

Lanotte P, Watt S, Mereghetti L, Dartiguelongue N, Rastegar-Lari A, Goudeau A, Quentin R (2004) Genetic features of Pseudomonas aeruginosa isolates from cystic fibrosis patients compared with those of isolates from other origins. J Med Microbiol 53(1):73–81

Liu S, Kulich SM, Barbieri JT (1996) Identification of glutamic acid 381 as a candidate active site residue of Pseudomonas aeruginosa exoenzyme S. Biochemistry 35(8):2754–2758
Liu S, Yahr TL, Frank DW, Barbieri JT (1997) Biochemical relationships between the 53-kilodalton (Exo53) and 49-kilodalton (ExoS) forms of exoenzyme S of Pseudomonas aeruginosa. J Bacteriol 179(5):1609–1613
Lomholt JA, Poulsen K, Kilian M (2001) Epidemic population structure of Pseudomonas aeruginosa: evidence for a clone that is pathogenic to the eye and that has a distinct combination of virulence factors. Infect Immun 69(10):6284–6295
Marchalonis JJ, Schluter SF, Bernstein RM, Hohman VS (1998) Antibodies of sharks: revolution and evolution. Immunol Rev 166:103–122
Neyfakh AA (2002) Mystery of multidrug transporters: the answer can be simple. Mol Microbiol 44(5):1123–1130
Nicas, TI and Iglewski BH (1984) Isolation and characterization of transposon-induced mutants of Pseudomonas aeruginosa deficient in production of exoenzyme S. Infect Immun 45(2):470–474
Pederson KJ, Vallis AJ, Aktories K, Frank DW, Barbieri JT (1999) The amino-terminal domain of Pseudomonas aeruginosa ExoS disrupts actin filaments via small-molecular-weight GTP-binding proteins. Mol Microbiol 32(2):393–401
Pederson KJ, Pal S, Vallis AJ, Frank DW, Barbieri JT (2000) Intracellular localization and processing of Pseudomonas aeruginosa ExoS in eukaryotic cells. Mol Microbiol 37(2):287–299
Pederson KJ, Krall R, Riese MJ, Barbieri JT (2002) Intracellular localization modulates targeting of ExoS, a type III cytotoxin, to eukaryotic signalling proteins. Mol Microbiol 46(5):1381–1390
Persson C, Carballeira N, Wolf-Watz H, Fallman M (1997) The PTPase YopH inhibits uptake of Yersinia, tyrosine phosphorylation of p130Cas and FAK, and the associated accumulation of these proteins in peripheral focal adhesions. EMBO J 16(9):2307–2318
Petosa C, Masters SC, Bankston LA, Pohl J, Wang B, Fu H, Liddington RC (1998) 14-3-3zeta binds a phosphorylated Raf peptide and an unphosphorylated peptide via its conserved amphipathic groove. J Biol Chem 273(26):16305–16310
Radke J, Pederson KJ, Barbieri JT (1999) Pseudomonas aeruginosa exoenzyme S is a biglutamic acid ADP-ribosyltransferase. Infect Immun 67(3):1508–1510
Riese MJ and Barbieri JT (2002) Membrane localization contributes to the in vivo ADP-ribosylation of Ras by Pseudomonas aeruginosa ExoS. Infect Immun 70(4):2230–2232
Riese MJ, Wittinghofer A, Barbieri JT (2001) ADP ribosylation of Arg41 of Rap by ExoS inhibits the ability of Rap to interact with its guanine nucleotide exchange factor, C3G. Biochemistry 40(11):3289–3294
Riese MJ, Goehring UM, Ehrmantraut ME, Moss J, Barbieri JT, Aktories K, Schmidt G (2002) Auto-ADP-ribosylation of Pseudomonas aeruginosa ExoS. J Biol Chem 277(14):12082–12088
Sato H, Frank DW, Hillard CJ, Feix JB, Pankhaniya RR, Moriyama K, Finck-Barbancon V, Buchaklian A, Lei M, et al. (2003) The mechanism of action of the Pseudomonas aeruginosa-encoded type III cytotoxin, ExoU. EMBO J 22(12):2959–2969
Sun J and Barbieri JT (2003) Pseudomonas aeruginosa ExoT ADP-ribosylates CT10 regulator of kinase (Crk) proteins. J Biol Chem 278(35):32794–32800
Sun J and Barbieri JT (2004) How bacterial ADP-ribosylating toxins recognize substrates. Nat Struct Mol Biol (in press)
Sundin C, Henriksson ML, Hallberg B, Forsberg A, Frithz-Lindsten E (2001) Exoenzyme T of Pseudomonas aeruginosa elicits cytotoxicity without interfering with Ras signal transduction. Cell Microbiol 3(4):237–246
Vallis AJ, Finck-Barbancon V, Yahr TL, Frank DW (1999) Biological effects of Pseudomonas aeruginosa type III-secreted proteins on CHO cells. Infect Immun 67(4):2040–2044
Van Delden C and Iglewski BH (1998) Cell-to-cell signaling and Pseudomonas aeruginosa infections. Emerg Infect Dis 4(4):551–560
Wurtele M, Renault L, Barbieri JT, Wittinghofer A, Wolf E (2001) Structure of the ExoS GTPase activating domain. FEBS Lett 491(1–2):26–29
Wurtele M, Wolf E, Pederson KJ, Buchwald G, Ahmadian MR, Barbieri JT, Wittinghofer A (2001) How the Pseudomonas aeruginosa ExoS toxin downregulates Rac. Nat Struct Biol 8(1):23–26
Yahr TL, Barbieri JT, Frank DW (1996) Genetic relationship between the 53- and 49-kilodalton forms of exoenzyme S from Pseudomonas aeruginosa. J Bacteriol 178(5):1412–1419
Yahr TL, Vallis AJ, Hancock MK, Barbieri JT, Frank DW (1998) ExoY, an adenylate cyclase secreted by the Pseudomonas aeruginosa type III system. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 95(23):13899–13904
Zhang L, Wang H, Liu D, Liddington R, Fu H (1997) Raf-1 kinase and exoenzyme S interact with 14-3-3zeta through a common site involving lysine 49. J Biol Chem 272(21):13717–13724

Zhang L, Wang H, Masters SC, Wang B, Barbieri JT, Fu H (1999) Residues of 14-3-3 zeta required for activation of exoenzyme S of Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Biochemistry 38(37):12159–12164

Zheleznova EE, Markham PN, Neyfakh AA, Brennan RG (1999) Structural basis of multidrug recognition by BmrR, a transcription activator of a multidrug transporter. Cell 96(3):353–362

Zheleznova EE, Markham P, Edgar R, Bibi E, Neyfakh AA, Brennan RG (2000) A structure-based mechanism for drug binding by multidrug transporters. Trends Biochem Sci 25(2):39–43

Rev Physiol Biochem Pharmacol (2004) 152:93–109
DOI 10.1007/s10254-004-0032-6

B. A. Wilson · M. Ho

Pasteurella multocida toxin as a tool for studying G_q signal transduction

Published online: 29 September 2004

Abstract *Pasteurella multocida* toxin (PMT) stimulates and subsequently uncouples phospholipase C (PLC) signal transduction through its selective action on the $G\alpha_q$ subunit. This review summarizes what is currently known about the molecular action of PMT on G_q and the resulting cellular effects. Examples are presented illustrating the use of PMT as a powerful tool for dissecting the molecular mechanisms involving pertussis toxin (PT)-insensitive heterotrimeric G proteins.

Introduction

Protein toxins have long been known to constitute important virulence determinants for pathogenic bacteria. The anthrax bioterrorism events of 2001 and the emergence of antibiotic-resistant, toxin-producing bacteria have provided strong impetus to increase our understanding of toxin-mediated disease processes (Wilson and Salyers 2002). The growing relevance of toxin-mediated effects on host cells in developing alternative antitoxin strategies heightens the need to better understand the structure-function relationships of protein toxins produced by pathogenic bacteria. Over the past couple of decades, our understanding of toxin action has expanded tremendously. Information learned from these efforts has enabled scientists to exploit their noxious properties for beneficial applications in studying problems in cell biology, physiology, and pharmacology.

Many protein toxins share the common feature of being highly specialized enzymes, capable of entering eukaryotic cells and catalyzing reactions that interfere with normal signal transduction and physiological processes, often resulting in morphological changes, cellular damage or cell death. Because of their highly specific action in cells, bacterial protein toxins can be used as selective and efficient tools for studying molecular mechanisms controlling signal transduction and other physiological processes (Schiavo and Van Der Goot 2001). For example, a number of toxins, including the clostridial toxins C2, C3,

B. A. Wilson (✉) · M. Ho
Department of Microbiology, University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, Urbana, IL, 61801, USA
e-mail: bawilson@life.uiuc.edu · Tel.: +1-217-2449631 · Fax: +1-217-2446697

Table 1 Signaling of heterotrimeric G-proteins and their modulating toxins

Subfamily	Gα	Signaling[a]	Modulating toxin	Toxin effect on Gα	References[b]
G_i subfamily	G_{i1}	↓AC	PT	Inhibition	(a) (b)
	G_{i2}	↓AC	PT	Inhibition	(a) (b)
	G_{i3}	↓AC	PT	Inhibition	(a) (b)
	G_o	↓Ca^{2+} channels	PT	Inhibition	(a) (b)
	G_t	↑cGMP-PDE	PT	Inhibition	(a) (b) (c)
			CT	Activation	(a) (b) (d)
	G_{gust}	↑PDE	PT	?	(e)
	G_z	↓AC	?	?	(f) (g)
G_s subfamily	G_s	↑AC	CT	Activation	(a) (b)
	G_{olf}	↑AC	CT	Activation	(h)
G_q subfamily	G_q	↑PLCβ, ↑Rho	PMT	Activation/Inhibition[c]	(i) (j) (k)
	G_{11}	↑PLCβ, ↑Rho	?	?	(k)
	G_{14}	↑PLCβ	?	?	
	G_{15}	↑PLCβ	?	?	
	G_{16}	↑PLCβ	?	?	
G_{12} subfamily	G_{12}	↑Rho	?	?	
	G_{13}	↑Rho	?	?	

[a] AC: adenylate cyclase; PDE: phosphodiesterase; PLC: phopholipase C

[b] (a) (Fields and Casey 1997), (b) (Casey and Gilman 1988), (c) (Van Dop et al. 1984a), (d) (Van Dop et al. 1984b), (e) (Gilbertson et al. 2000), (f) (Casey et al. 1990), (g) (Ho and Wong 2001), (h) (Jones et al. 1990), (i) (Wilson et al. 1997), (j) (Zywietz et al. 2001), (k) (Vogt et al. 2003)

[c] Initial activation, followed by uncoupling of G_q signaling. Prolonged treatment with PMT results in inhibition

toxA and toxB, and the *E. coli* toxins CNF1 and CNF2, among others, have been used as selective modulators of cytoskeletal function through their action on small GTPases (Aktories et al. 2000). The clostridial neurotoxins have been enormously beneficial in uncovering molecular mechanisms of neurotransmitter release and essential aspects of neuronal physiology (Lalli et al. 2003; Schiavo et al. 2000). These neurotoxins are increasingly being put to beneficial use in medicine for the treatment of human diseases characterized by hyperfunction of nerves (Rossetto et al. 2001).

Heterotrimeric G proteins constitute a large family of pivotal regulatory GTPases that are responsible for transducing external (e.g., hormonal) signals from ligand-bound receptors to intracellular responses. They are made of α, β, and γ subunits and are distinguished into four main classes: G_s, G_i, G_{12}, and G_q. The first toxins used to define the molecular mechanisms of heterotrimeric G proteins and adenylate cyclase-mediated signaling pathways were cholera toxin (CT) and pertussis toxin (PT): CT activates G_s proteins, while PT inhibits $G_{i/o}$ proteins (Casey and Gilman 1988). PT was used to further distinguish a group of PT-insensitive G proteins (see Table 1) (Fields and Casey 1997). Of these G proteins that are refractory to PT treatment, a subgroup, later identified as the G_q family, were found to play critical roles as regulators of phospholipase C (PLC) signaling (Fields and Casey 1997; Rhee and Choi 1992; Sternweis and Smrcka 1992).

Receptors for many hormones, neurotransmitters and growth factors are coupled to G_q proteins. Stimulation of G_q-coupled receptors results in transient elevation of intracellular Ca^{2+} and increased levels of inositol trisphosphate (IP_3) and diacylglycerol (DAG). These second messengers control vital cellular processes, including fertilization, cell growth, transformation, secretion, muscle contraction, metabolism and sensory perception

(Berridge 1993). IP_3 and DAG are generated from phosphatidylinositol 4,5-bisphosphate (PIP_2) through the action of PLC, of which γ-isoforms are activated through tyrosine kinase-linked receptors and β-isoforms are activated through G-protein-coupled receptors (Rhee and Choi 1992; Sternweis and Smrcka 1992). Ligands and G-protein-coupled receptors that activate PLCβ (Deckmyn et al. 1993; Quick et al. 1994; Rebecchi and Pentyala 2000; Rhee and Choi 1992; Sternweis and Smrcka 1992) can be distinguished by their sensitivity to PT (Berstein et al. 1992a, b; Camps et al. 1992; Wu et al. 1993). The $\beta\gamma$ subunits (but not α subunits) of PT-sensitive $G_{i/o}$ proteins preferentially stimulate PLCβ2>PLCβ3>PLCβ1, whereas the α subunits of the PT-insensitive G_q proteins stimulate PLCβ1≧PLCβ3≫PLCβ2 (Hepler et al. 1993; Park et al. 1993; Rhee and Choi 1992; Smrcka and Sternweis 1993).

Until recently, there had been no specific modulating reagent available for studying the role of G_q proteins in hormonal communication and signal transduction. The dermonecrotic toxin produced by *Pasteurella multocida* (PMT) can now be added to the list of bacterial protein toxins that modulate G proteins (Table 1). PMT stimulates Ca^{2+} and IP_3 signaling by activating G_q-dependent PLCβ1 (Wilson et al. 1997). PMT facilitation of Gα_q-protein coupling to PLCβ1 causes the same cellular responses elicited by G_q-protein-linked receptors, such as the muscarinic (M_1, M_3, M_5), bombesin, vasopressin, endothelin, thyrotropin-releasing hormone (TRH), and adrenergic receptors (α_1AR). Understanding the biochemical mechanism of PMT action may thus afford unique insight into G_q-mediated molecular signaling events and enables the use of PMT as a tool for studying these processes.

Cellular effects of PMT

PMT is the major virulence factor produced by *P. multocida* that is responsible for atrophic rhinitis, pneumonia-like respiratory disease, and dermonecrosis (Foged 1992). PMT is secreted as a monomeric, 1285-amino acid protein (M_r 146-kDa) (Lax and Chanter 1990; Petersen 1990; Petersen and Foged 1989). PMT binds to ganglioside-type receptors and enters mammalian cells via receptor-mediated endocytosis (Dudet et al. 1996; Pettit et al. 1993; Rozengurt et al. 1990) and acts intracellularly to initiate a number of signaling pathways leading to DNA synthesis and cellular proliferation (Higgins et al. 1992; Rozengurt et al. 1990; Seo et al. 2000; Wilson et al. 1997, 2000). Purified PMT alone is sufficient to experimentally induce progressive atrophic rhinitis in swine and symptoms of pneumonia in rabbits (Chrisp and Foged 1991; Foged 1992; Lax and Chanter 1990). Recombinant PMT is indistinguishable from native toxin, and both are equally potent at picomolar concentrations (Lax and Chanter 1990; Rozengurt et al. 1990; Wilson et al. 1997). Vaccination against PMT protects against challenge with *P. multocida* and development of atrophic rhinitis (Foged 1992).

PMT stimulates osteoclastic bone resorption in vitro (Felix et al. 1992; Kimman et al. 1987) and increases osteoclast cell number in vivo (Martineau-Doize et al. 1993). PMT appears to stimulate the differentiation of preosteoclasts into osteoclasts (Jutras and Martineau-Doize 1996) and promotes osteoclast proliferation leading to bone resorption, while apparently inhibiting bone regeneration by osteoblasts (Mullan and Lax 1998; Sterner-Kock et al. 1995). PMT acting on these multiple cell types, including activating mature osteoclasts and inducing preosteoclast proliferation, as well as proliferation/differentiation of periosteal (fibroblastic, osteogenic, and adipogenic) cells, may contribute to the symptoms of atrophic rhinitis (Mullan and Lax 1998; Rozengurt et al. 1990). Recent evidence

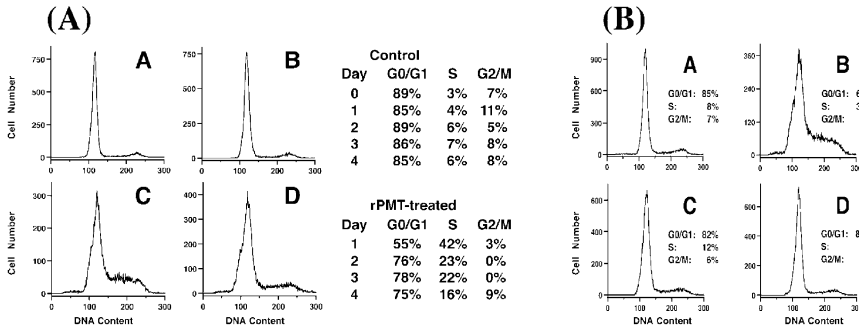


Fig. 1 Effect of PMT treatment on cell cycle progression in Swiss 3T3 cells. Shown are results from flow cytometry analyses of confluent Swiss 3T3 cells with or without single or multiple PMT treatments. **A** Representative DNA histograms from a time course of untreated (*a* and *b*) or PMT-treated (*c* and *d*) cells from day 1 (*a* and *c*) and day 4 (*b* and *d*). To the *right* is the summary of the percentages of untreated (*top*) or PMT-treated (*bottom*) cells found in G_0/G_1, S, and G_2/M phases of the cell cycle during the time course. **B** Representative DNA histograms from multiple PMT treatments: (*a*) untreated cells analyzed on day 5; (*b*) cells treated with PMT on day 5 and analyzed on day 6; (*c*) cells treated with PMT on day 0 and analyzed on day 5; (*d*) cells treated with PMT on day 0 and again on day 5 and analyzed on day 6. The percentages of cells found in G_0/G_1, S, and G_2/M phases of the cell cycle are also shown. (Reprinted with permission from Wilson et al. 2000.)

suggests that immunomodulation of the host may be an additional function of the toxin important in pathogenesis (Jordan et al. 2003).

In cultured epithelial cells, such as calf or monkey (Vero) kidney cells, calf testis, or bovine embryonic lung (EBL) cells, PMT causes primarily morphological changes and cytotoxic effects (Pennings and Storm 1984; Pettit et al. 1993; Rutter and Luther 1984). In cultured mesenchymal cells, such as murine, rat, or human fibroblasts, and in osteoblasts, PMT action is mitogenic and initiates DNA synthesis and cell division (Mullan and Lax 1998; Rozengurt et al. 1990). PMT has also been shown to induce anchorage-independent cell growth of fibroblasts (Higgins et al. 1992), as evidenced by colony formation in soft agar, suggesting that it has the ability to promote a transformed phenotype and leading to the speculation that it could promote tumor formation and cancer (Lax and Thomas 2002). Flow cytometry analysis of cells treated with PMT showed that PMT stimulates cells to move from the G_1 phase into and through the S phase, but it does not trigger apoptosis (Wilson et al. 2000). PMT-treated confluent quiescent Swiss 3T3 cells formed dense monolayers over the course of 4–6 days, with a concomitant increase in cell number up to threefold (Wilson et al. 2000). However, cell cycle analysis revealed that after the initial mitogenic response to PMT, cells subsequently arrested primarily in G_1 and became unresponsive to further PMT treatment (see Fig. 1), indicating that the mitogenic response was not sustained (Wilson et al. 2000).

Western blot analysis of the effect of PMT on the expression of a number of cell cycle markers, including the proto-oncogene c-Myc; cyclins D1, D2, D3, and E; p21; PCNA; and the Rb proteins, p107 and p130, showed that PMT initially upregulated these markers and stimulated cell cycle progression in Swiss 3T3 cells, yet continued expression of these markers, and hence continued proliferation, was not sustained (Wilson et al. 2000). However, PMT exhibited a differential effect on epithelial-like cells. Confluent Vero cells underwent rapid, dramatic morphological changes upon toxin exposure, but a mitogenic ef-

fect was not evident, based on the lack of a PMT-induced increase in cell numbers or in the rate of DNA synthesis, which was further substantiated by flow cytometry analysis. Furthermore, PMT failed to upregulate PCNA or cyclins D3 and E, which is critical for driving cells from G_1 into S phase, and hence, little or no cell cycle progression occurred in Vero cells (Wilson et al. 2000).

PMT effects on signal transduction

PMT and G_q-PLC signaling

PMT activates inositol phosphate pathways, Ca^{2+} mobilization and PKC-dependent phosphorylation in cultured fibroblasts and osteoblasts (Mullan and Lax 1998; Staddon et al. 1990, 1991). PMT also potentiates G protein-coupled receptor responses to bombesin, vasopressin, and endothelin (Murphy and Rozengurt 1992). These effects suggested the involvement of a cellular phosphatidylinositol-specific phospholipase C (PLC) in PMT action (Murphy and Rozengurt 1992). Wilson et al. (Wilson et al. 1997) subsequently demonstrated direct PMT-mediated stimulation of PLCβ1 activity and IP_3-induced intracellular Ca^{2+} mobilization by using voltage-clamped *Xenopus* oocytes as a model system to monitor the transient Ca^{2+}-dependent Cl^- current evoked upon microinjection with PMT. To identify the intracellular targets involved in the PMT-induced IP_3 signaling pathway, they examined the effects of specific antibodies against various G-protein and PLC signaling molecules on the PMT-induced Cl^- currents in the oocyte system. As showed in Fig. 2, only antibodies directed against PLCβ1, Gα_{pan}, and the C-terminus of G$\alpha_{q/11}$ completely blocked the PMT-mediated response in oocytes. In addition, GDPβS, a known inhibitor of

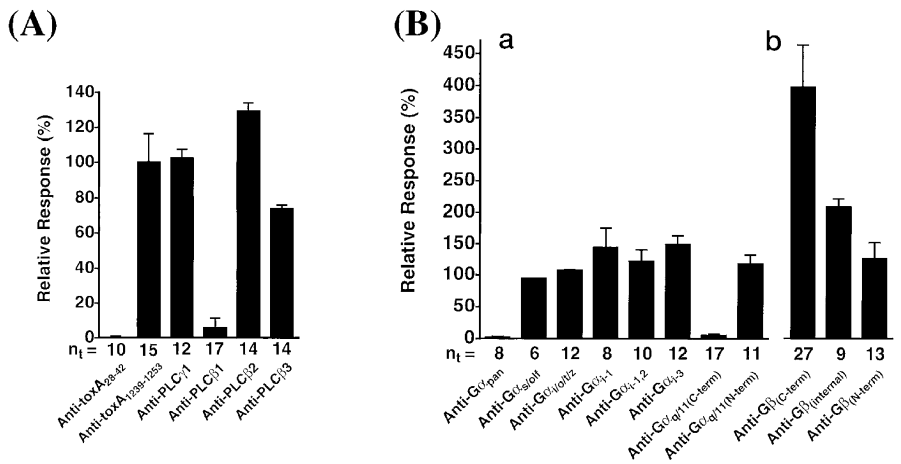


Fig. 2 Identification of the intracellular target of PMT as $G_{q/11}$ by using specific antibodies against key signaling proteins to block the PMT response in *Xenopus* oocytes. The peak inward Cl^- current was used to measure the effect of specific antibodies on the PMT-induced Ca^{2+}-dependent Cl^- currents in oocytes voltage-clamped at a holding potential of –80 mV. Antibodies against PMT (N-terminus or C-terminus) and various PLC isoforms (**A**) or against various Gα or Gβ subunits (**B**) were microinjected into the oocytes 3 h prior to microinjection with PMT. (Reprinted with permission from Wilson et al. 1997.)

Gα subunit-mediated signaling pathways, blocked the PMT-induced response. Furthermore, overexpression of mouse Gα_q in *Xenopus* oocytes increased the PMT-induced response, whereas treatment with antisense Gα_q mRNA reduced the response. These results established the direct involvement of Gα_q protein in PMT-activation of PLCβ1 (Fig. 2).

Antibodies against Gβ subunit did not block, but rather enhanced the PMT-induced response (Fig. 2), distinguishing that PMT action did not involve G$\beta\gamma$ subunit activation of PLCβ2 by a $G_{i/o}$-dependent pathway. Rather, by binding to Gβ, the antibodies caused the dissociation of Gα_q subunit from the heterotrimeric complex, which could then be acted upon by PMT to give an enhanced response. The PMT-induced response was likewise enhanced by the release of Gα_q subunit through sequestration of G$\beta\gamma$ subunits by using PT (Wilson et al. 1997). From these studies, the researchers concluded that the monomeric Gα_q subunit is the preferred target of PMT action, which subsequently activates PLCβ1. Mouse knockout cell lines were used to confirm that PMT-induced formation of inositol phosphates was exclusively dependent on Gα_q, and not closely-related G_q family members, such as G_{11}, G_{12}, or G_{13} (other G_q-family members, G_{14} or $G_{15/16}$, were not examined) (Zywietz et al. 2001).

A recent study using a series of chimeras between Gα_q and Gα_{11} in G$\alpha_{q/11}$-knockout cells identified a region of the helical domain of Gα_q that is important for PMT-induced activation of PLCβ (Orth et al. 2004). Exchange of Glu-105 or Asn-109 of Gα_{11}, each of which is located in the helical domain of the Gα subunit, with the corresponding His residues of Gα_q resulted in a mutant Gα_{11} that was now capable of mediating PMT-induced activation of PLCβ. However, the converse was not true, in that the reciprocal exchange of either His in Gα_q with the corresponding Gα_{11} amino acid did not prevent PMT activation of PLCβ. Whether this differential interaction is due to a difference in PMT recognition of Gα_q versus Gα_{11}, due to a difference in Gα_q versus Gα_{11} recognition of PLCβ, or due to a difference in recognition of Gα_q versus Gα_{11} by another unidentified PMT mediator has yet to be determined.

PMT was shown to stimulate tyrosine phosphorylation of Gα_q, but a mutant of PMT that does not activate G_q was also found to cause tyrosine phosphorylation of G_q, suggesting that this phosphorylation is not a prerequisite for Gα_q activation by PMT (Baldwin et al. 2003). Consequently, although tyrosine phosphorylation of $G_{q/11}$ has been reported to regulate $G_{q/11}$ activation (Umemori et al. 1997, 1999), the role of tyrosine phosphorylation in PMT action on G_q is not clear.

Repeated microinjection of IP_3 into oocytes reproduced transient Ca^{2+}-dependent Cl^- currents, indicating that the IP_3 pathway is not readily desensitized. After the initial transient response to PMT, additional injection of IP_3 still gave a response, but additional injection of PMT had no further response (Wilson et al. 1997). These results confirmed that the target of PMT action is upstream of IP_3 release and that PMT uncouples the signaling between G_q and PLCβ1. A model for the intracellular action of PMT based on all of these results is shown in Figure 3.

PMT and downstream signaling

Some of the intracellular events that occur upon exposure to PMT are: enhanced hydrolysis of inositol phospholipids to increase the total intracellular content of inositol phosphates (Staddon et al. 1991); increased production of DAG (Staddon et al. 1990); mobili-

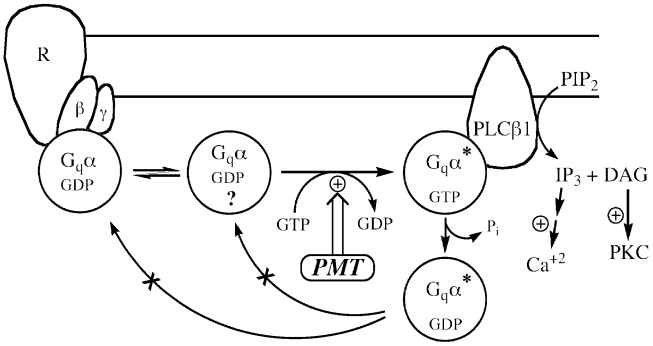


Fig. 3 A proposed model for PMT action on G_q-coupled PLC signal transduction. In this model, PMT acts on free, monomeric $G\alpha_q$, most likely in the GDP-bound form, and converts it into an active form, presumably GTP-bound, which stimulates PLCβ1. The PLCβ1 hydrolyzes PIP_2 into IP_3 and DAG, leading to Ca^{2+} mobilization that results in the Ca^{2+}-dependent Cl^- current. The PMT-induced response is transient due to GTPase activity of $G\alpha_q$, which is still intact and is stimulated by interaction with PLCβ1. The presumably modified GDP-bound G_q can be neither acted upon again by PMT nor reassociated with the G$\beta\gamma$-receptor complex.

zation of intracellular Ca^{2+} pools (Staddon et al. 1991); interconversion of GRP78/BiP (Staddon et al. 1992); and activation of protein kinase phosphorylation (Lacerda et al. 1996; Staddon et al. 1990). It has been suggested that activation of the small Rho GTPase mediates PMT-induced tyrosine phosphorylation of focal adhesion kinase ($p125^{FAK}$) and paxillin, which results in actin stress fiber formation and focal adhesion assembly (Lacerda et al. 1996; Ohnishi et al. 1998; Thomas et al. 2001). Yet, this tyrosine phosphorylation appears to be independent of PKC activation and Ca^{2+} mobilization (Lacerda et al. 1996; Ohnishi et al. 1998).

How PMT-mediated activation of the PLC-IP_3 signaling pathway promotes cytoskeletal rearrangement is, as of yet, not clear. One hint toward this may be the recent finding that PMT can associate with vimentin (Shime et al. 2002), a component of intermediate filaments in cells. Another possibility is for PMT to act on the actin cytoskeleton through its indirect action on Rho via G_q (Chikumi et al. 2002; Dutt et al. 2002; Katoh et al. 1998; Vogt et al. 2003). Although the stimulation of inositol phosphate signaling by PMT did not occur in $G\alpha_q$-deficient or $G\alpha_q/G\alpha_{11}$-deficient cells, PMT could still stimulate other cellular effects in those knockout cells, including Rho activation, Rho-dependent actin rearrangements and focal adhesions, as well as JNK and Erk mitogenic signaling (Zywietz et al. 2001). These results indicate that certain effects of PMT action may also occur through other signaling pathways, independent of G_q or G_{11}. One possibility is that PMT acts on G_{12} or G_{13}, both of which are known to activate Rho protein (Fukuhara et al. 1999; Gratacap et al. 2001; Hart et al. 1998; Kozasa et al. 1998; Kurose 2003). $G\alpha_{12/13}$ can induce Rho-dependent responses by interaction with Rho-specific guanine nucleotide exchange factors (Sah et al. 2000). Although it is not known if PMT acts on $G\alpha_{12/13}$, this may provide a mechanism by which PMT could activate Rho in the absence of G_q and G_{11}.

PMT as a tool for studying signal transduction

PMT as a tool for studying G_q-PLC signaling

A number of investigators have used PMT as a pharmacological tool to study G_q-coupled PLC signaling along the lines of that shown in Figure 3. For example, PMT has been used as a selective activator of G_q-coupled PLC effectors. G_q-coupled adrenergic receptor signaling in cardiomyocytes differs significantly between even closely related animal species, such as mice and rats. In the rat cardiomyocytes, α_1-AR and endothelin receptors selectively activated PLC through G_q protein, but these receptors were not functional in mouse cardiomyocytes. PMT was used to show that G_q-PLC signaling pathway was still functional in the mouse cardiomyocytes (Sabri et al. 2000).

In discriminating PT-insensitive G-protein coupling of noradrenaline-induced α_{1A}AR activation in neonatal rat cardiomyocytes, α_{1A}AR was found to couple specifically to $G_{q/11}$ and not $G_{12/13}$ proteins by showing that overexpression of $G_{q/11}$-specific RGS4, but not $G_{12/13}$-specific Lsc-RGS blocked α_{1A}AR activation of both PLC and phospholipase D (PLD) (Gosau et al. 2002). In addition, this study showed that PLD activation occurred subsequent to G_q-activation of PLCβ and novel, Ca^{2+}-independent PKC isoforms δ and ϵ. The importance of G_q and not G_{11} in α_{1A}AR activation of both PLC and PLD was further demonstrated by using PMT, which mimicked the α_{1A}AR response.

Histamine induces catecholamine secretion from bovine adrenal chromaffin cells. PMT treatment caused a substantial additive increase in basal and histamine-stimulated inositol phosphate levels, but did not increase or prevent basal or histamine-stimulated secretion of the catecholamines, adrenaline and noradrenaline (Donald et al. 2002). This study showed that the secretion occurs through a PLC-independent membrane depolarization. The results obtained with PMT were consistent with other data, which showed that the PLC inhibitor ET-18-OCH3 blocked inositol phosphate formation without inhibiting catecholamine secretion. This histamine-induced catecholamine secretion also does not involve Ca^{2+} mobilization, since IP_3-receptor inhibitors, such as 2-aminoethoxydiphenylborate (2-APB) or ryanodine plus caffeine, or thapsigargin-depletion of intracellular Ca^{2+} stores, had no effect.

PMT was used to discriminate between G_q-dependent and G_q-independent signaling induced by saccharin in isolated rod taste cells from frogs (Okada et al. 2001). Data had suggested a role for G-protein-mediated release of IP_3 rather than cAMP in the saccharin-induced cationic conductance. However, treatment with PMT did not induce a response in the frog taste cells, suggesting that it may be a G$\beta\gamma$-coupled PLCβ2 isoform rather than a Gα_q-coupled PLCβ1 or PLCβ3 isoform that is involved in saccharin taste transduction. Although this conclusion has since been substantiated by others (Imendra et al. 2002), a cautionary note might be warranted here, regarding interpreting negative results with the use of PMT as a reagent. The investigators had found that PMT did not elicit any current response in the cells (Okada et al. 2001); however, unlike the previous studies mentioned above, they had not verified as a control that PMT in their system was still able to evoke an IP_3 response.

PMT has been used to explore the pathways that mediate interaction between endogenous Gα_q and Rho signaling. In COS-7 cells, Gα_q coimmunoprecipitated with the Rho guanine nucleotide exchange factor (Lbc), and Gα_q and Lbc synergistically activated serum response element (SRE.L)-dependent gene expression in a PLC- and Rho-dependent

manner (Sagi et al. 2001). In this study, the ability of PMT to synergize with Lbc in stimulating SRE.L-mediated gene expression confirmed that $G\alpha_q$ at endogenous levels also interacts with Rho-GEF-regulated pathways. However, it is still not clear how $G\alpha_q$ activation leads to Rho activation since, unlike for $G_{12/13}$, expression of $G\alpha_q$ alone did not activate Rho, but did enhance Rho-dependent responses.

PMT has also been used to help define the signaling processes that control maturation of dendritic cells (DCs) (Bagley et al. 2004). In these studies, the investigators were interested in determining the role of PLC and Ca^{2+} signaling in activation of monocyte-derived DCs. To show the involvement of Ca^{2+} signaling in DC maturation, they used a number of different agonists, including lipopolysaccharide, CT, dibutyryl-cAMP, prostaglandin E2, and the Ca^{2+} ionophore A23187, all of which induced maturation. PMT was employed as a control to validate the involvement of PLC signaling in DC maturation. They further showed that this activation by PMT was inhibited by xestospongin, an inhibitor that blocks Ca^{2+} release from IP_3-gated intracellular stores.

PMT as a tool for studying circadian rhythms

PMT has recently been used as a tool to study cholinergic regulation of the circadian clock in the hypothalamic suprachiasmatic nucleus (SCN) of the rat brain. In a brain slice model, the SCN clock is subject to muscarinic regulation through the G_q-coupled M_1 mAChR, with sensitivity exhibited only during the night phase of the clock's 24-h cycle (Gillette et al. 2001). It was found that the effect of 1-h treatment with PMT on circadian clock resetting mimicked the advance of the clock phase induced by carbachol-stimulated M_1 mAChR signaling and IP_3-mediated Ca^{2+} release (L. Artinian, W. Yu, B.A. Wilson, E. Gratton, M.U. Gillette, unpublished data). Inhibitors of IP_3-mediated Ca^{2+} release, such as xestospongin, blocked this PMT-induced phase shift. Thus, PMT-mediated activation of the G_q-PLC-IP_3-induced Ca^{2+} release resets the clock in the same direction as activation of muscarinic receptors and cGMP signaling in early night.

PMT as a tool for studying endothelial permeability

PMT has been used to show that Rho activation and resulting cell retraction plays an important role in increased endothelial permeability (Essler et al. 1998). Disruption of endothelial integrity by PMT involves Rho-dependent activation of Rho kinase (ROKα), which in turn inactivates myosin light chain (MLC) phosphatase PP1 and thereby increases MLC phosphorylation and actin reorganization, followed by cell retraction and concomitant rise in endothelial permeability (Fig. 4). PMT-induced actin rearrangement could be blocked by microinjection of the Rho GTPase inhibitor C3 transferase from *C. botulinum* or microinjection of the Rho-binding domain (RBD) or pleckstrin homology (PH) domain of ROKα, which interfere with ROKα interaction with its regulators. These results have led to the speculation that PMT-mediated Rho activation is responsible for the observed vascular effects of PMT in bite wounds (Aepfelbacher and Essler 2001).

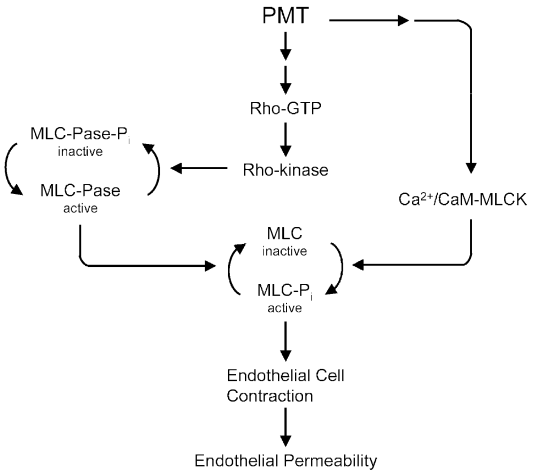


Fig. 4 A proposed model for PMT action on Rho-dependent vascular permeability. In this model, PMT stimulates the conversion of Rho protein into its active GTP-bound state. Activated Rho then stimulates Rho kinase to phosphorylate and thereby inactivate myosin light chain phosphatase (*MLC-Pase*), which in turn prevents the dephosphorylation of MLC, keeping it in its active phosphorylated state. PMT concomitantly causes the release of Ca^{2+} and activation of Ca^{2+}/calmodulin-dependent MLC kinase (*Ca^{2+}/CaM-MLCK*), which phosphorylates and activates MLC, resulting in endothelial cell contraction and consequent endothelial permeability. (Adapted from Essler et al. 1998.)

PMT as a tool for studying GIRK signaling

After the initial stimulatory response, PMT effectively uncouples G_q-PLC signaling and prevents any further activation through G_q (Wilson et al. 1997, 2000). Several investigators have demonstrated the effectiveness of using prolonged treatment with PMT to down-regulate G_q-mediated signaling. In heart tissue and in various neuronal and endocrine cells, cellular excitability is regulated by G-protein-coupled inward rectifying K^+ (GIRK) channels through selective hormonal stimulation (Sadja et al. 2003). As illustrated in Figure 5, GIRKs are activated in a PT-sensitive manner by receptors coupled to G-proteins of the $G_{o/i}$ family, such as the G_i-coupled A_1 adenosine receptor. This activation results from binding of the G_i-protein $\beta\gamma$ subunits to the channel. On the other hand, GIRK currents can be inhibited in a PT-insensitive manner either by $G_{i/o}$-coupled receptors, such as M_2/M_4 mAChR, or by G_q-coupled receptors, such as α_{1A}AR or M_1/M_3 mAChR. However, it was not clear whether the inhibition of GIRKs by these two different receptor types occurred through the same mechanism (Fig. 5).

To address this question, PMT was used to demonstrate the existence of two different regulatory pathways for PT-insensitive inhibition of GIRK channels, one involving PMT-insensitive $G_{i/o}$ and the other involving PMT-sensitive G_q (Fig. 5) (Buenemann et al. 2000). The researchers examined the effect of prolonged PMT pretreatment on GIRK inhibition in human embryonic kidney HEK293 cells transfected with GIRK1/4, A_1 adenosine receptors, and G_q-dependent or $G_{i/o}$-dependent inhibitory receptors. They found that pretreatment with PMT did not prevent the G$\beta\gamma$-mediated GIRK activation by stimulatory A_1 adenosine receptors. Likewise, PMT treatment did not affect the $G_{i/o}$-coupled M_2 mAChR-mediated inhibition of GIRK. In contrast, PMT completely blocked the inhibition of GIRK by the Gα_q-coupled α_{1A}AR receptor.

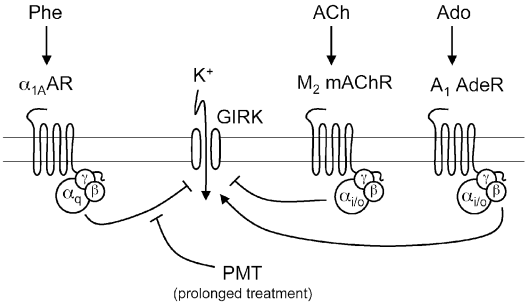


Fig. 5 A proposed model for PMT action on GIRK channel inhibition by $G_{i/o}$- and G_q-coupled receptors. In this model, opposing sets of G protein-coupled receptors modulate GIRK channels. Stimulation of $G_{i/o}$–coupled receptors, such as A_1 adenosine receptors, M_2 mAChR muscarinic acetylcholine receptors, or serotonin ($5\text{-}HT_{1A}$) receptors, causes the release of $G\beta\gamma$ subunits, which directly interact with and activate GIRK channels to increase K^+ currents. Rapid desensitization of the GIRK channel results from subsequent inhibition via the $G\alpha_{i/o}$ subunits. Inhibition of GIRK currents by the G_q-coupled receptors, such as α_{1A}-AR, ET_AR, M_1/M_3 mAChAR, or thyrotropin-releasing hormone (*TRH*) receptors, involves activation of PLCβ1 by the released $G\alpha_q$ to cause depletion of PIP_2 from the membrane, which results in inactivation of the GIRK channel. Prolonged treatment with PMT uncouples the G_q-signaling pathway and prevents inhibition of GIRK by G_q-coupled receptors, but not desensitization through $G\alpha_{i/o}$. *ACh*, acetylcholine; *Phe*, phenylephrine; *Ado*, adenosine.

PMT has also been used to mediate uncoupling of G_q signaling in cardiomyocytes to specifically block GIRK inhibition induced by phenylephrine and endothelin-1 (Meyer et al. 2001). In these studies, the investigators provided strong evidence for use of PMT as a superior tool to the commonly used aminosteroid PLC inhibitor U73122 for demonstrating the involvement of G_q-coupled PLCβ activity in mediating GIRK inhibition through PLCβ-mediated depletion of PIP_2. These conclusions were further substantiated by results in which PMT was used to examine GIRK channel regulation in HEK293 cells coexpressing GIRK1/4 with the $G_{i/o}$-coupled $5\text{-}HT_{1A}$ serotonin or G_q-coupled thyrotropin-releasing hormone (TRH) receptors (Lei et al. 2001). Both TRH and constitutively active $G\alpha_q$ inhibited GIRK. On the other hand, the inhibition of GIRK by TRH was shutdown by prolonged pretreatment with PMT, as well as by treatment with other known inhibitors of G_q signaling, RGS2 and PLCβ1-ct, which bind to $G\alpha_q$ and interfere with $G\alpha_q$-effector interaction, or by treatment with agents known to lower plasma membrane PIP_2 levels via cleavage of PIP_2 with 5'-phosphatidylinositol-phosphatase or via sequestration of PIP_2 with PLCδ-PH.

PMT as a tool for studying mitogenic signaling

Because PMT acts on G_q, PMT can now be used to study the role of G_q-mediated signaling in hormonal-stimulated mitogenesis. PMT stimulation of Erk signaling was shown to occur via G_q-dependent transactivation of the epidermal growth factor (EGF) receptor in a Ras-dependent manner in some cells, but via a PKC-dependent, Ras-independent pathway in other cells (Fig. 6). In one study (Seo et al. 2000), the mechanism of PMT-mediated Erk activation was compared to that of endogenous $G_{q/11}$-protein-coupled α-thrombin receptors in HEK-293 cells. Both PMT and the endogenous G_q-coupled receptors were

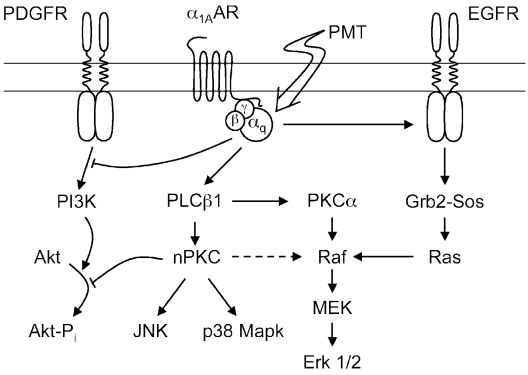


Fig. 6 A proposed model for PMT action on G_q-mediated mitogenic signaling. In this model, activation of G_q protein by either PMT or G_q-coupled receptors, such as α_{1A}-AR or α-thrombin receptor, results in activation of PLCβ1, as well as transactivation of the EGF receptor via Gα_q subunit and inhibition of the PDGF receptor. In HEK-293 cells and cardiac fibroblasts, subsequent activation of the Erk1/2 cascade is mediated predominantly via Gα_q transactivation of the Ras-dependent EGF receptor tyrosin kinase pathway, with no significant contribution derived from the PLCβ1-dependent activation of the PKC pathway. In cardiomyocytes, PMT stimulates via the Gα_q-PLCβ1 pathway both Ca^{2+}-dependent PKCα and novel nPKCs (*PKC*δ and *PKC*ϵ), which in turn lead to activation of the Erk1/2, as well as p38 MAPK and JNK cascades. PMT both inhibits PDGF receptor-dependent PI 3-kinase (*PI3K*) activation and prevents subsequent activation of the Akt-dependent survival pathway.

found to induce Ras-dependent Erk activation via a PKC-independent transactivation of the EGF receptor. For both PMT and the α-thrombin receptor, expression of two inhibitors of G_q signaling, a dominant-negative mutant of the G-protein-coupled receptor kinase (GRK2) and a C-terminal peptide of Gα_q (G$\alpha_{q305–359}$), blocked Erk activation. Erk activation by PMT was insensitive to a PKC inhibitor (GF109203X), but was blocked by an EGF receptor-specific inhibitor tyrphostin (AG1478), as well as by dominant-negative inhibitors of mSos1 and Ha-Ras. The results suggested that PMT-activated Gα_q transactivates the EGF receptor. In the other study involving cardiac fibroblasts, PMT was also found to stimulate Erk activation via EGF receptor transactivation (Sabri et al. 2002). However, in cardiomyocytes novel PKC isoforms mediated PMT activation of Erk1/2, as well as p38-MAPK, and JNK, and the EGF receptor appeared to have no role in this activation (Fig. 6).

Another example of PMT-mediated transactivation of tyrosine kinase signaling via G_q activation was reported for the generation of inositol phosphoglycans, second messengers of insulin signaling (Sleight et al. 2002). In rat liver membranes, PMT stimulated the production of inositol phosphoglycans, as measured by release of myo-inositol and chiro-inositol after acid hydrolysis, in a manner similar to what occurs upon insulin stimulation. Interaction between the G_q signaling pathway and the insulin receptor tyrosine kinase pathway was further supported by immunogold-labeling experiments showing colocalization of the insulin receptor β subunit (IRβ) and G$\alpha_{q/11}$ in partially purified rat liver membranes, enriched in PLCβ1, clathrin, and caveolin-1 (Sleight et al. 2002). Furthermore, direct interaction of G$\alpha_{q/11}$ with IRβ was demonstrated in another study through coimmunoprecipitation (Imamura et al. 1999).

PMT as a tool for studying apoptosis

In neonatal rat cardiomyocytes, PMT induced cardiac hypertrophy (i.e., cardiomyocyte enlargement, sarcomeric organization, and atrial natriuretic factor expression) in a manner similar to that which occurs upon norepinephrine stimulation (Sabri et al. 2002). PMT also activated Erk, and to a lesser extent p38 MAPK and JNK, via activation of PLC and novel PKC isoforms. PMT decreased basal Akt activation by preventing Akt phosphorylation through the activation by EGF or insulin-like growth factor-1 (IGF-1), and consequently enhanced cardiomyocyte susceptibility to apoptotic agents such as H_2O_2. PMT initially stimulates cardiac hypertrophy in a manner similar to moderate G_q stimulation, yet inhibits the Akt survival pathway and thereby enhances cardiomyocyte susceptibility to apoptosis in a manner similar to what occurs under intense, prolonged stimulation of G_q-coupled receptors (Adams et al. 1998). This suggests that hypertrophy and apoptosis may represent two phases of the same process leading eventually to cardiac decompensation and heart failure and further suggests that PMT might serve as an excellent tool to study this process.

A connection between G_q-coupled α_{1A}AR receptor activation and augmented UV-induced apoptosis through inhibition of phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3K) and Akt in response to platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF), as well as insulin and insulin-like growth factor 1 (IGF-1), has also come to light (Ballou et al. 2000, 2001). In Rat-1 fibroblasts, PI3K signaling induced by PDGF was also inhibited by treatment with PMT in a manner similar to α_{1A}AR (Fig. 6) (Lin et al. 2003). In this study, PMT pretreatment reduced the amount of phospho-Tyr751 on the PDGF receptor β subunit, thereby eliminating the docking site for the p85 subunit of PI3K. In addition, PMT pretreatment significantly inhibited the PDGF-induced Akt phosphorylation at Ser473.

Conclusions and future prospects

Discriminating among the various G-proteins involved in signal transduction processes has always been a challenge for cell biologists, physiologists, and pharmacologists. The discovery that certain toxins produced by bacteria can selectively act on different G-proteins has provided researchers with a growing repertoire of agents that can be used to manipulate signaling pathways for elucidating cellular functions of various signaling molecules. Until recently, studying the signaling of G_q GTPases was relatively intractable due to the lack of effective molecular tools that were specific for them; in fact, this family was referred to simply as the PT-insensitive G-proteins. While we do not yet know the precise biochemical basis for PMT action on G_q, there is considerable and convincing evidence that PMT can be used as a highly selective agent that targets G_q protein-coupled PLC signal transduction. Because initial exposure to PMT results in activation of G_q signaling, but prolonged treatment subsequently uncouples G_q-dependent PLC signaling, PMT can be used as both an activator and a downregulator of G_q-PLC signaling, depending upon the length of toxin treatment. PMT has already been shown to decipher a number of important signaling pathways involving G_q signaling. With the introduction of PMT as a G_q-selective molecular tool for studying PLC-mediated signaling, we can now begin to discern the different roles that G_q family members play in other signal transduction pathways and physiological processes. An important question that still remains to be answered is whether the other G_q family members, which are not coupled to PLC, might also be targets of

PMT. Indeed, there is strong evidence for other PMT effects that are independent of G_q-PLC signaling in G_q- and $G_{q/11}$-knockout cells.

Acknowledgements. Some of the work reported here was supported by grants from the National Institutes of Health (NIAID/AI38396) and from the United States Department of Agriculture (NRI/1999–02295) (to B.A.W.).

References

Adams JW, Sakata Y, Davis MG, Sah VP, Wang Y, Liggett SB, Chien KR, Brown JH, Dorn GW 2nd (1998) Enhanced Gαq signaling: a common pathway mediates cardiac hypertrophy and apoptotic heart failure. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 95:10140–10145

Aepfelbacher M, Essler M (2001) Disturbance of endothelial barrier function by bacterial toxins and atherogenic mediators: a role for Rho/Rho kinase. Cell Microbiol 3:649–658

Aktories K, Schmidt G, Just I (2000) Rho GTPases as targets of bacterial protein toxins. Biol Chem 381:421–426

Bagley KC, Abdelwahab SF, Tuskan RG, Lewis GK (2004) Calcium signaling through phospholipase C activates dendritic cells to mature and is necessary for the activation and maturation of dendritic cells induced by diverse agonists. Clin Diagn Lab Immunol 11:77–82

Baldwin MR, Pullinger GD, Lax AJ (2003) *Pasteurella multocida* toxin facilitates inositol phosphate formation by bombesin through tyrosine phosphorylation of G alpha q. J Biol Chem 278:32719–32725

Ballou LM, Cross ME, Huang S, McReynolds EM, Zhang BX, Lin RZ (2000) Differential regulation of the phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase/Akt and p70 S6 kinase pathways by α(1A)-adrenergic receptor in rat-1 fibroblasts. J Biol Chem 275:4803–4809

Ballou LM, Tian PY, Lin HY, Jiang YP, Lin RZ (2001) Dual regulation of glycogen synthase kinase-3β by the α1A-adrenergic receptor. J Biol Chem 276:40910–40916

Berridge MJ (1993) Inositol triphosphate and calcium signalling. Nature 361:315–325

Berstein G, Blank JL, Jhon DY, Exton JH, Rhee SG, Ross EM (1992a) Phospholipase C-β1 is a GTPase-activating protein for Gq/11, its physiologic regulator. Cell 70:411–418

Berstein G, Blank JL, Smrka AV, Higashijima T, Sternweis PC, Exton JH, Ross EM (1992b) Reconstitution of agonist-stimulated phosphatidylinositol 4,5-bisphosphate hydrolysis using purified m1 muscarinic receptor, Gq/11, and phospholipase Cβ-1. J Biol Chem 267:8081–8088

Buenemann M, Meyer T, Pott L, Hosey M (2000) Novel inhibition of G$\beta\gamma$-activated potassium currents induced by M2 muscarinic receptors via a pertussis toxin-insensitive pathway. J Biol Chem 275:12537–12545

Camps M, Carozzi A, Schnabel P, Scheer A, Parker PJ, Gierschik P (1992) Isozyme-selective stimulation of phospholipase C-β2 by G protein $\beta\gamma$-subunits. Nature 360:684–686

Casey PJ, Gilman AG (1988) G protein involvement in receptor-effector coupling. J Biol Chem 263:2577–2580

Casey PJ, Fong HK, Simon MI, Gilman AG (1990) Gz, a guanine nucleotide-binding protein with unique biochemical properties. J Biol Chem 265:2383–2390

Chikumi H, Vazquez-Prado J, Servitja JM, Miyazaki H, Gutkind JS (2002) Potent activation of RhoA by Gα q and Gq-coupled receptors. J Biol Chem 277:27130–27134

Chrisp CE, Foged NT (1991) Induction of pneumonia in rabbits by use of a purified protein toxin from *Pasteurella multocida*. Am J Vet Res 52:56–61

Deckmyn H, Van Geet C, Vermylen J (1993) Dual regulation of phospholipase C activity by G proteins. News Physiol Sci 8:61–63

Donald AN, Wallace DJ, McKenzie S, Marley PD (2002) Phospholipase C-mediated signalling is not required for histamine-induced catecholamine secretion from bovine chromaffin cells. J Neurochem 81:1116–1129

Dudet LI, Chailler P, Dubreuil JD, Martineau-Doize B (1996) *Pasteurella multocida* toxin stimulates mitogenesis and cytoskeleton reorganization in Swiss 3T3 fibroblasts. J Cell Physiol 168:173–182

Dutt P, Kjoller L, Giel M, Hall A, Toksoz D (2002) Activated Gαq family members induce Rho GTPase activation and Rho-dependent actin filament assembly. FEBS Lett 531:565–569

Essler M, Hermann K, Amano M, Kaibuchi K, Heesemann J, Weber PC, Aepfelbacher M (1998) *Pasteurella multocida* toxin increases endothelial permeability via Rho kinase and myosin light chain phosphatase. J Immunol 161:5640–5646

Felix R, Fleisch H, Frandsen PL (1992) Effect of *Pasteurella multocida* toxin on bone resorption in vitro. Infect Immun 60:4984–4988

Fields TA, Casey PJ (1997) Signalling functions and biochemical properties of pertussis toxin-resistant G-proteins. Biochem J 321:561–571

Foged NT (1992) *Pasteurella multocida* toxin. The characterisation of the toxin and its significance in the diagnosis and prevention of progressive atrophic rhinitis in pigs. APMIS Suppl 25:1-56

Fukuhara S, Murga C, Zohar M, Igishi T, Gutkind JS (1999) A novel PDZ domain containing guanine nucleotide exchange factor links heterotrimeric G proteins to Rho. J Biol Chem 274:5868–5879

Gilbertson TA, Damak S, Margolskee RF (2000) The molecular physiology of taste transduction. Curr Opin Neurobiol 10:519–527

Gillette MU, Buchanan GF, Artinian L, Hamilton SE, Nathanson NM, Liu C (2001) Role of the M1 receptor in regulating circadian rhythms. Life Sci 68:2467–2472

Gosau N, Fahimi-Vahid M, Michalek C, Schmidt M, Wieland T (2002) Signalling components involved in the coupling of α1-adrenoceptors to phospholipase D in neonatal rat cardiac myocytes. Naunyn Schmiedebergs Arch Pharmacol 365:468–476

Gratacap MP, Payrastre B, Nieswandt B, Offermanns S (2001) Differential regulation of Rho and Rac through heterotrimeric G-proteins and cyclic nucleotides. J Biol Chem 276:47906–47913

Hart MJ, Jiang X, Kozasa T, Roscoe W, Singer WD, Gilman AG, Sternweis PC, Bollag G (1998) Direct stimulation of the guanine nucleotide exchange activity of p115 RhoGEF by Gα13. Science 280:2112–2114

Hepler JR, Kozasa T, Smrcka AV, Simon MI, Rhee SG, Sternweis PC, Gilman AG (1993) Purification from Sf9 cells and characterization of recombinant Gq α and G11 α. Activation of purified phospholipase C isozymes by G α subunits. J Biol Chem 268:14367–14375

Higgins TE, Murphy AC, Staddon JM, Lax AJ, Rozengurt E (1992) *Pasteurella multocida* toxin is a potent inducer of anchorage-independent cell growth. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 89:4240–4244

Ho MK, Wong YH (2001) G(z) signaling: emerging divergence from G(i) signaling. Oncogene 20:1615–1625

Imamura T, Vollenweider P, Egawa K, Clodi M, Ishibashi K, Nakashima N, Ugi S, Adams JW, Brown JH, Olefsky JM (1999) Gα-q/11 protein plays a key role in insulin-induced glucose transport in 3T3-L1 adipocytes. Mol Cell Biol 19:6765–6774

Imendra KG, Miyamoto T, Okada Y, Toda K (2002) Serotonin differentially modulates the electrical properties of different subsets of taste receptor cells in bullfrog. Eur J Neurosci 16:629–640

Jones DT, Masters SB, Bourne HR, Reed RR (1990) Biochemical characterization of three stimulatory GTP-binding proteins. The large and small forms of G_s and the olfactory-specific G-protein, G_{olf}. J Biol Chem 265:2671–2676

Jordan RW, Hamilton TD, Hayes CM, Patel D, Jones PH, Roe JM, Williams NA (2003) Modulation of the humoral immune response of swine and mice mediated by toxigenic *Pasteurella multocida*. FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol 39:51–59

Jutras I, Martineau-Doize B (1996) Stimulation of osteoclast-like cell formation by *Pasteurella multocida* toxin from hemopoietic progenitor cells in mouse bone marrow cultures. Can J Vet Res 60:34–39

Katoh H, Aoki J, Yamaguchi Y, Kitano Y, Ichikawa A, Negishi M (1998) Constitutively active Gα12, Gα13, and Gαq induce Rho-dependent neurite retraction through different signaling pathways. J Biol Chem 273:28700–28707

Kimman TG, Lowik CW, van de Wee-Pals LJ, Thesingh CW, Defize P, Kamp EM, Bijvoet OL (1987) Stimulation of bone resorption by inflamed nasal mucosa, dermonecrotic toxin-containing conditioned medium from *Pasteurella multocida*, and purified dermonecrotic toxin from *P. multocida*. Infect Immun 55:2110–2116

Kozasa T, Jiang X, Hart MJ, Sternweis PM, Singer WD, Gilman AG, Bollag G, Sternweis PC (1998) p115 RhoGEF, a GTPase activating protein for Gα12 and Gα13. Science 280:2109–2111

Kurose H (2003) Gα12 and Gα13 as key regulatory mediator in signal transduction. Life Sci 74:155–161

Lacerda HM, Lax AJ, Rozengurt E (1996) *Pasteurella multocida* toxin, a potent intracellularly acting mitogen, induces p125FAK and paxillin tyrosine phosphorylation, actin stress fiber formation, and focal contact assembly in Swiss 3T3 cells. J Biol Chem 271:439–445

Lalli G, Bohnert S, Deinhardt K, Verastegui C, Schiavo G (2003) The journey of tetanus and botulinum neurotoxins in neurons. Trends Microbiol 11:431–437

Lax AJ, Chanter N (1990) Cloning of the toxin gene from *Pasteurella multocida* and its role in atrophic rhinitis. J Gen Microbiol 136:81–87

Lax AJ, Thomas W (2002) How bacteria could cause cancer: one step at a time. Trends Microbiol 10:293–299

Lei Q, Talley EM, Bayliss DA (2001) Receptor-mediated inhibition of G protein-coupled inwardly rectifying potassium channels involves Gαq family subunits, phospholipase C, and a readily diffusible messenger. J Biol Chem 276:16720–16730

Lin HY, Ballou LM, Lin RZ (2003) Stimulation of the α1A adrenergic receptor inhibits PDGF-induced PDGF β receptor Tyr751 phosphorylation and PI 3-kinase activation. FEBS Lett 540:106–110

Martineau-Doize B, Caya I, Gagne S, Jutras I, Dumas G (1993) Effects of *Pasteurella multocida* toxin on the osteoclast population of the rat. J Comp Pathol 108:81–91

Meyer T, Wellner-Kienitz MC, Biewald A, Bender K, Eickel A, Pott L (2001) Depletion of phosphatidylinositol 4,5-bisphosphate by activation of phospholipase C-coupled receptors causes slow inhibition but not desensitization of G protein-gated inward rectifier K^+ current in atrial myocytes. J Biol Chem 276: 5650–5658.

Mullan PB, Lax AJ (1998) *Pasteurella multocida* toxin stimulates bone resorption by osteoclasts via interaction with osteoblasts. Calcif Tissue Int 63:340–345

Murphy AC, Rozengurt E (1992) *Pasteurella multocida* toxin selectively facilitates phosphatidylinositol 4,5-bisphosphate hydrolysis by bombesin, vasopressin, and endothelin. Requirement for a functional G protein. J Biol Chem 267:25296–25303

Ohnishi T, Horiguchi Y, Masuda M, Sugimoto N, Matsuda M (1998) *Pasteurella multocida* toxin and *Bordetella bronchiseptica* dermonecrotizing toxin elicit similar effects on cultured cells by different mechanisms. J Vet Med Sci 60:301–305

Okada Y, Fujiyama R, Miyamoto T, Sato T (2001) Saccharin activates cation conductance via inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate production in a subset of isolated rod taste cells in the frog. Eur J Neurosci 13:308–314

Orth JH, Lang S, Aktories K (2004) Action of *Pasteurella multocida* toxin depends on the helical domain of $G\alpha_q$. J Biol Chem 279:34150–34155

Park D, Jhon DY, Lee CW, Lee KH, Rhee SG (1993) Activation of phospholipase C isozymes by G protein βγ subunits. J Biol Chem 268:4573–4576

Pennings AM, Storm PK (1984) A test in vero cell monolayers for toxin production by strains of *Pasteurella multocida* isolated from pigs suspected of having atrophic rhinitis. Vet Microbiol 9:503–508

Petersen SK (1990) The complete nucleotide sequence of the *Pasteurella multocida* toxin gene and evidence for a transcriptional repressor, TxaR. Mol Microbiol 4:821–830

Petersen SK, Foged NT (1989) Cloning and expression of the *Pasteurella multocida* toxin gene, *toxA*, in *Escherichia coli*. Infect Immun 57:3907–3913

Pettit RK, Ackermann MR, Rimler RB (1993) Receptor-mediated binding of *Pasteurella multocida* dermonecrotic toxin to canine osteosarcoma and monkey kidney (vero) cells. Lab Invest 69:94–100

Quick MW, Simon MI, Davidson N, Lester HA, Aragay AM (1994) Differential coupling of G protein α subunits to seven-helix receptors expressed in *Xenopus* oocytes. J Biol Chem 269:30164–30172

Rebecchi MJ, Pentyala SN (2000) Structure, function, and control of phosphoinositide-specific phospholipase C. Physiol Rev 80:1291–1335

Rhee SG, Choi KD (1992) Regulation of inositol phospholipid-specific phospholipase C isozymes. J Biol Chem 267:12393–12396

Rossetto O, Seveso M, Caccin P, Schiavo G, Montecucco C (2001) Tetanus and botulinum neurotoxins: turning bad guys into good by research. Toxicon 39:27–41

Rozengurt E, Higgins T, Chanter N, Lax AJ, Staddon JM (1990) *Pasteurella multocida* toxin: potent mitogen for cultured fibroblasts. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 87:123–127

Rutter JM, Luther PD (1984) Cell culture assay for toxigenic *Pasteurella multocida* from atrophic rhinitis of pigs. Vet Rec 114:393–396

Sabri A, Pak E, Alcott SA, Wilson BA, Steinberg SF (2000) Coupling function of endogenous α1- and β-adrenergic receptors in mouse cardiomyocytes. Circ Res 86:1047–1053

Sabri A, Wilson BA, Steinberg SF (2002) Dual actions of the Gαq agonist *Pasteurella multocida* toxin to promote cardiomyocyte hypertrophy and enhance apoptosis susceptibility. Circ Res 90:850–857

Sadja R, Alagem N, Reuveny E (2003) Gating of GIRK channels: details of an intricate, membrane-delimited signaling complex. Neuron 39:9-12

Sagi SA, Seasholtz TM, Kobiashvili M, Wilson BA, Toksoz D, Brown JH (2001) Physical and functional interactions of Gαq with Rho and its exchange factors. J Biol Chem 276:15445–15452

Sah VP, Seasholtz TM, Sagi SA, Brown JH (2000) The role of Rho in G protein-coupled receptor signal transduction. Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol 40:459–489

Schiavo G, van der Goot FG (2001) The bacterial toxin toolkit. Nature Rev Mol Cell Biol 2:530–537

Schiavo G, Matteoli M, Montecucco C (2000) Neurotoxins affecting neuroexocytosis. Physiol Rev 80:717–766

Seo B, Choy EW, Maudsley S, Miller WE, Wilson BA, Luttrell LM (2000) *Pasteurella multocida* toxin stimulates mitogen-activated protein kinase via $G_{q/11}$-dependent transactivation of the epidermal growth factor receptor. J Biol Chem 275:2239–2245

Shime H, Ohnishi T, Nagao K, Oka K, Takao T, Horiguchi Y (2002) Association of *Pasteurella multocida* toxin with vimentin. Infect Immun 70:6460–6463

Sleight S, Wilson BA, Heimark DB, Larner J (2002) $G_{q/11}$ is involved in insulin-stimulated inositol phosphoglycan putative mediator generation in rat liver membranes: co-localization of $G_{q/11}$ with the insulin receptor in membrane vesicles. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 295:561–569

Smrcka AV, Sternweis PC (1993) Regulation of purified subtypes of phosphatidylinositol-specific phospholipase C β by G protein α and $\beta\gamma$ subunits. J Biol Chem 268:9667–9674

Staddon JM, Chanter N, Lax AJ, Higgins TE, Rozengurt E (1990) *Pasteurella multocida* toxin, a potent mitogen, stimulates protein kinase C-dependent and -independent protein phosphorylation in Swiss 3T3 cells. J Biol Chem 265:11841–11848

Staddon JM, Barker CJ, Murphy AC, Chanter N, Lax AJ, Michell RH, Rozengurt E (1991) *Pasteurella multocida* toxin, a potent mitogen, increases inositol 1,4,5- trisphosphate and mobilizes Ca^{2+} in Swiss 3T3 cells. J Biol Chem 266:4840–4847

Staddon JM, Bouzyk MM, Rozengurt E (1992) Interconversion of GRP78/BiP. A novel event in the action of *Pasteurella multocida* toxin, bombesin, and platelet-derived growth factor. J Biol Chem 267: 25239–25245

Sterner-Kock A, Lanske B, Uberschar S, Atkinson MJ (1995) Effects of the *Pasteurella multocida* toxin on osteoblastic cells in vitro. Vet Pathol 32:274–279

Sternweis PC, Smrcka AV (1992) Regulation of phospholipase C by G proteins. Trends Biol Sci 17:502–506

Thomas W, Pullinger GD, Lax AJ, Rozengurt E (2001) *Escherichia coli* cytotoxic necrotizing factor and *Pasteurella multocida* toxin induce focal adhesion kinase autophosphorylation and Src association. Infect Immun 69:5931–5935

Umemori H, Inoue T, Kume S, Sekiyama N, Nagao M, Itoh H, Nakanishi S, Mikoshiba K, Yamamoto T (1997) Activation of the G protein Gq/11 through tyrosine phosphorylation of the alpha subunit. Science 276:1878–1881

Umemori H, Hayashi T, Inoue T, Nakanishi S, Mikoshiba K, Yamamoto T (1999) Involvement of protein tyrosine phosphatases in activation of the trimeric G protein Gq/11. Oncogene 18:7399–7402

Van Dop C, Yamanaka G, Steinberg F, Sekura RD, Manclark CR, Stryer L, Bourne HR (1984a) ADP-ribosylation of transducin by pertussis toxin blocks the light-stimulated hydrolysis of GTP and cGMP in retinal photoreceptors. J Biol Chem 259: 23–26

Van Dop C, Tsubokawa M, Bourne HR, Ramachandran J (1984b) Amino acid sequence of retinal transducin at the site ADP-ribosylated by cholera toxin. J Biol Chem 259:696–698

Vogt S, Grosse R, Schultz G, Offermanns S (2003) Receptor-dependent RhoA activation in G_{12}/G_{13}-deficient cells: genetic evidence for an involvement of G_q/G_{11}. J Biol Chem 278:28743–28749

Wilson BA, Salyers AA (2002) Ecology and physiology of infectious bacteria—implications for biotechnology. Curr Opin Biotechnol 13:267–274

Wilson BA, Zhu X, Ho M, Lu L (1997) *Pasteurella multocida* toxin activates the inositol triphosphate signaling pathway in *Xenopus* oocytes via $G_q\alpha$-coupled phospholipase C-β1. J Biol Chem 272:1268–1275

Wilson BA, Aminova LR, Ponferrada VG, Ho M (2000) Differential modulation and subsequent blockade of mitogenic signaling and cell cycle progression by *Pasteurella multocida* toxin. Infect Immun 68:4531–4538

Wu D, Katz A, Simon MI (1993) Activation of phospholipase C β2 by the α and $\beta\gamma$ subunits of trimeric GTP-binding protein. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 90:5297–5301

Zywietz A, Gohla A, Schmelz M, Schultz G, Offermanns S (2001) Pleiotropic effects of *Pasteurella multocida* toxin are mediated by G_q-dependent and -independent mechanisms. Involvement of G_q but not G_{11}. J Biol Chem 276:3840–3845

Rev Physiol Biochem Pharmacol (2004) 152:111–133
DOI 10.1007/s10254-004-0030-8

M. Thelestam · T. Frisan

Cytolethal distending toxins

Published online: 27 August 2004

Abstract The cytolethal distending toxins (CDTs) constitute the most recently discovered family of bacterial protein toxins. CDTs are unique among bacterial toxins as they have the ability to induce DNA double strand breaks (DSBs) in both proliferating and nonproliferating cells, thereby causing irreversible cell cycle arrest or death of the target cells. CDTs are encoded by three linked genes (*cdtA, cdtB* and *cdtC*) which have been identified among a variety of Gram-negative pathogenic bacteria. All three of these gene products are required to constitute the fully active holotoxin, and this is in agreement with the recently determined crystal structure of CDT. The CdtB component has functional homology with mammalian deoxyribonuclease I (DNase I). Mutation of the conserved sites necessary for this catalytic activity prevents the induction of DSBs as well as all subsequent intoxication responses of target cells. CDT is endocytosed via clathrin-coated pits and requires an intact Golgi complex to exert the cytotoxic activity. Several issues remain to be elucidated regarding CDT biology, such as the detailed function(s) of the CdtA and CdtC subunits, the identity of the cell surface receptor(s) for CDT, the final steps in the cellular internalization pathway, and a molecular understanding of how CDT interacts with DNA. Moreover, the role of CDTs in the pathogenesis of diseases still remains unclear.

A brief history of CDT

The first cytolethal distending toxin (CDT) was reported in 1987 as a novel type of toxin activity produced by pathogenic strains of *Escherichia coli*. The major hallmark of the observed cytotoxic effect was a remarkable cell distension, evident 3–5 days after addition of bacterial culture supernatants to cells growing in vitro, and resulting after a few more days in cell death (Johnson and Lior 1987a). The same authors later identified a similar activity in *Shigella* (Johnson and Lior 1987b) and *Campylobacter* spp (Johnson and Lior 1988a), and they designated this putative toxin as ‘cytolethal distending toxin’.

M. Thelestam (✉) · T. Frisan
Microbiology and Tumorbiology Center, Karolinska Institutet, Stockholm, Sweden
e-mail: Monica.Thelestam@mtc.ki.se · Tel.: +46-8-52487162 · Fax: +46-8-342651

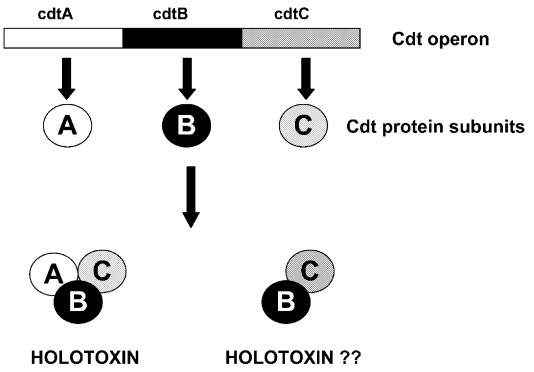


Fig. 1 Schematic representation of the three linked CDT genes and the respective protein subunits. Although the tripartite holotoxin (CdtA + CdtB + CdTC) has been found to be the most potent inducer of cellular intoxication, still some doubts exist whether this is the only possible subunit combination

CDTs from various *E. coli* strains were first cloned in 1994 by two American groups (Scott and Kaper 1994; Pickett et al. 1994) and in 1997 by French researchers (Peres et al. 1997). The CDTs turned out to be encoded by three linked genes, which were designated *cdtA*, *cdtB* and *cdtC*. Related CDT genes were identified in *Shigella spp* (Okuda et al. 1995), *Campylobacter jejuni* (Pickett et al. 1996), *Haemophilus ducreyi* (Cope et al. 1997), *Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans* (Mayer et al. 1999; Sugai et al. 1998), and several *Helicobacter* spp (Chien et al. 2000; Kostia et al. 2003; Taylor et al. 2003; Young et al. 2000a). The CDTs had no immediate resemblance to any other known proteins and thus, a new family of toxins rapidly emerged. So far no CDT has been identified from any Gram-positive bacterium. Since CDT variants are produced by many different bacterial species we previously proposed a CDT-nomenclature to avoid a confusing flora of different names in the future literature on CDTs (Cortes-Bratti et al. 2001a). A particular CDT is specified exactly by indicating the initials of the producing bacterium before CDT and, if necessary, the strain number or other common designation after CDT (e.g., HdCDT: *H. ducreyi* CDT).

The *cdtA, cdtB* and *cdtC* genes were found to encode proteins (CdtA, CdtB, CdtC) (Fig. 1) with predicted molecular masses of 23, 29 and 21 kDa and isoelectric points of 5.7, 8.3, 6.3, respectively, for the HdCDT. The purified HdCDT subunits show a normal migration pattern when subjected to SDS-PAGE. The CDT subunits were purified from some of the producing bacteria during the late 1990s and more recently in recombinant forms. The HdCDT was shown to enter sensitive target cells by receptor-mediated endocytosis (Cortes-Bratti et al. 2000) – a process likely to occur also with the other CDTs. In 2000 a deoxyribonuclease I (DNase I)-like enzymatic activity was identified in the CdtB component of CDTs from *E. coli* and *C. jejuni*, respectively (Elwell and Dreyfus 2000; Lara-Tejero and Galan 2000). Mutation of the catalytic residues abolished all cytotoxic effects. The proposed DNA damaging effect was consistent with our parallel observations on the cellular responses to HdCDT. They were identical to the cell cycle check point responses evoked by ionizing radiation (IR), a well known DNA damaging agent (Cortes-Bratti et al. 2001b). Finally, the HdCDT was reported in 2003 to induce DNA double strand breaks (DSBs) upon natural intoxication of mammalian cells (Frisan et al. 2003), thus giving direct proof that CDT attacks DNA. The crystal structure of the HdCDT holotoxin has been recently solved, and it reveals that indeed this toxin consists of an enzyme belonging to the DNase I family (CdtB), bound to two ricin-like lectin domains (CdtA and CdtC). HdCdtB shows the characteristic fold of the DNase I family: a central 12-stranded

β-sandwich packed between outer α-helices and loops on each side of the sandwich (Nesic et al. 2004).

This review deals mainly with the action of CDTs on mammalian cells. The possible roles of these toxins in pathogenesis, and their potential uses in the biomedical field will also be briefly discussed.

Actions of CDTs on mammalian cells

Morphological effect of CDT

The most conspicuous morphological effect of CDT on cells growing as an adherent monolayer is the cell distension leading within 72 h to a three- to fivefold increase of the cell size. Along with this slowly developing distension, the actin cytoskeleton is strongly promoted noted mainly as the appearance of prominent actin stress fibers (Fig. 2). This has been reported for *E. coli* CDT (EcCDT-II) in Chinese hamster ovary (CHO) cells (Aragon et al. 1997), for HdCDT in HEp-2/HeLa cells, in Don hamster lung fibroblasts and human foreskin fibroblasts (Cortes-Bratti et al. 1999; Frisan et al. 2003), and recently also in HeLa cells treated with CDT from *Helicobacter cinaedi* (Taylor et al. 2003). After several days of toxin exposure cells round up, show membrane blebbing in some cases, and then deteriorate completely. In contrast to fibroblasts and epithelial cells, T and B lymphocytes and dendritic cells do not distend but rather become rapidly apoptotic and fragmented after exposure to CDT (Cortes-Bratti et al. 2001b; Li et al. 2002; Shenker et al. 2004).

CDTs act on several cell types

As already evident from the morphological effect, CDTs affect various cell lines with differing outcomes depending on the cell type. Sensitive cells include HEp-2, HeLa, CHO, Vero and Don fibroblasts (reviewed in (Cortes-Bratti et al. 2001a; Pickett and Whitehouse 1999) as well as human embryonic intestinal epithelial cells (INT407) (Hickey et al. 2000), a human colon carcinoma cell line (Caco-2) and a human keratinocyte cell line (HaCat) (Cortes-Bratti et al. 1999). Human $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T cells are highly sensitive to the *A. actinomycetemcomitans* CDT (AaCDT) (Shenker et al. 1999), which also inhibits proliferation of the murine B-cell hybridoma cell line HS-72 (Sato et al. 2002) as well as human periodontal ligament cells and gingival fibroblasts (Belibasakis et al. 2002). HdCDT affects normal human endothelial cells (HUVEC) (Svensson et al. 2002), foreskin keratinocytes and fibroblasts, embryonic lung fibroblasts, human B cells and dendritic cells (Figs. 3, 5) (Cortes-Bratti et al. 2001b; Li et al. 2002). Primary human fetal fibroblasts (IMR-90) (Hassane et al. 2003), Cos-7 cells (McSweeney and Dreyfus 2004), Jurkat and MOLT-4 cells (Ohara et al. 2004) are also sensitive to CDT intoxication.

In conclusion, most tested cells are sensitive to CDT. The only cells so far reported to resist CDTs are the Y-1 adrenal cells and 3T3 fibroblasts of mouse origin (Cope et al. 1997; Cortes-Bratti et al. 1999; Johnson and Lior 1988b). The reason for their resistance is not known but these cells might lack a cell surface receptor needed for binding of the toxin.

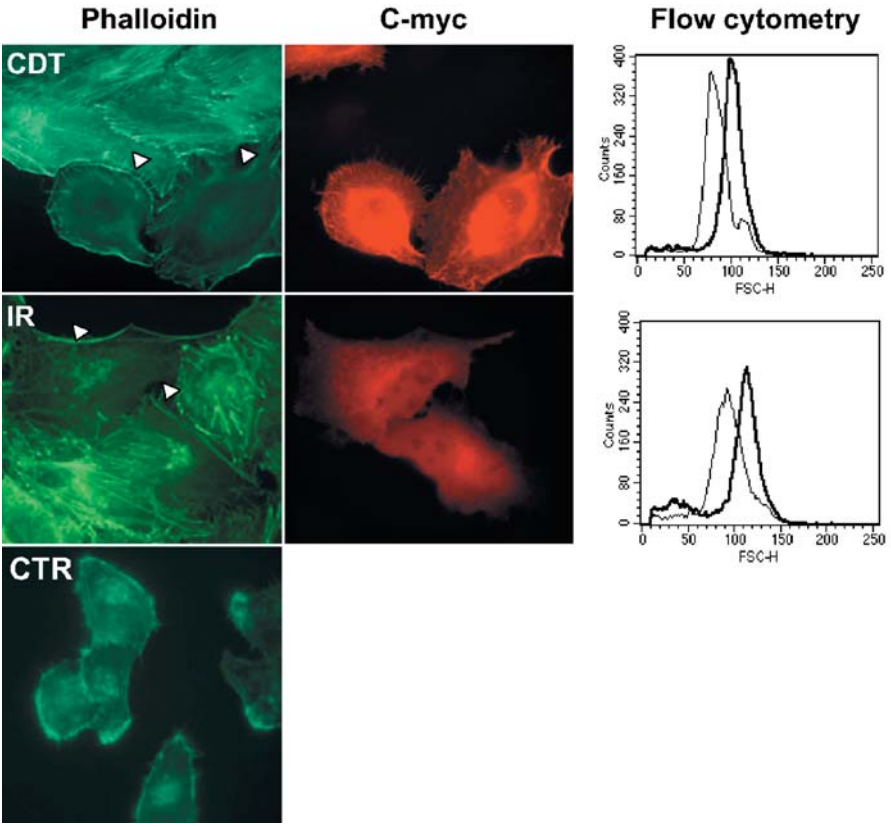


Fig. 2 CDT intoxication induces cell distension and promotion of actin stress fibers. HeLa cells were transfected with dominant negative RhoAN19, and 24 h after transfection cells were either left untreated (CTR) or exposed to HdCDT (2μg/ml) or irradiated (20 Gy) and incubated for additional 24 h in complete medium. Transfected cells were visualized by immunofluorescence using anti-Myc 9E10 antibody and F-actin was stained with FITC-phalloidin. *Arrows* indicate RhoAN19 transfected cells. The cell size of untreated (*thin line*) or treated (*thick line*) cells was analyzed by flow cytometry (FSC-H: forward scatter)

CdtB is a DNase

The CdtBs from several bacteria were shown to be able to cleave DNA in vitro. Indeed, all CdtBs on a close analysis turned out to have structural and functional homology to mammalian DNase I. The first paper describing position-specific homology between the CdtB subunit from EcCDT-II and mammalian DNase I was published by Elwell and Dreyfus (Elwell and Dreyfus 2000). The homology pattern was found at specific residues involved in enzyme catalysis (Glu86, His154, Asp229, His261), DNA binding (Arg123, Asn194) and metal ion binding (Glu62, Asp192, Asp260). EcCdtB-II also contained a pentapeptide sequence (aa 259–263: Ser-Asp-His-Tyr-Pro) found in all DNase I enzymes. Shortly after, similar conserved residues were described for the *C. jejuni* CdtB (CjCdtB) and in fact identified in all known CdtBs (Lara-Tejero and Galan 2000).

The position-specific homology is associated with functional activity, since crude Ec-CDT-II preparations have DNase activity as detected by in vitro digestion of the coiled

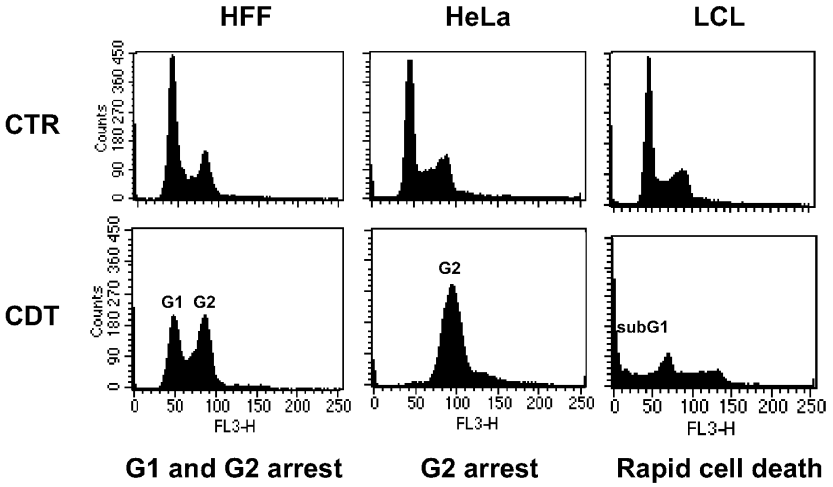


Fig. 3 Cell type-dependent effect of CDT. Human foreskin fibroblasts (*HFF*), HeLa cells and an EBV transformed lymphoblastoid cell line (*LCL*) show different patterns of cycle arrest or cell death upon CDT treatment. Cells were treated with HdCDT (2μg/ml) and cell cycle distribution was assessed by DNA staining with propidium iodide and flow cytometry analysis 24 h after treatment. The G_1 peak was arbitrarily set on the mean fluorescence intensity value of 50

pGEM-7zf plasmid (Elwell and Dreyfus 2000), and transfection of HeLa cells with CjCdtB was shown to induce a slowly appearing nuclear fragmentation and a marked chromatin disruption (Lara-Tejero and Galan 2000). Microinjected CjCdtB was also able to produce changes in the chromatin and enlargement of the nucleus. The DNase activity, as well as the cytotoxicity, was abolished by point mutations of conserved residues required for catalysis or for magnesium binding. Thus, the catalytic DNase activity appeared to be crucial for the cytotoxic activity of CDTs (Elwell and Dreyfus 2000; Lara-Tejero and Galan 2000).

CDT induces DNA double-strand breaks

We recently provided direct evidence that intoxication of HeLa cells with the HdCDT holotoxin induces DNA DSBs similarly to IR (Fig. 4) (Frisan et al. 2003). This first demonstration of CDT-induced DSBs in naturally intoxicated mammalian cells was made with a sensitive pulsed field gel electrophoresis (PFGE) method. It contradicts an earlier report showing that EcCDT did not induce DNA strand breaks, as measured with the alkaline single cell gel electrophoresis (Comet) assay (Sert et al. 1999). However, our findings agree with those of Hassane and co-workers who previously observed that yeast cells transfected with CjCdtB exhibited DSBs, also detectable by PFGE (Hassane et al. 2001). Furthermore, this effect on DNA is fully consistent with the DNase activity of CdtB and the widely reported observations that CDT-treated cells exhibit cell cycle arrest and/or undergo apoptosis (see below).

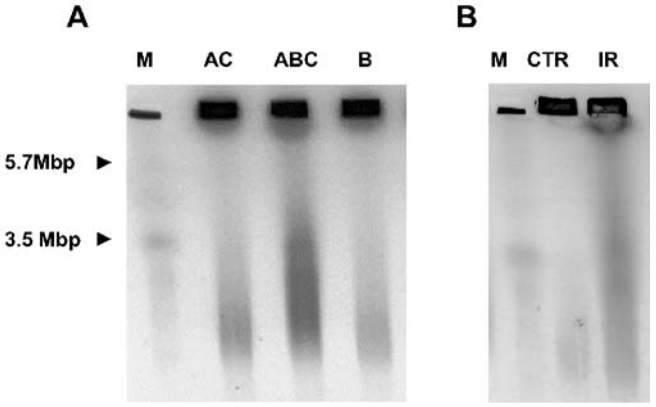


Fig. 4A, B CDT intoxication induces DNA DSBs. Twenty-five thousand HeLa cells per well were grown in 12-well plates in complete medium containing 4000 Bq [methyl-^{14}C]thymidine for 48 h. The cells were then washed three times in phosphate buffered saline and chased for 2 h in complete medium. **A** Cells were treated with (*AC*) CdtAC bacterial supernatant; (*ABC*) CdtAC bacterial supernatant incubated with purified *H. ducreyi* CdtB (20μg/ml); (*B*) purified *H. ducreyi* CdtB alone (20μg/ml) for 7 h, and processed for pulsed-field gel electrophoresis analysis. **B** HeLa cells were left untreated or irradiated (20 Gy, *IR*) and immediately processed for analysis by pulsed-field gel electrophoresis. *M*, molecular weight marker

Cellular responses to DNA damaging agents

It is well known that cells exposed to agents causing DNA damage activate checkpoint responses that arrest the cell cycle until the DNA damage has been repaired. These checkpoint responses can block cells in the G_1, S or G_2 phases of the cell cycle (Elledge 1996; Hartwell and Weinert 1989). The protein kinase 'Ataxia telangiectasia mutated' (ATM) and its homolog 'ATM and Rad3 related' (ATR) play a central role in sensing DNA damage. ATM is activated in response to DNA DSBs induced by IR, and can in turn trigger all the different checkpoints. ATR activation is mainly induced by other DNA damaging agents, such as UV irradiation (reviewed in Rotman and Shiloh 1999). Arrest in G_1 is mediated by the tumor suppressor gene p53, which is stabilized in an ATM dependent manner via phosphorylation on serine 20 by the chk2 protein kinase (Chehab et al. 2000; Siciliano et al. 1997). The G_2 arrest depends on inactivation of the cdc2 complex. Activation of cdc2 is achieved via dephosphorylation at Thr14 and Tyr15 by the Cdc25C phosphatase (Jackman and Pines 1997). The ATM-dependent protein kinases chk1 and chk2, activated in vivo in response to DNA damage, are both able to inactivate Cdc25C in vitro (Matsuoka et al. 1998; Sanchez et al. 1997), leading to accumulation of the inactive phosphorylated cdc2 and arrest of cells in the G_2 phase of the cell cycle.

Cellular checkpoint responses to CDTs

Cell cycle arrest

Already before the toxin was known to damage DNA, cells exposed to various CDTs had been reported to accumulate the phosphorylated (inactive) form of cdc2, implying G_2/M arrest (Comayras et al. 1997; Cortes-Bratti et al. 1999; Peres et al. 1997; Whitehouse et al.

1998). The inactive cdc2/cyclin B complex resulting after intoxication with EcCDT-III could be reactivated in vitro with recombinant Cdc25C (Sert et al. 1999). Furthermore, overexpression of Cdc25B or Cdc25C could override the G_2 arrest induced by this toxin, causing progression to a mitosis which, however, was abnormal (Escalas et al. 2000). Both results suggested that CDTs do not target specifically cdc2 but rather some upstream component, leading to inactivation of Cdc25C and consequent lack of cdc2 dephosphorylation as a secondary effect.

The cellular checkpoint responses induced by HdCDT were then shown to closely resemble those induced by IR. It became clear that the CDT-induced cell cycle arrest is not limited to the G_2/M phase, but that the checkpoint responses depend on the cell type (Cortes-Bratti et al. 2001b). A functional ATM protein was needed for rapid intoxication as demonstrated by the delayed responses in ATM deficient lymphoblastoid cell lines. In human fibroblasts, both IR and HdCDT treatment induced early activation of the p53 gene and the cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor p21, which correlated with arrest in G_1 (Fig. 3). In epithelial cells both treatments induced chk2 kinase activation, accumulation of phosphorylated cdc2, and G_2 arrest. The checkpoint responses were detected already 4 h post-intoxication and therefore occurred much earlier than the morphological changes of intoxicated cells. Lymphoblastoid cell lines did not arrest in either G_1 or G_2 at the concentrations of HdCDT used, but rapidly underwent apoptosis (Cortes-Bratti et al. 2001b) (Fig. 3).

CDT-induced apoptosis

This aspect has been studied in some detail only in human T cells and T cell lines. Treatment of activated human T cells with the AaCDT (purified B subunit or recombinant holotoxin) was found to induce DNA fragmentation in 72–96 h, and FACS analysis showed reduction in cell size and increased nuclear condensation (Shenker et al. 2001). Mitochondrial changes were evident as a decrease in transmembrane potential and an elevation of reactive oxygen species, and the caspases 8, 9 and 3 were activated after the G_2 arrest. Overexpression of Bcl-2 decreased the CDT-induced apoptosis, but did not inhibit the CDT-induced G_2 arrest (Shenker et al. 2001). A more recent report on AaCDT-induced death of human peripheral T lymphocytes and the Jurkat and MOLT-4 cell lines, however, suggested that AaCDT has the ability to induce human T-cell apoptosis through activation of caspase-2 and caspase-7 (Ohara et al. 2004). In conclusion, the exact molecular responses on the way to apoptotic cell death have not been fully elucidated and can be expected to depend on the particular type of target cell.

CDTs activate sensors of DNA damage

We demonstrated that HdCDT induces ATM-dependent phosphorylation of the nuclear sensor of DNA damage, histone H2AX, as early as 1 h after intoxication. Moreover, the DNA repair complex Mre11 in the nuclei of HeLa cells was relocalized with kinetics similar to those observed upon IR (Li et al. 2002). Also the CjCDT was reported to induce both G_1 and G_2 arrest in primary human fetal fibroblasts (IMR-90 cells), and Rad50 foci were formed in the nuclei of the CjCDT-treated fibroblasts (Hassane et al. 2003). Thus, DNA damage-associated molecules are activated as an early response to the DNA DSBs induced by CDTs.

CDTs act on nonproliferating cells

It is noteworthy that CDTs also attack nonproliferating cells. The focus formation assays mentioned above enabled the discovery that human dendritic cells (DCs) (Li et al. 2002) as well as serum starved primary human fetal fibroblasts (Hassane et al. 2003) are sensitive to CDT. This contradicts previous notions that cells need to pass through the S phase in order to become intoxicated (Alby et al. 2001; Lara-Tejero and Galan 2000; Sert et al. 1999). The cell cycle analysis of HdCDT-treated human DCs shows that all control cells are in G_0 whereas the toxin-treated cells after 24 h either remain in G_0 or become apoptotic The short-term effect after 4 h toxin treatment of DCs is seen as a phosphorylation, i.e., activation, of H2AX (Fig. 5) (Li et al. 2002).

CDT-induced stress fiber promotion depends on ATM-mediated activation of RhoA

The reason that actin stress fibers are strongly promoted in certain CDT-treated cells was not understood in the early experiments (Aragon et al. 1997) although the possible involvement of small GTPases controlling the actin cytoskeleton was hypothesized (Cortes-Bratti et al. 1999). Later on it became feasible to investigate this aspect of CDT intoxication with new tools that allow biochemical assay of the activated small GTPases Rho, Rac and CDC42 (Benard et al. 1999; Ren et al. 1999). Thus, we could show that the HdCDT-activated stress fiber promotion in fibroblasts and HeLa cells depends on activation of RhoA, but not Rac or CDC42 (Frisan et al. 2003). This was observed both directly as activation of RhoA upon intoxication, and as an inhibition of the stress fiber formation in CDT-treated cells transfected with a dominant negative mutant of RhoA (see Fig. 2).

A cell distension and stress fiber promotion was observed also in irradiated cells. Interestingly, the increased size of CDT-treated or irradiated cells was not connected to the stress fiber formation, since dominant negative RhoA inhibited the formation of stress fibers without affecting the distension of the treated cells (Fig. 2). The distension phenomenon instead appears to depend on activation of PI3-kinase and its downstream effector mTOR, whereas this enzyme had no clear effect on induction of stress fibers (Frisan et al. 2003). The activation of RhoA upon intoxication or irradiation was ATM-dependent, thereby connecting the stress fiber promotion to the damaging action on DNA. Toxin-treated cells expressing a dominant negative form of RhoA detached and consequently died faster than cells expressing a functional RhoA (Frisan et al. 2003). Thus, the activation of RhoA was associated with prolonged cell survival, and it seems to represent an attempt of intoxicated cells to maintain cell adherence in order to stay alive while the DNA is supposed to be repaired. This ATM-dependent activation of RhoA constitutes a previously unknown type of cell survival response to induction of DNA DSBs, which seems to occur regardless of the agent inducing the DSBs.

Fig. 6 summarizes the intracellular responses activated by CDT intoxication.

Cellular internalization and nuclear localization of CdtB is required for cytotoxicity

Since CDT acts on DNA it is conceivable that this toxin, like most other intracellularly acting toxins, has to be internalized in target cells before it can act. Indeed, the HdCDT has been reported to enter HEp-2/HeLa cells by endocytosis via clathrin-coated pits

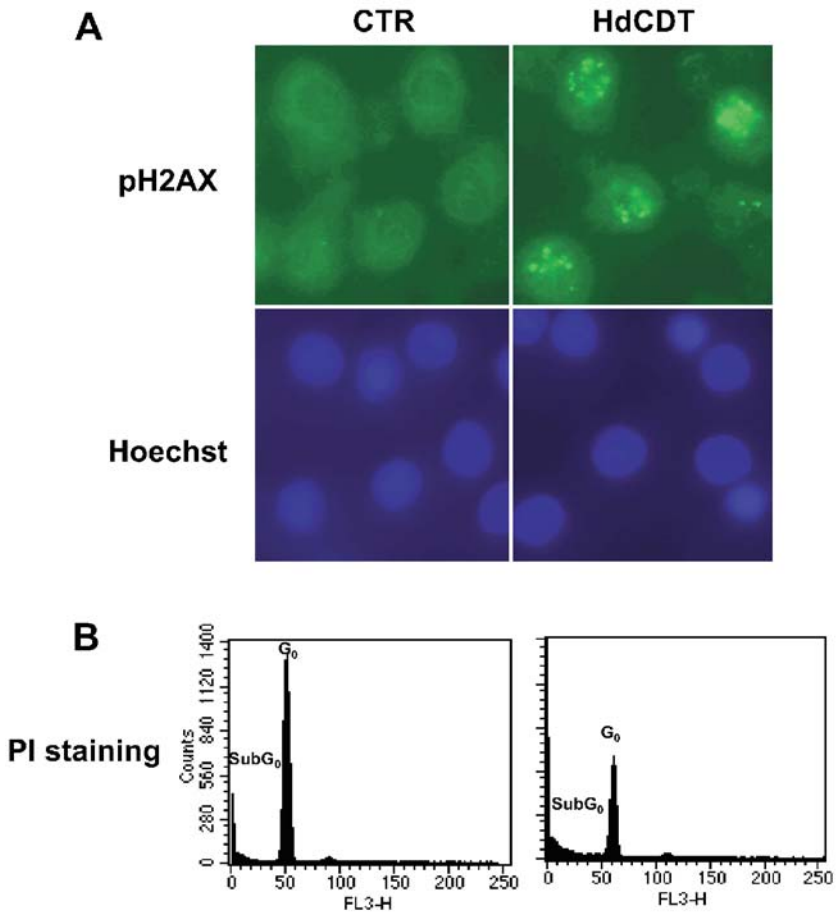


Fig. 5A, B CDT induces DNA damage and cell death in nonproliferating dendritic cells. **A** Five-day immature DCs were incubated with HdCDT (2μg/ml) for 5 h and stained with histone H2AX phospho-specific rabbit serum (*pH2AX*). Nuclei were counter-stained with Hoechst 33258. **B** Cell cycle distribution was assessed by DNA staining with propidium iodide (*PI*) and flow cytometry. The G_0 peak was arbitrarily set on the mean fluorescence intensity value of 50

(Cortes-Bratti et al. 2000). The cellular intoxication was completely inhibited at conditions that block the fusion of early endosomes with downstream compartments or after treatment of cells with agents that disrupt the Golgi complex. Apparently the toxin, after uptake via clathrin-coated pits, requires transport in vesicles at least to the Golgi complex before its activity can be expressed. From the Golgi it may be retrogradely transported to the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) and from there delivered either to the cytosol or directly to the nucleus (Cortes-Bratti et al. 2000).

CdtB contains no known conventional nuclear localization signal (NLS). However, microinjection experiments in HeLa cells showed that a 76-amino acid stretch (residues 48–124) in the AaCdtB constitutes an atypical NLS (Nishikubo et al. 2003). After microinjection, His-tagged CdtB-GFP entered the nucleus in 3–4 h. A lack of effect of leptomycin B on the speed of nuclear entry suggested that the relatively slow entry of the fusion protein

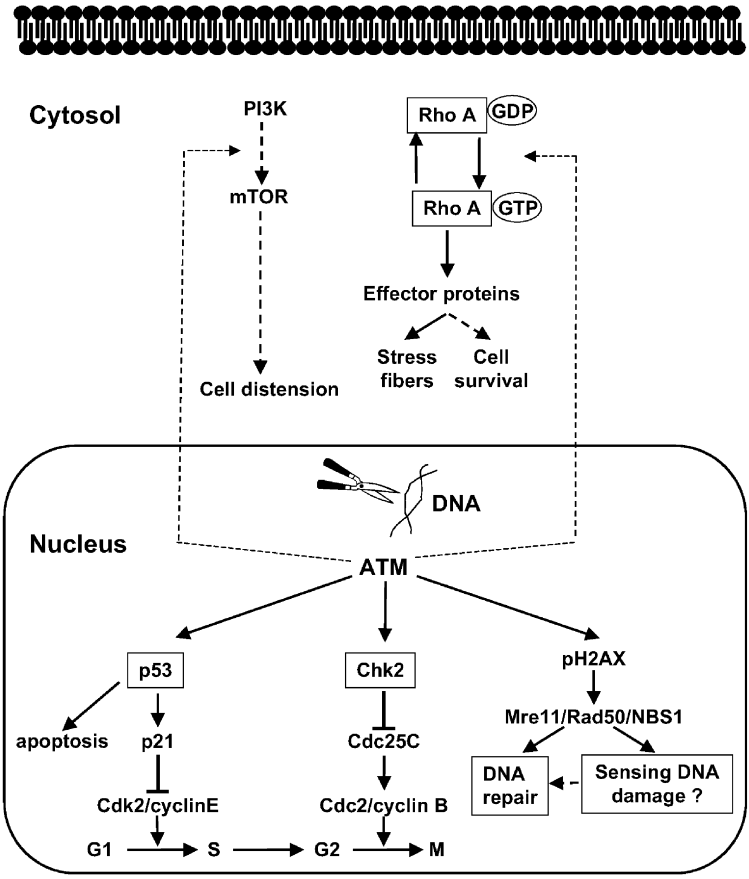


Fig. 6 Summary of the cellular responses activated by the CDT-induced DNA damage. *Dotted arrows* indicate pathways discovered using CDT as a tool for which intermediate effectors have not yet been completely elucidated

was not due to CRM1-dependent nuclear export of the protein. An in vitro transport assay demonstrated that the nuclear localization of CdtB was mediated via active transport requiring ATP and physiological temperature. Moreover, cells treated extracellularly with a holotoxin containing mutant CdtB, with an 11-amino acid truncation in the identified NLS, were unaffected. This observation suggested that the identified NLS may be functional for nuclear localization of the toxin also when mammalian cells are naturally intoxicated with the extracellularly added holotoxin (Nishikubo et al. 2003). Subsequently, two NLS sequences, designated NLS1 and NLS2, have been identified in the carboxy-terminal region of EcCdtB-II. Cell cycle arrest and nuclear localization were impaired in cells treated with CDT containing EcCdtB-II-ΔNLS mutants, while the in vitro DNase activity and the cell surface binding of the mutant holotoxins were not affected. Interestingly, fluorescence microscopy analysis showed a diffuse cytoplasmic distribution of EcCdtB-II-ΔNLS2 in cells intoxicated with the CDT holotoxin containing the EcCdtB-II-ΔNLS2 mu-

tant, while the EcCdtB-II-ΔNLS1 subunit localized preferentially in a perinuclear region of the intoxicated cells (McSweeney and Dreyfus 2004).

The studies cited above demonstrate beyond any doubt that at least the active CdtB subunit has to be endocytosed and undergo intracellular transport to the nucleus before it can damage cells. However, it is still not known whether in natural intoxication the nuclear entry of CdtB takes place from the cytosol or directly from the Golgi/ER. Nothing has yet been reported regarding the cellular localizations and fates of the other two toxin subunits.

Functions of the different CDT subunits

Early genetic studies demonstrated that all three genes need to be expressed in the producing bacterium for the generation of active (cytotoxic) CDT (Cope et al. 1997; Pickett et al. 1994, 1996; Sugai et al. 1998; Young et al. 2000a). However, some confusion was created by the difficulty to obtain highly purified subunits from bacteria, which possess the entire *cdt* operon and thus produce all three subunits. Although studies today are usually performed with recombinant subunits of CDT some discrepancies still remain as we shall see below. However, clarifying the roles of the three different subunits in cellular intoxication and other responses to CDT constitutes one of the most important frontiers in current CDT research.

CdtB. As stated already CdtB is definitely the most important active subunit showing DNase activity in vitro and in vivo. CdtB of various origins is cytotoxic after microinjection (Lara-Tejero and Galan 2000) or electroporation/facilitated entry into cells (Elwell et al. 2001; Mao and DiRienzo 2002). In contrast, CdtB added extracellularly alone is not able to bind to most target cells and consequently it is not cytotoxic by itself. T cells may be an exception as initial studies on the AaCDT suggested that its CdtB subunit alone was sufficient to cause G_2 arrest in phytohemagglutinin-activated human T cells (Shenker et al. 1999, 2000). However, the same authors demonstrated more recently that although their AaCdtB alone could bind to the Jurkat cell surface and was sufficient to induce G_2 arrest in human lymphocytes, the presence of both the CdtA and CdtC subunits was required to achieve maximum cell cycle arrest (Shenker et al. 2004). Indeed, a holotoxin comprised of CdtABC was >50,000-fold more toxic to Jurkat cells than toxins composed of either CdtAB or CdtBC. Today there is general consensus that all three subunits must be added together for extracellularly induced maximal intoxication (Lara-Tejero and Galan 2001; Lee et al. 2003).

CdtA. Shenker and coworkers (Shenker et al. 2004) report that immunoprecipitation of the CDT holotoxin from *A. actinomycetemcomitans* extracts, with a monoclonal antibody against CdtC, co-precipitated CdtA and CdtB. Interestingly, only a truncated form of CdtA (18 kDa) was immunoprecipitated with this holotoxin, suggesting that CdtA may undergo processing during the assembly of the holotoxin. The expression of two immunoreactive CdtA proteins corresponding to 25 kDa and 18 kDa has been observed also for the HdCDT (Frisk et al. 2001). CdtA seems to be able to bind to target cells, but alone it lacks cytotoxic activity (Lee et al. 2003; Mao and DiRienzo 2002). Also, the combination of only CdtA and CdtB was without cytotoxic effect on HeLa cells (Lara-Tejero and

Galan 2001; Lee et al. 2003). It is unclear whether the CdtA in these cases was in the truncated form or not.

CdtC. Besides the apparent maturation of CdtA in the presence of the two other subunits, also CdtC has been reported to be somehow processed in the holotoxin environment. The isoelectric point (pI) of the HdCdtC component was 1.5 pH units higher in recombinant strains expressing all three components than in recombinant strains expressing the CdtC protein alone (Frisk et al. 2001). A similar change of pI occurred after mixing the three individual recombinant components in vitro. Thus, it was suggested that HdCdtA/B may exert some kind of processing activity on HdCdtC, rendering it active (Deng et al. 2001; Frisk et al. 2001). Recently, however, the purified recombinant His-tagged AaCdtC alone, delivered to the cytosol with a lipid protein carrier, was found able to induce cell distension and eventually the death of CHO cells (Mao and DiRienzo 2002). The specific mechanism of this putative CdtC cytotoxicity has not been elucidated.

Cytotoxicity of combined CdtB and CdtC

Mao and DiRienzo (Mao and DiRienzo 2002) also found an additive cytotoxic effect exerted by the combination of AaCdtB and AaCdtC when delivered into the cytosol together. We previously observed cytotoxicity with an extracellularly added highly purified preparation of HdCDT in which we were not able to detect CdtA by Western blot analysis (Li et al. 2002). This is consistent with the observation that extracts from *H. ducreyi* producing CDT in which the *cdtA* gene was mutated still had some cytotoxic activity (Lewis et al. 2001). Also other workers found that the combination of purified HdCdtB with HdCdtC was slightly cytotoxic (Wising et al. 2002). Likewise, a mixture of recombinant AaCdtB and AaCdtC could induce G_2 arrest in HEp-2 cells, as measured by FACS analysis after a 72 h toxin exposure (Akifusa et al. 2001). Similarly, the extracellularly added combined recombinant subunits CjCdtB and CjCdtC were able to induce G2 arrest in HeLa cells (Lee et al. 2003). On a microgram basis, however, this combination was only about 25% as effective as the tripartite CjCDT holotoxin. It would be of interest to determine the toxin amount produced by the bacteria in vivo, in order to understand whether the CdtB/C combination could have any physiological relevance.

Cell surface binding of CDT subunits

Different CDTs have a documented ability to intoxicate cells even after exposure times as short as 2 to 15 min (Aragon et al. 1997; Cortes-Bratti et al. 1999) and HdCDT could be absorbed out from the medium by repeatedly passing the same toxin solution over fresh cultures of HEp-2 cells (Frisk et al. 2001). Such functional studies indirectly suggested that CDTs bind to cells rapidly and irreversibly, although no specificity of the binding could be demonstrated. It was earlier pointed out that a region in the CjCdtA, encompassing the amino acids 160 through 220, exhibits a lectin fold which is also present in the binding subunits of the plant toxins ricin and abrin (Lara-Tejero and Galan 2001). The recently determined crystal structure of HdCDT reinforced this observation and underscored the presence of a ricin-like lectin domain also in HdCdtC. However, no specific receptor for any CDT subunit has so far been identified.

When recombinant HdCdtA and HdCdtC were produced from two plasmids and expressed in the same *E. coli*, a noncovalent CdtA–CdtC complex was formed in the absence of CdtB (Deng and Hansen 2003). This CdtA–CdtC complex after association with HeLa cells (30 min, 4°C) was able to bind subsequently added CdtB, leading to cell killing within 72 h. Moreover, HeLa cells pretreated for 30 min at 37°C with the CdtA–CdtC complex became resistant to the cell killing induced by high concentrations of subsequently added HdCDT holotoxin (*H. ducreyi* culture supernatant). However, such treated cells were not resistant to the cell distension induced by lower amounts of the holotoxin (Deng and Hansen 2003), suggesting that cellular intoxication had indeed occurred. Thus, a more detailed analysis of the molecular markers of CDT intoxication should be performed.

Another recent piece of work considerably advanced our knowledge about binding of the CjCDT subunits to the HeLa cell surface (Lee et al. 2003). By competition experiments Lee and coworkers demonstrated that both the CdtA and CdtC subunits, but not CdtB, could bind with specificity to the HeLa cell surface. In unlabeled form these subunits were able to compete out binding of the corresponding biotinylated subunit. Interestingly, they could also compete with each other, suggesting that CdtA and CdtC were binding to the same receptor on the cell surface (Lee et al. 2003). Indeed, these two subunits of the CjCDT share about 40% sequence similarity with each other. McSweeney and Dreyfus recently noted the same binding competition between the CdtA and CdtC subunits of the EcCDT-II (McSweeney and Dreyfus 2004).

Lee and coworkers (Lee et al. 2003), in addition, produced in-frame deletion mutants of CdtA and CdtC from which 43 and 22 amino acids, respectively, were deleted. As the highest homologies within the CdtA and CdtC subunits from different bacteria are found in distinct regions, the deletions were made in one such region in CjCdtA (amino acids 126–168 deleted) and in the region of the highest homology within the CjCdtC subunit (amino acids 115–136 deleted). Both of these mutant subunits in biotinylated form were still able to bind HeLa cells as detected by an enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay on living cells. Moreover, each mutant subunit was able to compete out the binding of both the corresponding and the other wild-type subunit, as well as that of the holotoxin. The binding of the CDT holotoxin decreased nearly fivefold in the presence of the CdtA mutant subunit and almost threefold in the presence of the CdtC mutant subunit. These interesting findings then suggest that the deleted regions in each Cdt subunit do not play any significant role in cell surface recognition. On the other hand, the mutant subunits were unable to interact with CdtB and/or each other to reconstitute an active holotoxin, indicating that the deleted regions were instead critical for effective holotoxin formation (Lee et al. 2003).

In conclusion

The most reasonable interpretation of the combined current data on the CDT subunits is that CDT functions as an AB-toxin where the DNase CdtB constitutes the active subunit, and a CdtAC heterodimer constitutes the optimal binding subunit. This tripartite holotoxin is the subunit combination with maximal activity in all tested cell systems. However, the CdtC subunit alone can also function as a binding subunit, facilitating the cellular entry of CdtB, albeit with a much lower efficiency than the heterodimeric binding unit. That the AaCdtB alone can apparently act on Jurkat cells (Shenker et al. 2000, 2004) may have to

do with specific properties of T cells, which in contrast to epithelial cells or fibroblasts appear able to bind and take up CdtB.

Possible involvement of CDTs in bacterial infections

As CDTs are potent toxins produced by pathogenic bacteria they have to be regarded as potential virulence factors. CDTs are detected in an increasing number of clinical isolates but only few experiments with CDTs in animal model systems have been reported.

Occurrence of CDTs in clinical isolates from various geographic locations

Several studies on *E. coli* isolates have been performed, especially concerning the possible association of CDT with enteropathogenic (EPEC) serotypes. The general conclusion from these studies is that EcCDT is produced in some, but not all, EPEC serotypes (Ansaruzzaman et al. 2000; Ghilardi et al. 2001; Janka et al. 2003; Okeke et al. 2000; Pandey et al. 2003). For example, only 1 in 200 children in Brazil (0.5%) with acute diarrhea were infected with *cdt*-positive EPEC, while 1% of the nondiarrheic controls harbored *cdt*-positive isolates (Marques et al. 2003). CDT has also been identified in urosepsis *E. coli* isolates (Johnson and Stell 2000), in diarrhea isolates from dogs (Starcic et al. 2002), and from neonatal piglets (da Silva and da Silva Leite 2002), in extraintestinal human and animal urinary tract infection (UTI) and non-UTI strains (Toth et al. 2003), and in 83% of bovine isolates of necrotoxigenic *E. coli* (Mainil et al. 2003).

Pickett and coworkers recently investigated how the presence of *cdt* genes was related to a number of other virulence genes of *E. coli* (Pickett et al. 2004). Their study of a collection of 20 strains revealed that the CDT producers can be divided into three general groups with distinct differences in CDT type and in their complement of virulence-associated genes. Thus, *cdt* genes were found in a subset of uropathogenic *E. coli* strains, in additional extraintestinal isolates of uncertain clonal identity, and in certain strains with characteristics in common with Shiga-toxin producing *E. coli* and EPEC (Pickett et al. 2004). CDT and the *cdt* genes were also identified in 17 out of 340 non-O157 Shiga toxin-producing *E. coli* (STEC) of serotypes that were all *eae*-negative (Bielaszewska et al. 2004). Among these *eae*-negative STEC, *cdt* was proposed to be disease-associated as it was significantly more frequent in isolates from patients with hemolytic uremic syndrome (3 of 7) and in isolates from patients with diarrhea (14 of 138) than in isolates from asymptomatic carriers (0 of 65).

The production of CDT has been detected in few isolates of *Shigella dysenteriae*, *S. boydii* and *S. sonnei* (Okuda et al. 1995). In contrast, almost all investigated *C. jejuni* and *C. coli* strains have been reported to produce CDT or to possess the *cdt* genes. For instance, the *cdtB* gene was detected in all investigated isolates from chicken carcasses, i.e., the primary source of *C. jejuni* and *C. coli* in human infections (Eyigor et al. 1999a, 1999b). An in vitro assay showed that the *C. jejuni* isolates produced CDT at high toxin titers whereas *C. coli* produced little or no toxin. Likewise, 100/101 *C. jejuni* and 7 of 10 *C. coli* isolates from Danish broilers had the *cdt* genes. Again the *C. coli* strains produced lower amounts of the toxin (Bang et al. 2001). CDT production was also demonstrated from *C. fetus*, and PCR experiments suggested the presence of *cdtB* sequences in other species of *Campylobacter* (Pickett et al. 1996). A recent study on several virulence genes

including the *cdt* cluster in *C. jejuni* and *C. coli* isolates from Danish pigs and cattle demonstrated a high prevalence (83–95%) of *cdt* genes and CDT production (Bang et al. 2003).

In contrast to the situation in *Campylobacter* spp, the *cdt* genes and CDT activity is not present in all species of *Helicobacter*. The three genes have been identified in *H. hepaticus* (Young et al. 2000a), and the *cdtB* gene was detected in human clinical isolates of *H. pullorum* (Young et al. 2000b) and in canine isolates of *H. flexispira* (Kostia et al. 2003), but no CDT homology was found in *H. pylori* (Chien et al. 2000). Interestingly, CDT was recently reported as the first putative virulence factor present in *H. cinaedi*, which is the most commonly reported enterohepatic helicobacter in humans (Taylor et al. 2003). The *cdtB* gene detected by PCR, as well as CDT production detected by cytotoxicity, was present in all 11 investigated isolates, 10 of which were clinical isolates.

Out of 50 periodontitis strains of *A. actinomycetemcomitans*, 86% had the *cdt* genes and expressed cytotoxic activity (Ahmed et al. 2001). A majority (39/40) of clinical isolates from Brazil, Kenya, Japan and Sweden were also found to harbor the *cdt* genes and produce the AaCDT (Fabris et al. 2002). Although there was some variation in toxin production among the strains, no clear relationship between CDT activity and periodontal status could be found. In another study *A. actinomycetemcomitans* was detected in 106/146 subgingival plaque samples isolated from periodontitis patients, and among these only 13 sites were positive for the *cdt* genotype (Tan et al. 2002). However, 10 of these 13 positive sites were obtained from patients diagnosed with aggressive periodontitis, and the authors speculated that the cytotoxicity and immunosuppression by CDT may contribute to the pathogenesis of aggressive periodontitis (Tan et al. 2002). More recently CDT production and occurrence of the *cdtB* gene was studied in 73 strains of periodontopathogenic bacteria (Yamano et al. 2003) and CDT activity was found in 40/45 tested *A. actinomyctemcomitans* strains. The remaining 28 strains of other bacteria did not have CDT.

Finally, 89% of a group of isolates of *H. ducreyi* from different parts of the world showed CDT activity on HEp-2 cells (Purvén et al. 1995). A later study identified the *cdt* genes and CDT production in 83% of 29 isolates of *H. ducreyi* from chancroid (Ahmed et al. 2001). Likewise, 87% of 45 strains of *H. ducreyi* found in still more recent chancroid isolates from various parts of the world produced the toxin (Kulkarni et al. 2003).

In conclusion

A majority of strains of *C. jejuni, A. actinomyctemcomitans* and *H. ducreyi* appear to produce the CDT while the presence of the *cdt* genes in other bacteria is more variable. Table 1 summarizes the data reported in the previous paragraphs.

CDT-induced production of cytokines in vitro

CDT from *C. jejuni* has been shown to induce the release of the proinflammatory cytokine interleukin (IL)-8 from intestinal epithelial INT407 cells (Hickey et al. 2000). In contrast, a more recent study showed that while *C. jejuni* itself induced a number of proinflammatory cytokines, IL-8 among them, from the monocytic cell line THP-1, these responses did not depend on the presence of CDT (Jones et al. 2003). On the other hand, each of the purified recombinant subunits of AaCDT were found individually able to induce production

Table 1 Short summary of the CDT occurrence in clinical isolates

Toxin	Bacteria/disease	Species infected
E. coli CDTs	EPEC	Human
	Urosepsis *E. coli*	Human
	Diarrhea isolates	Dog
	Diarrhea isolates	Pig
	UTI strains	Human/animal
	Non-UTI strains	Human/animal
	Necrotoxigenic	Bovine
	STEC	Human
Shigella CDTs	Few isolates	
*Campylobacte*r CDTs	*C. jejuni*	Chicken/human
	C. coli	Chicken/human
	C. fetus	
Helicobacter CDTs	*H. pullorum*	Human
	H. flexispira	Human
	H. cinaedi	Human
	H. hepaticus	Human, mouse
AaCDT	Aggressive periodontitis	Human
HdCDT	Chancroid	Human

The references relative to the CDT distribution of clinical isolates are reported in the text

of the cytokines IL-1β, IL-6 and IL-8 but not tumor necrosis factor α, IL-12 or granulocyte-macrophage colony stimulating factor in human peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC) (Akifusa et al. 2001). While CdtC was the most potent and CdtB had only minimal cytokine stimulating activity, the latter appeared to synergize with CdtA and CdtC to promote PBMC cytokine synthesis, and this synergy was most marked in inducing interferon (IFN)γ production (Akifusa et al. 2001).

Studies on CDTs in animal models

An *E. coli* strain expressing the *S. dysenteriae cdt* genes was able to induce watery diarrhea in the suckling mouse model, and the partially purified CDT had some effect also. In addition, the toxin caused a certain tissue damage in the descending colon of these mice (Okuda et al. 1997). When *cdtB* negative strains of *C. jejuni* were administered to severe combined immunodeficient mice no difference in enteric colonization was observed, but there was an impaired invasiveness of the bacteria into blood, spleen and liver tissues as compared to the wild-type bacteria (Purdy et al. 2000), implying that CDT might have a role in the pathogenesis (invasion) of *C. jejuni*. A more recent study of a *C. jejuni cdtB* mutant in wild-type and nuclear factor (NF)-κB deficient mice suggested that CDT may have pro-inflammatory activity in vivo, as well as a potential role in the ability of *C. jejuni* to escape immune surveillance (Fox et al. 2004). The *cdtB* mutant was less efficient than the wild-type *C. jejuni* in colonizing the wild-type (C57BL/129) but not NF-κB deficient mice. Despite 100% colonization of the NF-κB deficient 3X mice the *cdtB* mutant produced significantly less gastritis than the wild-type bacterium (Fox et al. 2004). The authors speculate that CDT may target the cells of the immune system in the lamina propria that influence the host's ability to clear bacterial pathogens. Young and coworkers recently provided further evidence for a potential pro-inflammatory activity of CDTs (Young et al. 2004). Strains of *H. hepaticus* expressing a functional CDT caused severe

colitis in a murine model of inflammatory bowel disease, using C57BL/6 IL-10 deficient mice. In contrast, the CDT-negative isogenic mutants were without effect (Young et al. 2004).

An isogenic *H. ducreyi cdtC* mutant was equally virulent as the parent strain when tested in the temperature-dependent rabbit model for experimental chancroid, despite the fact that it was not cytotoxic to HeLa cells and keratinocytes (Stevens et al. 1999). Isogenic *H. ducreyi cdtA* and *cdtB* mutants also proved to be as virulent as the wild-type strain with regard to lesion production in the same rabbit model (Lewis et al. 2001). In human volunteers, expression of CDT was also not required for pustule formation by *H. ducreyi*, although CDT might still be relevant for induction or persistence of the ulcer stage which is not testable in humans (Young et al. 2001). The purified HdCDT holotoxin induced dose-dependent pathologic skin reactions in rabbits (Wising et al. 2002). High levels of neutralizing antibodies against CDT were detected in only 22% and 2% of patients with chancroid and periodontitis, respectively. Moreover, a majority of healthy individuals also had HdCDT antibodies, and thus such antibodies may not be specific markers for chancroid infection (Mbwana et al. 2003).

In conclusion

The fact that CDTs are produced by diverse human pathogens suggests that these toxins might contribute to the development of different diseases. At the moment, however, there is no absolutely clear association between toxin and specific disease symptoms and one major problem is the lack of suitable animal models for this type of study. Conceivably, CDT could have a role in all instances where cell proliferation is required. Thus, CDTs produced by intestinal pathogens could possibly contribute to gastroenteritis by blocking the proliferation of crypt cells, although there are no studies yet on this particular aspect of the *E. coli*, *Campylobacter* or *Shigella* CDTs. The HdCDT could contribute to the very slow healing of chancroid ulcers. Furthermore, immunosuppression could be one important general effect of CDTs as suggested by the recent studies cited above and by the in vitro effect of CDT on DCs which have a central role for induction of both cellular and humoral-mediated immunoresponses (Li et al. 2002). Targeting DCs could represent a strategy developed by several pathogens in order to avoid or delay the onset of immunoresponses. In fact the AaCDT was originally isolated as the ‘immunosuppressive factor’ of *A. actinomycetemcomitans* and it might possibly play such a role in the pathogenesis of aggressive periodontitis and other infections caused by this bacterium (Shenker et al. 1999).

Future perspectives

In retrospect it is interesting to note that no toxicologist ‘jumped on’ the CDT directly after its discovery in the late 1980s, probably because it did not seem feasible to study something that requires several days to induce an effect on cells. However, during the 10 years after the CDT was first cloned this three-gene toxin has generated an increasing interest, and the development from ‘mysterious activity’ to well known toxin with defined mode of action, now even crystallized, has advanced rapidly. CDT turned out to be unique in that it is the only bacterial toxin known to target DNA as a primary action, subsequent-

ly activating a number of important cellular stress responses designed to save the attacked cell while it attempts to repair its DNA. Although—or perhaps because—we know today so much more than we did a decade ago there are many more questions waiting for their answers. In addition, there is reason to believe that CDT, like many other bacterial protein toxins, can be developed into a useful tool in cell biology and biomedicine.

Molecular mode of action of CDT

The receptor(s) for CDT has not yet been identified. This issue is complicated by the tripartite CDT structure with potentially two separate binding subunits, CdtA and CdtC, which might bind to separate receptor structures, or to the same as suggested by recent studies (Lee et al. 2003) and (McSweeney and Dreyfus 2004). The sequence homologies between the CdtA and CdtC subunits from different bacteria are much lower than between the different CdtB subunits. Thus, it is even possible that the receptor(s) for CDTs of different origin will turn out to differ slightly despite the fact that the active CdtB subunit apparently has the same DNase activity in all CDTs. That there are lectin-like regions in CdtA and CdtC (Nesic et al. 2004), similar to those found in the binding subunit of ricin, might point to a galactose-containing receptor, although Mao and DiRienzo (Mao and DiRienzo 2002) failed to inhibit the binding of AaCdtA to CHO cells with various galactosides and mannosides. Besides the binding to cell surface receptor(s) the three subunits must be able to interact with each other to form the fully active holotoxin. Obviously this interaction must depend on specific amino acid stretches, some of which have already been identified (Lee et al. 2003). It would also be of interest to combine subunits of CDTs from different bacteria to see whether they can fully complement each other. The binding of CdtB to T cells needs clarification; maybe there is a specific receptor for this subunit on these cells.

It is clear that CDT has to be internalized in cells so that the CdtB subunit can be transferred into the nucleus. Indirect functional studies suggested that HdCDT, or at least the active subunit, requires passage through an intact Golgi complex to intoxicate cells (Cortes-Bratti et al. 2000), and later observations in MDCK cells are fully consistent with these findings (T. Frisan and M. Thelestam, unpublished results). The CdtB subunit is able to enter the nucleus from the cytosol and this occurs via active transport (Nishikubo et al. 2003). However, the final steps in the transfer of the CdtB subunit, upon natural intoxication, from the vesicular uptake system to the nucleus are not clear. The cellular fates of CdtA and CdtC after fulfilling their putative roles to facilitate entry of CdtB have also not been clarified. Another unresolved issue is whether CdtC, if it really proves to be cytotoxic by itself, has an entirely different mode of action than CdtB.

CDTs as tools in cell biology

Bacterial toxins have been extremely useful in the study of different aspects of cell biology. So far, CDTs are the only bacterial protein toxins known to induce a subtle DNA damage. In the field of cell and tumor biology, regulation of the cell cycle is currently one of the major issues and CDT will probably be utilized as a tool in such studies. Toxins have also been very helpful in the study of endocytosis and intracellular transport in general. Studies with Shiga toxin showed for the first time that a molecule can be transported from

the cell surface to the Golgi apparatus and the ER (reviewed in Sandvig and Van Deurs 2000). Since the nucleus is its final destination CDT represents an interesting tool for studies of protein transport from the Golgi/ER to the nucleus. Finally, the study of CDT has already led to the discovery of a novel cellular signaling pathway transmitting survival signals from damaged DNA to the small GTPase RhoA. CDT will be useful in the continued efforts to clarify all the molecular details from DNA damage to RhoA activation, as well as from the latter event to the downstream components involved in protecting the cells from immediate death.

CDTs and disease

It will be interesting to see when CDTs will be more clearly demonstrated to cause, or at least to contribute to, the symptoms in infections caused by the bacteria producing them. Now that the mode of action of CDT is basically known this aspect will probably become more attractive for study even if the lack of really good animal models is still a problem. In any case CDTs are likely to affect the immune response as well as other situations in which cell proliferation is needed, such as the healing of chancroid or periodontic ulcers. Another potentially important aspect is that CDTs, being genotoxic, might possibly constitute a contributing factor in long term cancer development. Since CDT is produced by so many common pathogens this is a rather disturbing perspective, which has not yet been studied at all. On the other hand, the action of CDT on DNA makes it a potentially good candidate for an anti-tumor agent.

Acknowledgements. Work from the authors' laboratory has been supported by the Swedish Research Council (grants # 05969 and 15012) and the Karolinska Institutet. T.F. was supported by the Swedish Cancer Society and the Swedish Society for Medical Research.

References

Ahmed HJ, Svensson LA, Cope LD, Latimer JL, Hansen EJ, Ahlman K, Bayat-Turk J, Klamer D, Lagergard T (2001) Prevalence of cdtABC genes encoding cytolethal distending toxin among *Haemophilus ducreyi* and *Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans* strains. J Med Microbiol 50:860–864

Akifusa S, Poole S, Lewthwaite J, Henderson B, Nair SP (2001) Recombinant *Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans* cytolethal distending toxin proteins are required to interact to inhibit human cell cycle progression and to stimulate human leukocyte cytokine synthesis. Infect Immun 69:5925–5930

Alby F, Mazars R, de Rycke J, Guillou E, Baldin V, Darbon J-M, Ducommun B (2001) Study of the cytholethal distending toxin (CDT)-activated cell cycle checkpoint. Involvement of the CHK2 kinase. FEBS Letters 491:261–265

Ansaruzzaman M, Albert MJ, Nahar S, Byun R, Katouli M, Kuhn I, Mollby R (2000) Clonal groups of enteropathogenic *Escherichia coli* isolated in case-control studies of diarrhoea in Bangladesh. J Med Microbiol 49:177–185

Aragon V, Chao K, Dreyfus LA (1997) Effect of cytolethal distending toxin on F-actin assembly and cell division in chinese hamster ovary cells. Infection Immun 65:3774–3780

Bang DD, Nielsen EM, Scheutz F, Pedersen K, Handberg K, Madsen M (2003) PCR detection of seven virulence and toxin genes of *Campylobacter jejuni* and Campylobacter coli isolates from Danish pigs and cattle and cytolethal distending toxin production of the isolates. J Appl Microbiol 94:1003–1014

Bang DD, Scheutz F, Ahrens P, Pedersen K, Blom J, Madsen M (2001) Prevalence of cytolethal distending toxin (cdt) genes and CDT production in *Campylobacter* spp. isolated from Danish broilers. J Med Microbiol 50:1087–1094

Belibasakis G, Johansson A, Wang Y, Claesson R, Chen C, Asikainen S, Kalfas S (2002) Inhibited proliferation of human periodontal ligament cells and gingival fibroblasts by *Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans*: involvement of the cytolethal distending toxin. Eur J Oral Sci 110:366–373

Benard V, Bohl BP, Bokoch GM (1999) Characterization of Rac and Cdc42 activation in chemoattractant-stimulated neutrophils using a novel assay for active GTPases. J Biol Chem 274:13198–13204

Bielaszewska M, Fell M, Greune L, Prager R, Fruth A, Tschape H, Schmidt MA, Karch H (2004) Characterization of cytolethal distending toxin genes and expression in shiga toxin-producing *Escherichia coli* strains of non-O157 serogroups. Infect Immun 72:1812–1816

Chehab NH, Malikzay A, Appel M, Halazonetis T (2000) Chk2/hCds1 functions as a DNA damage checkpoint in G1 by stabilizing p53. Genes Dev 14:278–288

Chien CC, Taylor NS, Ge Z, Schauer DB, Young VB, Fox JG (2000) Identification of cdtB homologues and cytolethal distending toxin activity in enterohepatic *Helicobacter* spp. J Med Microbiol 49:525–534

Comayras C, Tasca C, Peres SY, Ducommun B, Oswald E, De Rycke J (1997) *Escherichia coli* cytolethal distending toxin blocks the HeLa cell cycle at the G2/M transition by preventing cdc2 protein kinase dephosphorylation and activation. Infect Immun 65:5088–5095

Cope LD, Lumbley S, Latimer JL, Stevens MK, Johnson LS, Purvén M, Munson RS, Lagergård T, Radolf J, Hansen EJ (1997) A diffusible cytotoxin of *Haemophilus ducreyi*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 94:4056–4061

Cortes-Bratti X, Chaves-Olarte E, Lagergård T, Thelestam M (1999) The cytolethal distending toxin from the chancroid bacterium *Haemophilus ducreyi* induces cell-cycle arrest in the G2 phase. J Clin Invest 103:107–115

Cortes-Bratti X, Chaves-Olarte E, Lagergård T, Thelestam M (2000) Cellular internalization of cytolethal distending toxin from *Haemophilus ducreyi*. Infect Immun 68:6903–6911

Cortes-Bratti X, Frisan T, Thelestam M (2001a) The cytolethal distending toxins induce DNA damage and cell cycle arrest. Toxicon 39:1729–1736

Cortes-Bratti X, Karlsson C, Lagergård T, Thelestam M, Frisan T (2001b) The *Haemophilus ducreyi* cytolethal distending toxin induces cell cycle arrest and apoptosis via the DNA damage checkpoint pathways. J Biol Chemy 276:5296–5302

da Silva AS, da Silva Leite D (2002) Investigation of putative CDT gene in *Escherichia coli* isolates from pigs with diarrhea. Vet Microbiol 89:195–199

Deng K, Hansen EJ (2003) A CdtA-CdtC complex can block killing of HeLa cells by *Haemophilus ducreyi* cytolethal distending toxin. Infect Immun 71:6633–6640

Deng K, Latimer JL, Lewis DA, Hansen EJ (2001) Investigation of the interaction among the components of the cytolethal distending toxin of *Haemophilus ducreyi*. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 285:609–615

Elledge SJ (1996) Cell cycle check points: preventing an identity crisis. Science 274:1664–1672

Elwell C, Chao K, Patel K, Dreyfus L (2001) *Escherichia coli* CdtB mediates cytolethal distending toxin cell cycle arrest. Infect Immun 69:3418–3422

Elwell CA, Dreyfus LA (2000) DNAase I homologous residues in CdtB are critical for cytolethal distending toxin-mediated cell cycle arrest. Mol Microbiol 37:952–963

Escalas N, Davezac N, De Rycke J, Baldin V, Mazars R, Ducommun B (2000) Study of the cytolethal distending toxin-induced cell cycle arrest in HeLa cells: involvement of the Cdc25 phosphatases. Exp Cell Res 257:206–212

Eyigor A, Dawson KA, Langlois BE, Pickett CL (1999a) Cytolethal distending toxin genes in *Campylobacter jejuni* and *Campylobacter coli* isolates: detection and analysis by PCR. J Clin Microbiol 37:1646–1650

Eyigor A, Dawson KA, Langlois BE, Pickett CL (1999b) Detection of cytolethal distending toxin activity and cdt genes in *Campylobacter* spp. isolated from chicken carcasses. Appl Environ Microbiol 65:1501–1505

Fabris AS, DiRienzo JM, Wikstrom M, Mayer MP (2002) Detection of cytolethal distending toxin activity and cdt genes in *Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans* isolates from geographically diverse populations. Oral Microbiol Immunol 17:231–238

Fox JG, Rogers AB, Whary MT, Ge Z, Taylor NS, Xu S, Horwitz BH, Erdman SE (2004) Gastroenteritis in NF-kappaB-deficient mice is produced with wild-type *Camplyobacter jejuni* but not with *C. jejuni* lacking cytolethal distending toxin despite persistent colonization with both strains. Infect Immun 72:1116–1125

Frisan T, Cortes-Bratti X, Chaves-Olarte E, Stenerlöw B, Thelestam M (2003) The *Haemophilus ducreyi* cytolethal distending toxin induces DNA double strand breaks and promotes ATM-dependent activation of RhoA. Cell Microbiol 5:695–707

Frisk A, Lebens M, Johansson C, Ahmed H, Svensson L, Ahlman K, Lagergård T (2001) The role of different protein components from the *Haemophilus ducreyi* cytolethal distending toxin in the generation of cell toxicity. Microbial Pathogens 30:313–324

Ghilardi AC, Gomes TA, Trabulsi LR (2001) Production of cytolethal distending toxin and other virulence characteristics of *Escherichia coli* strains of serogroup O86. Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz 96:703–708

Hartwell LH, Weinert TA (1989) Checkpoints: controls that ensure the order of cell cycle events. Science 246:629–634

Hassane DC, Lee RB, Mendenhall MD, Pickett CL (2001) Cytolethal distending toxin demonstrates genotoxic activity in a yeast model. Infect Immun 69:5752–5759

Hassane DC, Lee RB, Pickett CL (2003) *Campylobacter jejuni* cytolethal distending toxin promotes DNA repair responses in normal human cells. Infect Immun 71:541–545

Hickey TE, McVeigh AL, Scott DA, Michielutti RE, Bixby A, Carroll SA, Bourgeois AL, Guerry P (2000) *Campylobacter jejuni* cytolethal distending toxin mediates release of interleukin-8 from intestinal epithelial cells. Infect Immun 68:6535–6541

Jackman MR, Pines JN (1997) Cyclins and the G2/M transition. Cancer Surv 29:47–73

Janka A, Bielaszewska M, Dobrindt U, Greune L, Schmidt MA, Karch H (2003) Cytolethal distending toxin gene cluster in enterohemorrhagic Escherichia coli O157:H- and O157:H7: characterization and evolutionary considerations. Infect Immun 71:3634–3638

Johnson JR, Stell AL (2000) Extended virulence genotypes of *Escherichia coli* strains from patients with urosepsis in relation to phylogeny and host compromise. J Infect Dis 181:261–272

Johnson WM, Lior H (1987a) Response of Chinese hamster ovary cells to a cytolethal distending toxin (CDT) of *Escherichia coli* and possible misinterpretation as heat-labile (LT) enterotoxin. FEMS Microbiology Letters 43:19–23

Johnson WM, Lior H (1987b) Production of Shiga toxin and a cytolethal distending toxin (CLDT) by serogroups of *Shigella* spp. FEMS Microbiol Lett 48:235–238

Johnson WM, Lior H (1988a) A new heat-labile cytolethal distending toxin (CLDT) produced by *Campylobacter* spp. Microb Pathog 4:115–126

Johnson WM, Lior H (1988b) A new heat-labile cytolethal distending toxin (CLDT) produced by *Escherichia coli* isolates from clinical material. Microb Pathog 4:103–113

Jones MA, Totemeyer S, Maskell DJ, Bryant CE, Barrow PA (2003) Induction of proinflammatory responses in the human monocytic cell line THP-1 by *Campylobacter jejuni.* Infect Immun 71:2626–2633

Kostia S, Veijalainen P, Hirvi U, Hanninen ML (2003) Cytolethal distending toxin B gene (cdtB) homologues in taxa 2, 3 and 8 and in six canine isolates of *Helicobacter* sp. flexispira. J Med Microbiol 52:103–108

Kulkarni K, Lewis DA, Ison CA (2003) Expression of the cytolethal distending toxin in a geographically diverse collection of *Haemophilus ducreyi* clinical isolates. Sex Transm Infect 79:294–297

Lara-Tejero M, Galan JE (2000) A bacterial toxin that controls cell cycle progression as a deoxyribonuclease I-like protein. Science 290:354–357

Lara-Tejero M, Galan JE (2001) CdtA, CdtB and CdtC form a tripartite complex that is required for cytolethal distending toxin activity. Infection and Immunity 69:4358–4365

Lee RB, Hassane DC, Cottle DL, Pickett CL (2003) Interactions of *Campylobacter jejuni* cytolethal distending toxin subunits CdtA and CdtC with HeLa cells. Infect Immun 71:4883–4890

Lewis DA, Stevens MK, Latimer JL, Ward CK, Deng K, Blick R, Lumbley SR, Ison CA, Hansen EJ (2001) Characterization of *Haemophilus ducreyi* cdtA, cdtB, and cdtC mutants in in vitro and in vivo systems. Infect Immun 69:5626–5634

Li L, Sharipo A, Chaves-Olarte E, Masucci MG, Levitsky V, Thelestam M, Frisan T (2002) The *Haemophilus ducreyi* cytolethal distending toxin activates sensors of DNA damage and repair complexes in proliferating and non-proliferating cells. Cell Microbiol 4:87–99

Mainil JG, Jacquemin E, Oswald E (2003) Prevalence and identity of cdt-related sequences in necrotoxigenic *Escherichia coli*. Vet Microbiol 94:159–165

Mao X, DiRienzo JM (2002) Functional studies of the recombinant subunits of a cytolethal distending holotoxin. Cell Microbiol 4:245–255

Marques LR, Tavechio AT, Abe CM, Gomes TA (2003) Search for cytolethal distending toxin production among fecal *Escherichia coli* isolates from Brazilian children with diarrhea and without diarrhea. J Clin Microbiol 41:2206–2208

Matsuoka S, Huang M, Elledge SJ (1998) Linkage of ATM to cell cycle regulation by the chk2 protein kinase. Science 282:1893–1897

Mayer MP, Bueno L, Hansen EJ, DiRienzo JM (1999) Identification of a cytolethal distending toxin gene locus and features of a virulence-associated region in *Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans*. Infection and Immunity 67:1227–1237

Mbwana J, Ahmed HJ, Ahlman K, Sundaeus V, Dahlen G, Lyamuya E, Lagergard T (2003) Specificity of antibodies directed against the cytolethal distending toxin of *Haemophilus ducreyi* in patients with chancroid. Microb Pathogen 35:133–137

McSweeney LA, Dreyfus LA (2004) Nuclear localization of the *Escherichia coli* cytolethal distending toxin CdtB subunit. Cell Microbiol 6:447–458

Nesic D, Hsu Y, Stebbins CE (2004) Assembly and function of a bacterial genotoxin. Nature 429:429–433

Nishikubo S, Ohara M, Ueno Y, Ikura M, Kurihara H, Komatsuzawa H, Oswald E, Sugai M (2003) An N-terminal segment of the active component of the bacterial genotoxin cytolethal distending toxin B (CDTB) directs CDTB into the nucleus. J Biol Chem 278:50671–50681

Ohara M, Hayashi T, Kusunoki Y, Miyauchi M, Takata T, Sugai M (2004) Caspase-2 and caspase-7 are involved in cytolethal distending toxin-induced apoptosis in Jurkat and MOLT-4 T-cell lines. Infect Immun 72:871–879

Okeke IN, Lamikanra A, Steinruck H, Kaper JB (2000) Characterization of *Escherichia coli* strains from cases of childhood diarrhea in provincial southwestern Nigeria. J Clin Microbiol 38:7–12

Okuda J, Fukumoto M, Takeda Y, Nishibuchi M (1997) Examination of diarrheagenicity of cytolethal distending toxin: suckling mouse response to the products of the *cdt* ABC genes of *Shigella dysenteriae*. Infection and Immunity 65:428–433

Okuda J, Kurazono H, Takeda Y (1995) Distribution of the cytolethal distending toxin A gene (*cdt*A) among species of *Shigella* and *Vibrio* and cloning and sequencing of the *cdt* gene from *Shigella dysenteriae*. Microbial Pathogen 18:167–172

Pandey M, Khan A, Das SC, Sarkar B, Kahali S, Chakraborty S, Chattopadhyay S, Yamasaki S, Takeda Y, Nair GB, Ramamurthy T (2003) Association of cytolethal distending toxin locus cdtB with enteropathogenic *Escherichia coli* isolated from patients with acute diarrhea in Calcutta, India. J Clin Microbiol 41:5277–5281

Peres SY, Marches O, Daigle F, Nougayrede JP, Herault F, Tasca C, De Rycke J, Oswald E (1997) A new cytolethal distending toxin (CDT) from *Escherichia coli* producing CNF2 blocks HeLa cell division in G2/M phase. Mol Microbiol 24:1095–1107

Pickett CL, Cottle DL, Pesci EC, Bikah G (1994) Cloning, sequencing, and expression of the *Escherichia coli* cytolethal distending toxin genes. Infect Immun 62:1046–1051

Pickett CL, Lee RB, Eyigor A, Elitzur B, Fox EM, Strockbine NA (2004) Patterns of variations in *Escherichia coli* strains that produce cytolethal distending toxin. Infect Immun 72:684–690

Pickett CL, Pesci EC, Cottle DL, Russell G, Erdem AN, Zeytin H (1996) Prevalence of cytolethal distending toxin production in *Campylobacter jejuni* and relatedness of *Campylobacter* sp. cdtB gene. Infect Immun 64:2070–2078

Pickett CL, Whitehouse CA (1999) The cytolethal distending toxin family. Trends Microbiol 7:292–297

Purdy D, Buswell CM, Hodgson AE, McAlpine K, Henderson I, Leach SA (2000) Characterisation of cytolethal distending toxin (CDT) mutants of *Campylobacter jejuni*. J Med Microbiol 49:473–479

Purvén M, Falsen E, Lagergård T (1995) Cytotoxin production in 100 strains of *Haemophilus ducreyi* from different geographic locations. FEMS Microbiol Lett 129:221–224

Ren XD, Kiosses WB, Schwartz MA (1999) Regulation of small GTP-binding protein rho by cell adhesion and the cytoskeleton. EMBO J 18:578–585

Rotman G, Shiloh Y (1999) ATM: a mediator of multiple responses to genotoxic stress. Oncogene 18:6135–6144

Sanchez Y, Wong C, Thoma RS, Richman R, Wu Z, Piwnica-Worms H, Elledge SJ (1997) Conservation of the Chk1 checkpoint pathway in mammals: linkage of DNA damage to Cdk regulation through Cdc25. Science 277:1497–1501

Sandvig K, Van Deurs B (2000) Entry of Ricin and Shiga toxin into cells: molecular mechanisms and medical perspectives. EMBO J 19:5943–5950

Sato T, Koseki T, Yamato K, Saiki K, Konishi K, Yoshikawa M, Ishikawa I, Nishihara T (2002) p53-independent expression of p21(CIP1/WAF1) in plasmacytic cells during G(2) cell cycle arrest induced by *Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans* cytolethal distending toxin. Infect Immun 70:528–534

Scott DA, Kaper JB (1994) Cloning and sequencing of the genes encoding *Escherichia coli* cytolethal distending toxins. Infect Immun 62:244–251

Sert V, Cans C, Tasca C, Bret-Bennis L, Oswald E, Ducommun B, De Rycke J (1999) The bacterial cytolethal distending toxin (CDT) triggers a G2 cell cycle checkpoint in mammalian cells without preliminary induction of DNA strand breaks. Oncogene 18:6296–6304

Shenker BJ, Besack D, McKay T, Pankoski L, Zekavat A, Demuth DR (2004) *Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans* cytolethal distending toxin (Cdt): evidence that the holotoxin is composed of three subunits: CdtA, CdtB, and CdtC. J Immunol 172:410–417

Shenker BJ, Hoffmaster RH, McKay TL, Demuth DR (2000) Expression of the cytolethal distending toxin (Cdt) operon in *Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans*: evidence that CdtB protein is responsible for G2 arrest of the cell cycle in human T cells. J Immunol 165:2612–2618

Shenker BJ, Hoffmaster RH, Zekavat A, Yamaguchi N, Lally ET, Demuth DR (2001) Induction of apoptosis in human T cells by *Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans* cytolethal distending toxin is a consequence of G2 arrest of the cell cycle. J Immunol 167:435–441

Shenker BJ, McKay T, Datar S, Miller M, Chowhan R, Demuth D (1999) *Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans* immunosuppressive protein is a member of the family of cytolethal distending toxins capable of causing a G2 arrest in human T cells. J Immunol 162:4773–4680

Siciliano JD, Canman CE, Taya Y, Sakaguchi K, Appella E, Kastan MB (1997) DNA damage induces phosphorylation of the amino terminus of p53. Genes Dev 11:3471–3481

Starcic M, Johnson JR, Stell AL, van der Goot J, Hendriks HG, van Vorstenbosch C, van Dijk L, Gaastra W (2002) Haemolytic *Escherichia coli* isolated from dogs with diarrhea have characteristics of both uropathogenic and necrotoxigenic strains. Vet Microbiol 85:361–377

Stevens MK, Latimer JL, Lumbley SR, Ward CH, Cope LD, Lagergård T, Hansen EJ (1999) Characterization of a *Haemophilus ducreyi* mutant deficient in the production of the cytolethal distending toxin. Infect Immun 67:3900–3908

Sugai M, Kawamoto T, Peres SY, Ueno Y, Komatsuzawa H, Fujiwara T, Kurihara H, Suginaka H, Oswald E (1998) The cell cycle-specific growth-inhibitory factor produced by *Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans* is a cytolethal distending toxin. Infect Immun 66:5008–5019

Svensson LA, Henning P, Lagergard T (2002) The cytolethal distending toxin of *Haemophilus ducreyi* inhibits endothelial cell proliferation. Infect Immun 70:2665–2669

Tan KS, Song KP, Ong G (2002) Cytolethal distending toxin of *Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans*. Occurrence and association with periodontal disease. J Periodontal Res 37:268–272

Taylor NS, Ge Z, Shen Z, Dewhirst FE, Fox JG (2003) Cytolethal distending toxin: a potential virulence factor for *Helicobacter cinaedi*. J Infect Dis 188:1892–1897

Toth I, Herault F, Beutin L, Oswald E (2003) Production of cytolethal distending toxins by pathogenic *Escherichia coli* strains isolated from human and animal sources: establishment of the existence of a new cdt variant (Type IV). J Clin Microbiol 41:4285–4291

Whitehouse CA, Balbo PB, Pesci EC, Cottle DL, Mirabito PM, Pickett CL (1998) *Campylobacter jejuni* cytolethal distending toxin causes a G2-phase cell cycle block. Infect Immun 66:1934–1940

Wising C, Svensson LA, Ahmed HJ, Sundaeus V, Ahlman K, Jonsson IM, Molne L, Lagergard T (2002) Toxicity and immunogenicity of purified *Haemophilus ducreyi* cytolethal distending toxin in a rabbit model. Microb Pathog 33:49–62

Yamano R, Ohara M, Nishikubo S, Fujiwara T, Kawamoto T, Ueno Y, Komatsuzawa H, Okuda K, Kurihara H, Suginaka H, Oswald E, Tanne K, Sugai M (2003) Prevalence of cytolethal distending toxin production in periodontopathogenic bacteria. J Clin Microbiol 41:1391–1398

Young RS, Fortney KR, Gelfanova V, Phillips CL, Katz BP, Hood AF, Latimer JL, Munson JR RS, Hansen EJ, Spinola SM (2001) Expression of cytolethal distending toxin and hemolysin is not required for postule formation by *Haemophilus ducreyi* in human volunteers. Infection and Immunity 69:1938–1942

Young VB, Knox KA, Schauer DB (2000a) Cytolethal distending toxin sequence and activity in the enterohepatic pathogen *Helicobacter hepaticus*. Infection and Immunity 68:184–191

Young VB, Chien CC, Knox KA, Taylor NS, Schauer DB, Fox JG (2000b) Cytolethal distending toxin in avian and human isolates of *Helicobacter pullorum*. J Infect Dis 182:620–623

Young VB, Knox KA, Pratt JS, Cortez JS, Mansfield LS, Rogers AB, Fox JG, Schauer DB (2004) In vitro and in vivo characterization of *Helicobacter hepaticus* cytolethal distending toxin mutants. Infect Immun 72:2521–2527

Rev Physiol Biochem Pharmacol (2004) 152:135–164
DOI 10.1007/s10254-004-0028-2

M. Mourez

Anthrax toxins

Published online: 27 July 2004

Abstract *Bacillus anthracis*, the etiological agent of anthrax, secretes three polypeptides that assemble into toxic complexes on the cell surfaces of the host it infects. One of these polypeptides, protective antigen (PA), binds to the integrin-like domains of ubiquitously expressed membrane proteins of mammalian cells. PA is then cleaved by membrane endoproteases of the furin family. Cleaved PA molecules assemble into heptamers, which can then associate with the two other secreted polypeptides: edema factor (EF) and/or lethal factor (LF). The heptamers of PA are relocalized to lipid rafts where they are quickly endocytosed and routed to an acidic compartment. The low pH triggers a conformational change in the heptamers, resulting in the formation of cation-specific channels and the translocation of EF/LF. EF is a calcium- and calmodulin-dependent adenylate cyclase that dramatically raises the intracellular concentration of cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP). LF is a zinc-dependent endoprotease that cleaves the amino terminus of mitogen-activated protein kinase kinases (Meks). Cleaved Meks cannot bind to their substrates and have reduced kinase activity, resulting in alterations of the signaling pathways they govern. The structures of PA, PA heptamer, EF, and LF have been solved and much is now known about the molecular details of the intoxication mechanism. The in vivo action of the toxins, on the other hand, is still poorly understood and hotly debated. A better understanding of the toxins will help in the design of much-needed anti-toxin drugs and the development of new toxin-based medical applications.

Abbreviations *CMG2:* Capillary morphogenesis protein 2 · *DTA:* Diphtheria toxin A chain · *EF:* Edema factor · *EFn:* N-terminal fragment of EF · *ETx:* Edema toxin · *GR:* Glucocorticoid receptors · *GSK3β:* Glycogen synthase kinase 3β · *I domain:* Integrin-like domain · *iNOS:* Inducible nitric oxide synthase · *LF:* Lethal factor · *LFn:* N-terminal fragment of LF · *LTx:* Lethal toxin · *MAPK:* Mitogen-activated protein kinase · *Mek:* MAPK kinases · *PA:* Protective antigen · PA_{20}: 20-kDa N-terminal fragment of PA · PA_{63}: 63-kDa C-terminal fragment of PA · *TEM8:* Tumor endothelial marker 8

M. Mourez (✉)
Faculté de Médecine Vétérinaire, Département de Pathologie et Microbiologie,
Université de Montréal, Saint Hyacinthe, QC, J2S 7C6, Canada
e-mail: m.mourez@umontreal.ca · Tel.: +1-450-773-8521 · Fax: +1-450-778-8108

Introduction

Anthrax

Anthrax toxins are virulence factors of *Bacillus anthracis*, a gram-positive rod that causes anthrax. Anthrax is an epizootic disease affecting wild and domesticated herbivores (Mock and Fouet 2001; Turnbull 2002). The disease affects primarily livestock but can occasionally be transmitted to humans who come in contact with infected animals or animal products. It is often reported that anthrax was first described by Virgil as a plague affecting humans and cattle in a district of the eastern Alps (Sternbach 2003). It is also speculated that anthrax was the cause of two of the Egyptians plagues described in the Old Testament, the death of cattle and the appearance of boils. Anthrax played an important role in the history of bacteriology. *B. anthracis* was studied by Koch who used it in 1876 to prove his famous postulates. By growing the bacteria in vitro and challenging animals with the culture he was able to induce disease, disproving the theory of spontaneous generation and introducing the notion of germs. It was Koch too who observed the life cycle of *B. anthracis* for the first time and showed that the bacteria could form highly resistant spores. Anthrax was also studied by Pasteur who, by heat treatments, isolated an attenuated strain that in 1881 proved to be an effective vaccine.

Anthrax occurs when spores of *B. anthracis* gain access to host tissues. In animals this usually occurs by ingestion, whereas in humans, spores usually enter the host via a break in the skin barrier. The latter causes a cutaneous form of the disease with characteristic skin lesions (Friedlander 1999). First, a painless papule develops into a vesicle accompanied by an edema of varying intensity. After a few days the vesicle ruptures, yielding a black eschar. The coal-like appearance of the lesion gave its name to the disease, as anthrax comes from the Greek word for coal. On histology the lesion shows necrosis, lymphocyte infiltration, and edema. With antibiotic treatment the lesion usually heals spontaneously in a few weeks and leaves a limited scar. The main complication of this form of the disease is the systemic spread of the bacteria. The resulting septicemia is often fatal.

Septicemia is immediate when spores gain access to their hosts by inhalation. This causes the inhalation or pulmonary form of the disease, which is highly lethal. After a few days of initial mild symptoms including fever, cough, and malaise, inhalation anthrax takes an abrupt turn: increased respiratory distress, “shock-like” symptoms, coma, and death. A chest X-ray shows a characteristic widening of the mediastinum and pleural effusions. Inhalation anthrax is also often accompanied by acute meningitis.

Pathogenesis and role of the toxins

Regardless of the route of entry, spores are phagocytosed by macrophages where they germinate (Guidi-Rontani 2002). The bacteria, by an unknown mechanism, escape destruction and lyse the macrophages to gain access to host tissue. In its host, *B. anthracis* appears as a large encapsulated, non-motile rod often found in long chains. During infection the bacteria replicates to high titers of up to 10^9 cfu/ml of blood. This exceptional infectivity is due to two main virulence factors coded by genes present on two large plasmids, plasmids pXO1 and pXO2. Plasmid pXO2 carries genes directing the synthesis of a poly-D-glutamic acid capsule that was shown to inhibit phagocytosis of the planktonic bacteria (Makino et al. 1989). A bacteria cured of its pXO2 plasmid was isolated in the 1930s by

Sterne and shown to be avirulent and a good live vaccine (Sterne 1937). Plasmid pXO1 carries genes coding for toxins. The existence of a toxin was reported in the mid 1950s after it was observed that laboratory animals died when they were injected intravenously with clarified plasma from anthrax-infected guinea pigs dying from anthrax (Smith 2002; Smith and Keppie 1954). Subsequent intense research proved that the toxin consists of three polypeptides: protective antigen (PA), edema factor (EF) and lethal factor (LF). It was shown that these three proteins assemble into two distinct toxins with different physiological effects. A mixture of PA and EF forms edema toxin (ETx), which causes edema when injected subcutaneously in laboratory animals. A mixture of PA and LF forms lethal toxin (LTx), which causes death when injected intravenously in laboratory animals.

Several lines of evidence demonstrate that the toxins play a central role in the pathogenesis of anthrax: (1) highly purified preparations of toxins cause death and edema; (2) bacteria cured of their pXO1 plasmid or carrying a plasmid where individual toxin genes have been inactivated are dramatically less virulent (Pezard et al. 1991); (3) an immune response against toxin components and especially PA completely protects against intoxication as well as against anthrax infection; (4) during the course of infection a point is reached where antibiotics can clear bacteremia but are unable to prevent death, most likely due to the remaining circulating toxin that is unaffected by the drugs (Keppie et al. 1955). After the achievements of the 1950s and 1960s, work on anthrax toxin became dormant and was only revived in 1982 when Leppla showed that EF had adenylate cyclase activity (Leppla 1982). In the subsequent decades much work improved our knowledge of the structure, delivery, and cellular activity of the toxins (Ascenzi et al. 2002; Collier and Young 2003; Lacy and Collier 2002). Despite all this work, some molecular details of the intoxication remain unclear. Even more puzzling, the in vivo mechanism of action of the toxins is very poorly understood and subject to debate.

Anthrax as a bioweapon

In animals, once the host is dead and its carcass decays, bacteria come into contact with oxygen and sporulate. Anthrax spores are highly resistant to physical stresses and survive many years in the soil where they can infect their next host. The hardiness of the spores, the ease with which their dispersion can be achieved, and the mortality of the disease all suggest that *B. anthracis* could be used as a biowarfare agent. In 1941 the British government tested the release of anthrax spores on an island near Scotland (Christopher et al. 1997; Manchee et al. 1983). The island remained a hazard until 1986 when tons of seawater and formaldehyde were used to sterilize its soil. Militarization of anthrax was also pursued in the former Soviet Union. In 1979 an epidemic occurred near a Soviet microbiological military facility in Sverdlovsk (Abramova et al. 1993; Meselson et al. 1994). Ninety-six people were reported ill and 64 died. The authorities claimed that an outbreak in cattle was transmitted to humans by consumption of contaminated meat. However, it was later shown that an accidental release of an aerosol from the military facility was the culprit. Lastly, in October 2001 a new outbreak of inhalation anthrax occurred in the United States of America after the intentional release of spores through contaminated letters delivered to politicians and journalists. This attack resulted in five deaths from 11 confirmed cases of inhalation anthrax and 12 confirmed or suspected cases of cutaneous anthrax (Jernigan et al. 2001). Most of the deaths struck postal workers who did not open the tainted letters. This showed that the spores delivered during the attack had been weaponized and thus offered a chilling glimpse of the extent of the possibilities achieved in bioweapon engineering.

One of the challenges posed by an attack involving anthrax spores is the fact that victims who develop inhalation anthrax have symptoms that are difficult to distinguish from influenza-like illnesses. Once symptoms develop, it is often too late to undertake an effective treatment. Antibiotics can eradicate the bacteria, but the huge load of toxins can still ultimately cause death of the victim. In order to fight the toxin the only applicable course of action today is aggressive supportive care. The outbreak in 2001 showed that this approach reduced the mortality rate from nearly 100% to slightly below 50% (Jernigan et al. 2001). However, this approach would prove impossible in the case of a massive release of spores versus the limited occurrence of 2001.

Intoxication mechanism

Anthrax toxin is composed of three polypeptides: PA, EF, and LF. These three proteins are synthesized during the vegetative growth of the bacteria. In vitro expression of the genes coding for the toxin components is induced by addition of bicarbonate and a temperature of 37°C. A specific transcriptional activator, *atxA*, and a repressor, *pagR*, of the toxin genes have been isolated but a full picture of the regulation network has proved to be exquisitely more complex (Koehler 2002; Mock and Mignot 2003). Few specific details are known on the secretion mechanism of PA, EF, and LF. The polypeptides have standard signal sequences and are therefore thought to follow the general secretion pathway and be released in the extracellular milieu independently of one another.

Anthrax toxin belongs to the family of bacterial "AB" toxins. Schematically, these toxins work by the conjugated action of a cell binding B moiety, which allows the binding and translocation of an enzymatically active A moiety in the cytosol of a target cell. More specifically, anthrax toxins belong to the subgroup of binary toxins where the A and B moieties are carried by independent polypeptides. This group comprises adenosine diphosphate (ADP) ribosylating toxins like *Clostridium botulinum* C2 toxin, *C. perfringens* iota toxin, *C. spiroforme* Sb toxin, *C. difficile* ADP ribosyltransferase, and the vegetative insecticidal proteins from *Bacillus cereus*. However, anthrax toxin is (thus far) unique because it has one central B moiety, PA, which can associate with two enzymatic moieties EF and LF. The mechanism by which the toxins assemble and intoxicate cells is described below (Fig. 1).

Binding of PA to target cells

Mature PA is a 735-residue long, 83-kDa protein. The first step in the intoxication is the binding of PA to its cellular receptor. It was initially observed that a single class of proteinaceous receptors for anthrax toxin was located on the surface of many cell types. Using cross-linking experiments, an 80-kDa cellular protein was found to be associated with PA (Escuyer and Collier 1991). A decade later, a genetic approach was undertaken to find the gene coding for the receptor for the toxin (Bradley et al. 2001). First, Chinese hamster ovary (CHO)-K1 cells were chemically mutagenized and selected for resistance against a mixture of PA and a fusion protein consisting of the N-terminal domain of LF (LFn) and the catalytic domain of diphtheria toxin, DTA. This fusion protein is delivered to the cytosol by PA where DTA blocks protein synthesis. Resistant CHO cell lines were identified and found to lack a receptor for PA. Then, a complementing cDNA was identified by

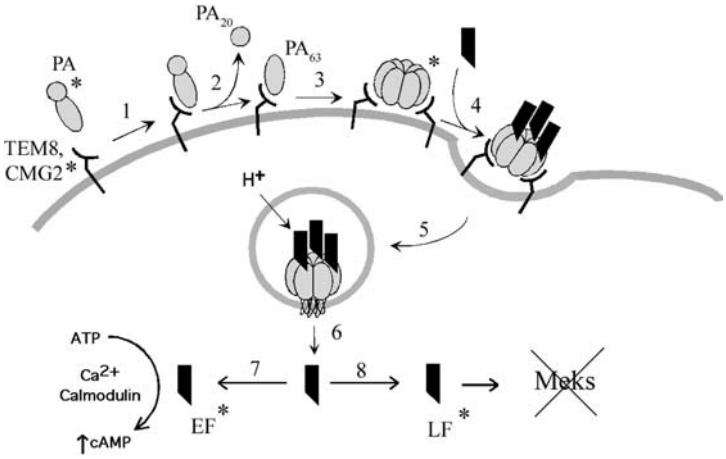


Fig. 1 Model of the intoxication mechanism of anthrax toxins. (*1*) The intoxication starts with the binding of PA to the cellular receptors tumor endothelium marker-8 (TEM8) and/or capillary morphogenesis protein 2 (CMG2). (*2*) Bound PA is cleaved by membrane endoproteases of the furin family, releasing a 20-kDa N-terminal fragment, PA_{20}. (*3*) The remaining 63-kDa C-terminal fragment, PA_{63}, oligomerizes into heptamers. (*4*) The heptamers can then associate with EF and/or LF. Alternatively, PA can be cleaved in the serum of infected hosts, possibly oligomerizing and even forming complexes with EF/LF before binding to cellular receptors (not shown). (*5*) The assembled toxic complexes are endocytosed and routed to an acidic compartment. (*6*) There, the low pH triggers a conformational change resulting in the formation of a cation-specific channel and translocation of EF/LF. (*7*) EF is a calcium- and calmodulin-dependent adenylate cyclase. (*8*) LF is a zinc-dependent endoprotease that cleaves the N-termini of Meks. The *asterisks* indicate the molecules for which a crystal structure has been solved

screening a library. The identified cDNA coded for a membrane protein named tumor endothelial marker-8 (TEM8), previously identified as an up-regulated protein in endothelial cells associated with colorectal cancer. TEM8 appears to be expressed in a broad range of tissues and apparently has three splice variants. The splice variant of TEM8 identified has a short cytoplasmic tail. The extracellular domain of TEM8 contains a von Willebrand factor type A domain, also called integrin-like domain (I-domain). These domains usually mediate protein–protein interactions involved in binding to cell adhesion molecules and extracellular matrix proteins. Consistent with this view, the extracellular domain of TEM8 was found to interact with collagen VI, a form of collagen that like TEM8 is preferentially expressed in tumor endothelium (Nanda et al. 2004). The I-domain of TEM8 is the PA-binding site (Bradley et al. 2001), and it was found that a metal ion-dependent adhesion site motif within the domain was critical for toxin binding. In integrins, this motif coordinates divalent cations like Mg^{2+} or Mn^{2+} that are important for ligand binding. The same type of binding and the implication of a carboxylate group in PA was reported (Bradley et al. 2003).

A second receptor for PA was found encoded by the capillary morphogenesis protein 2 (CMG2) (Scobie et al. 2003). Like TEM8, CMG2 is widely expressed and possesses an I-domain which is highly homologous to that of TEM8. CMG2 binds collagen IV and laminin and thus is also implicated in binding to extracellular matrix proteins. In CMG2 the binding of PA was found to be, like that of TEM8, dependent on the I-domain and its ion binding motif, although the cation specificity was slightly different between CMG2 and TEM8. The crystal structure of the I-domain of CMG2 has recently been solved (Lacy et al. 2004). The structure shows a typical I-domain fold, with a close homology to the

"open" or high affinity conformation of the αM integrin I-domain. Coordination of the metal ion was structurally similar in the two molecules.

Toxin assembly and endocytosis

Once bound to a receptor, PA can be cleaved by furin or a furin-like membrane endoprotease (Gordon et al. 1995). Furin belongs to a class of calcium-dependent serine endoproteases, the prohormone–proprotein convertases. Although furin is prominently found intracellularly, PA cleavage, however, occurs at the cell surface. On polarized cells, receptor and furin are both localized on the basolateral surface (Beauregard et al. 1999). The structure of furin with a substrate-derived inhibitor has recently been solved (Henrich et al. 2003). This structure helps to elucidate the stringent specificity of this protease towards the sequence R-X-K/R-R. In PA, this sequence is found in the N-terminus, and cleavage results in the release of a N-terminal 20-kDa fragment (PA_{20}). This fragment is not thought to play a further role in the intoxication. The remaining 63-kDa fragment (PA_{63}) oligomerizes quickly into a heptamer (Milne et al. 1994), a step that PA_{20} sterically prevented. Cleavage of PA at the normal furin cleavage site can also be achieved in solution using moderate amounts of trypsin (Novak et al. 1992). After cleavage in solution, however, PA_{63} will not oligomerize spontaneously as is the case on cells. Oligomerization in solution requires the addition of ligand or separation of PA_{63} from PA_{20} by running cleaved PA on an anion exchange chromatography column (Miller et al. 1999). Similarly, cleavage of PA has been reported to occur in vivo in the serum of animals (Brossier et al. 2000; Ezzell and Abshire 1992). In that case it is unclear, however, if PA_{63} is oligomerizing in the serum, and if so, whether this occurs with or without the presence of EF, LF, or both.

Once assembled into a heptamer, PA_{63} can associate with EF and LF. This yields the fully assembled toxic complex. It was found that the PA-binding domains of LF or EF were in the ~250 residue-long N-terminal domains termed LFn or EFn, respectively (Arora and Leppla 1993). It was demonstrated that the stoichiometry of the complex at saturating concentrations of enzymatic moieties (either EF or LF) is three ligand molecules per heptamer (Mogridge et al. 2002a). Moreover, PA_{63} mutants unable to oligomerize could not bind LFn, whereas a ternary complex of a PA_{63} dimer associated with one molecule of LFn could be purified (Mogridge et al. 2002b). These data suggest that there are seven binding sites for EF/LF binding on the heptamer located across the boundary between monomers. The unexpected stoichiometry is explained by the fact that binding to one site of the heptamer sterically blocks the adjacent ones, therefore only allowing a maximum of three molecules bound per heptamer (see below and Cunningham et al. 2002). It is still unclear, however, if both EF and LF molecules can bind to one heptamer of PA_{63}.

Regardless of whether it associates with EF and/or LF, it was shown that proteolytic cleavage of PA triggers and is absolutely necessary for the internalization of PA (Beauregard et al. 2000). This led to the hypothesis that the oligomerization process triggered a cell event leading to endocytosis. Consistent with this hypothesis it was observed that only PA_{63} oligomers could be endocytosed (Liu and Leppla 2003).

Prior to cleavage, PA bound to its receptor is found in detergent-soluble parts of the plasma membrane, but after cleavage it is rapidly relocalized to detergent-insoluble parts, also termed lipid rafts (Abrami et al. 2003). It was found that the clustering of anthrax toxin receptors, either via PA_{63} oligomerization or using an antibody, causes its relocalization into lipid rafts. As monomers, receptor molecules are taken up slowly, but upon clustering

the endocytosis is rapid, caveolae-independent, and clathrin-dependent. These molecules are therefore ideal receptors for PA. By associating with a receptor that is slowly endocytosed as a monomer, PA can stay at the cell surface until it is able to oligomerize. Once oligomerization is achieved, then it can rapidly proceed with the intoxication. Indeed, even a PA mutant that cannot be cleaved by furin can be internalized when clustering is triggered using an antibody. The mechanism for relocalization and triggering of endocytosis are unclear. The cytoplasmic tail of TEM8 was found not to be involved in this process, as even an anchored version of the extracellular domain of TEM8 was functional in an intoxication assay (Liu and Leppla 2003).

After endocytosis it was demonstrated by several approaches that the toxic complex is delivered to an acidic compartment. Treatment of cells with lysosomotropic amines can block LTx intoxication (Friedlander 1986). Similarly, treatment with chloroquine, which prevents endosome acidification, prevented ETx intoxication (Gordon et al. 1988). Lastly, treatment with bafilomycin, which inhibits the vacuolar ATPase proton pump and therefore acidification, blocks LTx action (Menard et al. 1996).

Translocation of EF/LF

It was observed that PA_{63} heptamers could form pores in planar lipid bilayers when shifted to a low pH (Blaustein et al. 1989).These channels were found to be cation selective. Indeed, a K^+ efflux could be measured from liposomes incubated with PA_{63} heptamers at low pH (Koehler and Collier 1991). Later, the ability to form channels was also observed on cells by measuring an efflux of $^{86}Rb^+$ when cells are incubated in the presence of PA_{63} heptamers at low pH (Milne and Collier 1993). In the latter experiments, the optimal pH for release was found to be approximately pH 5 and negligible above pH 6. However, in planar lipid bilayers, channel formation could be measured around pH 7. The reason for this discrepancy is unclear. Collectively these experiments suggest that once PA_{63} heptamers reach the endosome they form a channel.

Channel formation in the endosome is associated with translocation of EF/LF, but the mechanism is unclear. It was shown that LFn could direct the translocation of heterologous polypeptides fused to its N or C termini when cells were incubated with a mixture of PA and the chimera (Arora and Leppla 1993; Milne et al. 1995). Thus, LFn seems to encompass all the information necessary for translocation, and the remaining part of the polypeptide is passively transported along. Moreover, since both N-terminal and C-terminal fusions are equally translocated, there does not seem to be directionality in the translocation process.

By incubating cells on ice with trypsin-activated PA and radiolabelled LFn, complexes of LFn bound to PA_{63} heptamers can be formed but, because of the low temperature, remain on the cell surface. When those complexes are then exposed to low pH, it was shown that the radiolabelled ligand becomes inaccessible to a protease added extracellularly, and thus has been translocated into the cytosol (Wesche et al. 1998). Translocation is therefore observed in conditions triggering pore formation, whether in endosomes or on the cell surface. All known PA mutants specifically impaired in translocation are also deficient in pore formation (Mourez et al. 2003; Sellman et al. 2001b). These data led to the hypothesis that translocation occurs through the channel of the pores formed by PA_{63} heptamers. Strikingly, it was observed that pore formation on cells was blocked by addition of LF or LFn (Zhao et al. 1995). The size of the channel formed by PA_{63} heptamers was assessed

in planar lipid bilayers and shown to be around 12 Å (Blaustein and Finkelstein 1990). This implies that the ligands cannot be transported in a folded state. The translocation of fusions between LFn and dihydrofolate reductase (DHFR) or between LFn and DTA was studied in the cell surface assay described above. It was shown that translocation was blocked in the presence of the ligands of the heterologous parts of the DHFR and DTA chimeras, namely methotrexate and adenine, respectively (Wesche et al. 1998). This suggests that, indeed, stabilization of folding prevents translocation and that low pH must trigger some partial or complete unfolding of the ligands bound to the heptamers. Translocation of unfolded enzymatic domains via a cell-binding domain forming a pore has also been observed in other AB toxins like diphtheria toxin (Oh et al. 1999) and *C. botulinum* neurotoxin (Koriazova and Montal 2003). However, the nature of the "channel" in those cases is thought to be quite different from that of the heptamer of PA_{63}.

Since enzymatic moieties are translocated unfolded, refolding must occur in the cytosol where chaperones might be involved. In a recent report the role of such a cytosolic chaperone, Hsp90, in the toxicity of C2 toxin was tested (Haug et al. 2003). It was found that Hsp90 is necessary for translocation and activity of C2. It was also necessary for the activity of iota toxin but not for anthrax lethal toxin. The reason for the discrepancy is unclear but could be due to the use of a different cell type in the LTx assay or to true differences. It is interesting to note that diphtheria toxin, another AB toxin with ADP ribosyltransferase activity, was also shown to require Hsp90 (Ratts et al. 2003). Therefore, one possibility might be that Hsp90 is specifically involved in the translocation/refolding of ADP ribosyltransferase toxins.

There are, however, numerous questions challenging such a model for the translocation step. Since the lumen of the heptamer can only accommodate an unfolded polypeptide, or at the most a helix, one has to assume that only one polypeptide can be translocated at a time. The fact that up to three ligand molecules can be bound per heptamer raises the question as to how these three molecules can be sequentially translocated. It is easier to envision the translocation of multiple molecules in a model where the ligands are translocated on the sides of the heptamer instead of through its lumen. Consistent with this hypothesis, it was observed that LF and EF at low pH are able to destabilize and/or insert into lipid bilayers by themselves (Kochi et al. 1994a; Wang et al. 1996; Wang et al. 1997). This suggests that they might participate in their own translocation. Another experiment yielded an intriguing result about the translocation ability of PA: a polycationic tail fused to DTA could promote its translocation in the cytosol of cultured cells in a PA-dependent manner (Blanke et al. 1996). The efficiency of translocation was less than that of the LFn–DTA fusions, and the translocation was not inhibited by the presence of LFn. One model to explain this peculiar result would be that the polycationic tail allows DTA to interact with the anionic phospholipids of the membrane and get translocated at the interface with PA_{63} heptamers when pH becomes acidic. Alternatively, the cationic tail could target DTA to the lumen of the heptamers.

Enzymatic activity

After translocation, the enzymatic moieties have access to the cytoplasm, where they can exert their activity. Because the edema response induced by ETx was reminiscent of that induced by cholera toxin, it was hypothesized and then shown that EF, like cholera toxin, can increase the intracellular cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP) concentration

(Leppla 1982). In fact, it was shown that EF is itself an adenylate cyclase strictly dependent on the presence of calcium and calmodulin. *Bordetella pertussis* also produces a highly homologous adenylate cyclase toxin. EF has a specific activity 1,000-fold higher than that of mammalian calmodulin-activated adenylate cyclases, but because bacteria lack calmodulin, this high activity is restricted to the cytosol of eukaryotic cells.

The enzymatic activity of LF remained a mystery for a long time. The first clue came when a zinc-binding motif, HEXXH, present in all zinc-dependent endoproteases was recognized in LF (Klimpel et al. 1994; Kochi et al. 1994b). The only substrates of LF identified to date are mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) kinases (Meks) (Duesbery et al. 1998; Vitale et al. 1998). LF cleaves all known Meks (Mek 1 to Mek 7) except Mek 5 (Duesbery et al. 1998; Pellizzari et al. 1999; Vitale et al. 2000; Vitale et al. 1998). The cleavage site is located in the N terminus of Meks in a proline-rich region. As a consequence of the cleavage, Meks are unable to dock with their substrate MAPK. Furthermore, it was recently shown that this cleavage also reduces the intrinsic kinase activity of Meks (Chopra et al. 2003). The N-terminal region of Meks is not the only region recognized by LF, since point mutations in a conserved C-terminal region could prevent proteolysis without affecting kinase activity (Chopra et al. 2003).

Structural studies

The structure of PA was solved both as a monomer and as a trypsin-activated, purified soluble heptamer of PA_{63} (Petosa et al. 1997). The soluble heptamer structure is thought to be identical to that of the heptamer assembled on the cell surface prior to endocytosis. Hence it was termed "prepore" to differentiate it from the structure of the membrane-inserted "pore" at low pH. There is little structural difference between the two forms of PA_{63} in the monomer and the prepore. This confirms the idea that the only role of PA_{20} is to sterically prevent oligomerization of PA_{63}. PA has four domains (Fig. 2). Mutational studies have helped define the function of each of the domains which are described below. Recently, a global cysteine scanning study of PA_{63} has helped to give a global view of the structure–function relationships in PA, summarizing most of these studies (Fig. 3, Mourez et al. 2003).

Domain 4 (residues 595–735) starts with a hairpin and helix connecting this otherwise independent domain to the rest of the molecule. The rest of the fold of domain 4 is that of a β-sandwich with an immunoglobulin fold. Mutations in domain 4 affect the binding of PA to target cells (Brossier et al. 1999; Rosovitz et al. 2003; Varughese et al. 1999) and monoclonal antibodies binding to this domain affect PA binding (Little et al. 1996). This proves that domain 4 is the receptor-binding domain. To date the receptor and receptor-binding domain have not been implicated in any intoxication mechanism other than binding on cells (Bradley et al. 2001) and, possibly, triggering endocytosis (Abrami et al. 2003). It would be interesting to assess if the receptor and domain 4 are involved additionally in pore formation and translocation.

Domain 3 (residues 488–595) has a ferredoxin-like fold. In a random mutagenesis approach undertaken to elucidate the function of this domain, inactive mutants were found to be unable to form heptamers (Mogridge et al. 2001). The primary role of domain 3 therefore seems to be the oligomerization of PA_{63}. In this hypothesis, residues of domain 3 (centered on aspartate 512) on one face of PA_{63} would make one oligomerization interface. The complementary interface would be formed by a patch of residues from do-

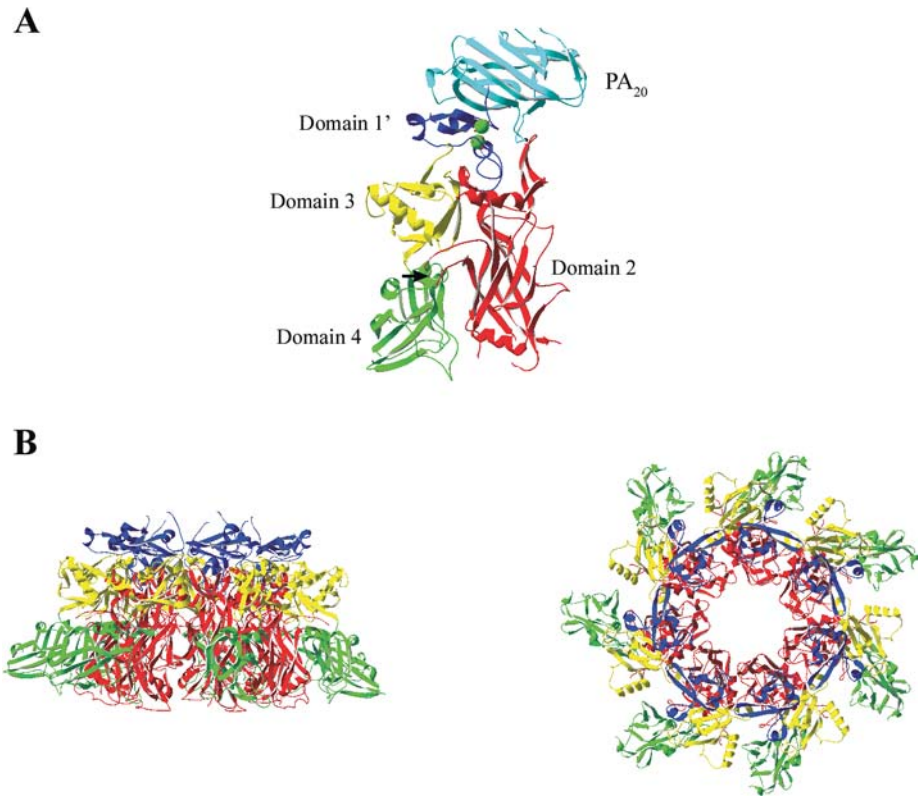


Fig. 2A, B Crystal structure of PA. Ribbon representation of the crystal structure of (**A**) PA and (**B**) the PA_{63}-soluble heptamer believed to represent the structure of the prepore (the membrane-bound heptamer before its encounter with low pH) (Petosa et al. 1997). The four domains are represented with different colors: domain 1 consists of PA_{20} in *cyan* and domain 1′ in *blue*; domain 2 in *red*; domain 3 in *yellow* and domain 4 in *green*. **A** The two calcium ions bound in domain 1′ are represented as *green spheres* and the *arrow* indicates the flexible loop of PA_{63} that inserts into the membrane at low pH. **B** Side view (*left*) of the prepore (the lipid bilayer would be at the bottom of this view) and top view (*right*) of the prepore (the lipid bilayer would be at the back of this view). The structure images in this figure and Figs. 3 and 4 were generated using Swiss-PDBviewer 3.7 (http://www.expasy.org/spdbv/)

mains 1 and 2 (centered on lysine 199 and arginines 468 and 470) on the other face of PA_{63}. Indeed, mutations of the latter residues also prevent oligomerization (Mogridge et al. 2002b). Furthermore, by mixing PA mutants where one or the other oligomerization faces have been mutated, stable dimers can assemble through the only intact interface and be purified (Mogridge et al. 2002b).

Domain 2 (residues 249 to 488) has a β-barrel core structure and makes up most of the lumen in the prepore structure. Domain 2 was shown to possess a chymotrypsin-sensitive region critical in the translocation process (Novak et al. 1992). The deletion of two phenylalanines in this region was also found to prevent translocation (Singh et al. 1994). This region, corresponding to the loop joining the $2\beta2$ and $2\beta3$ strands, is disordered and unresolved in the PA structures (Petosa et al. 1997), suggesting that it is highly flexible. By analogy with the structure of the pore-forming toxin α-hemolysin of *Staphylococcus aureus*, which is also a heptamer that forms channels in membranes (Song et al. 1996), it

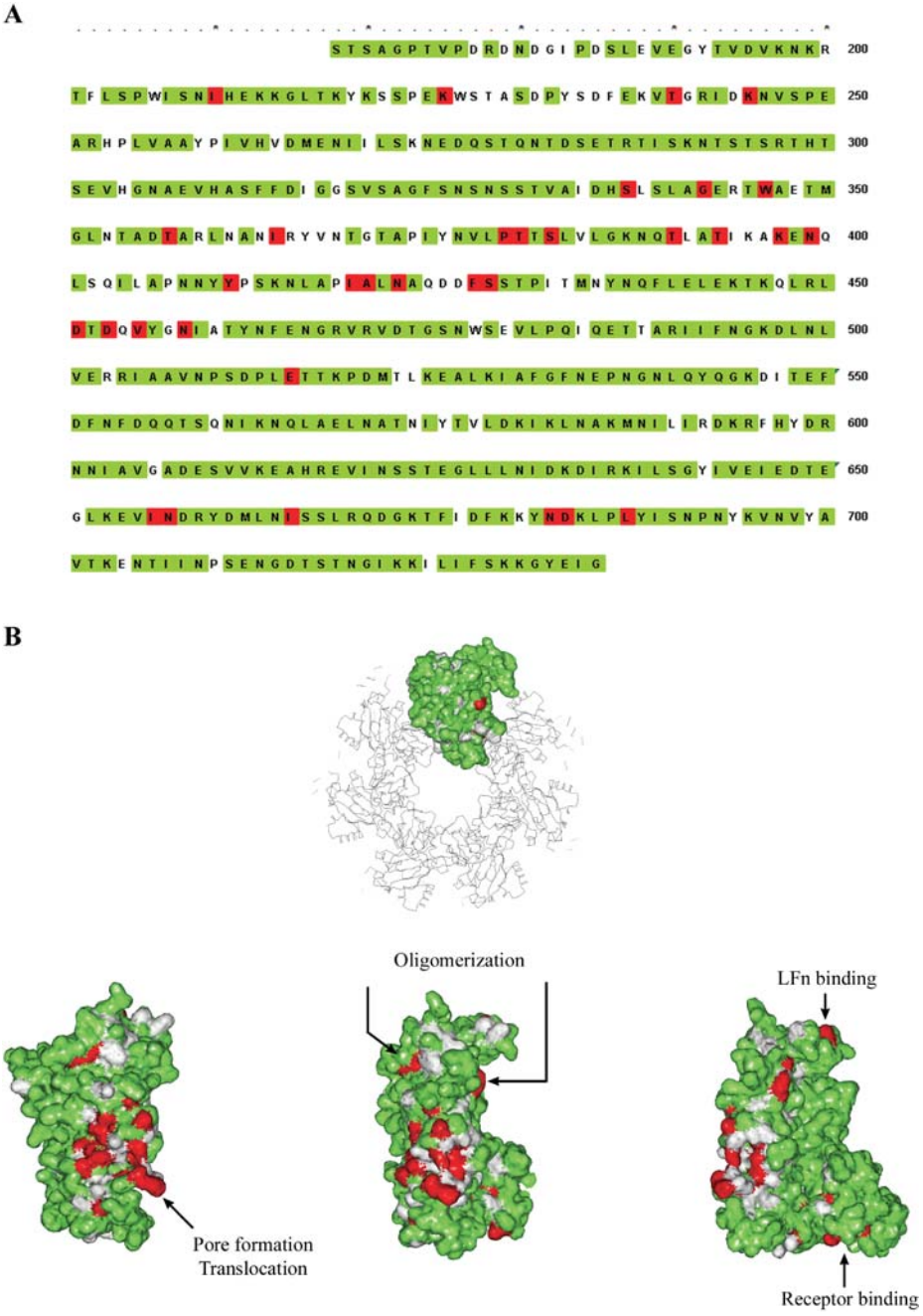


Fig. 3A, B Global structure–function study of PA_{63}. Summary of the results of the cysteine scanning experiment performed on PA_{63} (Mourez et al. 2003). **A** Sequence of PA_{63}. **B** Molecular surface of a PA_{63} monomer isolated from the heptamer, top view (*top*) of the heptamer with the highlighted PA_{63} monomer; and three views of the monomer: a left-side view (*bottom left*), a center view (*bottom middle*) and a right side view (*bottom right*), as viewed from inside the lumen of the heptamer. Both in **A** and **B**, the residues for which changes to a cysteine resulted in an unstable, active, or inactive mutant are colored *white*, *green*, and *red*, respectively. The functions affected by mutations of the red residues are indicated in **B**

was hypothesized that this flexible loop might insert into membranes at low pH (Petosa et al. 1997). The loops of all the monomers would then form a β-barrel channel in the membrane. The structure of the pore form of the heptamer remains elusive, but various approaches were developed to test this hypothesis. By replacing each residue of the flexible loop with cysteine the accessibility of the mutants at low pH can be tested with a thiol-reactive membrane impermeant reagent (Benson et al. 1998). The reagent used adds a charge, restricting the conductance of the channel that can be measured in planar lipid bilayers. This showed that the loop inserts into the membrane and structures itself as two β-strands of alternating hydrophilic and hydrophobic residues. This is the typical structure of the strands of a β-barrel.

The insertion of the flexible loops would require a major rearrangement in the rest of domain 2 and presumably the unfolding of a Greek-key motif consisting of four β-strands (Petosa et al. 1997). To test this hypothesis the cysteine mutagenesis and accessibility study was extended beyond the flexible loop (Nassi et al. 2002). This showed that the barrel structure extends beyond the flexible loop and confirms the existence of a major rearrangement in the rest of domain 2 upon insertion. The structural rearrangement taking place upon pore formation is likely responsible for the sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS) resistance of the pore, whereas the prepore is SDS sensitive (Miller et al. 1999; Milne et al. 1994).

The identification of the residues that provoke this conformational change upon a drop in pH, the "pH trigger," remains elusive. It was postulated that histidine residues, which have a protonation state likely to change between pH 7 and pH 5, might be involved (Petosa et al. 1997). In domain 2, histidines are located at the top of the flexible loop or in a loop with a pH-sensitive mobility. No confirmation that these residues are indeed part of the pH trigger has been obtained.

In the cysteine-scanning study (Mourez et al. 2003), most of the mutations that abolished the activity of PA were found in domain 2 and clustered in the region forming the lumen of the prepore. This region seems therefore peculiarly important. Most of these mutants were unable to make pores and translocate LFn (M. Mourez and R.J. Collier, unpublished data; Mourez et al. 2003). Mutants in some charged residues in the lumen of the prepore mutations were shown to have similar effects (Sellman et al. 2001b). Some of these mutations were found to have a dominant-negative effect, with likely as little as one mutant molecule per heptamer being enough to block the activity of the whole heteroheptamer (Sellman et al. 2001a). In the cysteine scanning study, dominant-negative mutants were found only in domain 2 and clustered in the 2β6 strand, 2β7 strand, and the 2β10–2β11 loop (Mourez et al. 2003). All these residues are located in the lumen and are solvent accessible in the prepore structure. This suggests that the lumen, in addition to the flexible loop, is critically important in pore formation/translocation. The dominance of these mutations suggests that the pore formation process involves a structural rearrangement where some residues of the lumen of the prepore find themselves making contacts in the pore structure or in a transition state. This again suggests that the conformational change taking place upon lowering the pH is extensive.

The N-terminal domain, domain 1 (residues 1–249), contains the furin cleavage site at position 167. The domain has therefore two subdomains, PA_{20} (residues 1–167) and domain 1′ (residues 167–249). Domain 1′ has two calcium ions bound through a modified EF-hand motif. These calcium ions are tightly bound and most likely play a structural role (Gao-Sheridan et al. 2003; Gupta et al. 2003). Consistent with these results, most of the unstable cysteine mutants mapped to the calcium binding sites (Mourez et al. 2003).

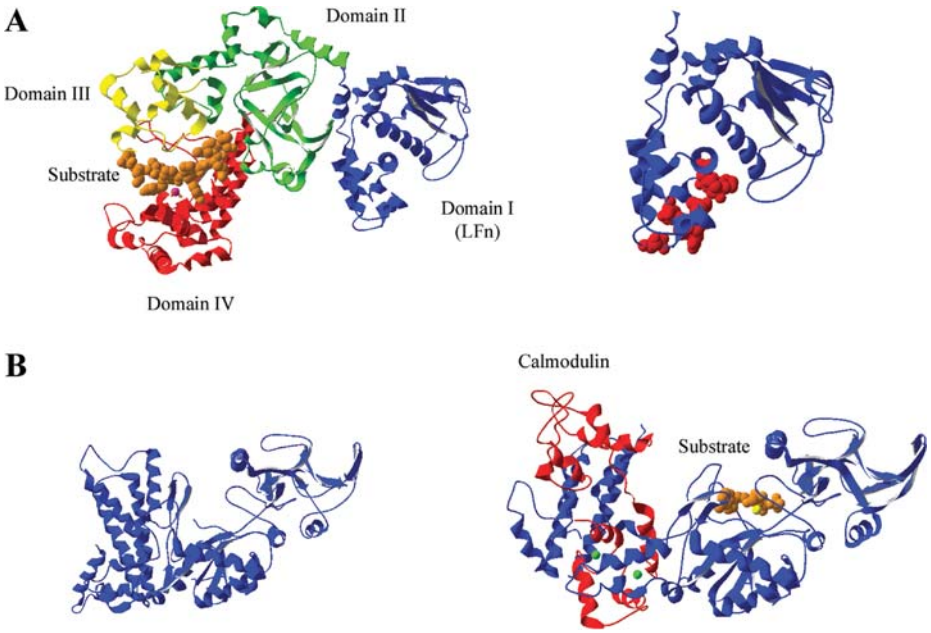


Fig. 4A, B Crystal structure of LF and the catalytic domain of EF. **A** Ribbon representation of the crystal structure of LF bound to an optimized peptide substrate (Turk et al. 2004): whole molecule (*left*) and close up view of the structure of LFn in the same orientation (*right*). The four domains are represented by different colors: domain I in *blue*, domain II in *green*, domain III in *yellow*, and domain IV in *red*. The zinc atom is represented as a *pink sphere* and the substrate as *orange spheres*. The residues that, when changed to an alanine, cause the resulting mutants to be unable to bind to PA (Lacy et al. 2002) are represented by *red spheres*. **B** Ribbon representation of the crystal structure of the catalytic domain of EF alone (*left*, Drum et al. 2002) or bound to calmodulin and a high-affinity inhibitor (*right*, Shen et al. 2004). EF is represented in *blue* and calmodulin in *red*. The calcium atoms bound to calmodulin are represented as *green spheres*, the divalent cation bound to EF as a *yellow sphere* and the inhibitor, adefovir diphosphate, as *orange spheres*

In addition to this structural role, domain 1′ is also important in PA_{63} oligomerization (Mogridge et al. 2002b) and is the site of interaction of PA with its ligand (Chauhan and Bhatnagar 2002; Cunningham et al. 2002). The release of PA_{20} uncovers a surface that was buried before. Critical residues in the binding of LFn were found by mutating this surface (Cunningham et al. 2002). By combining oligomerization mutants in order to make PA_{63} dimers together with the mutations in domain 1′ it was possible to define the residues involved in the unique ligand binding site of a PA_{63} dimer (Cunningham et al. 2002). This showed that the EF/LF binding sites are located across the monomer–monomer interface and are close to one another. Binding on one site will therefore likely sterically prevent binding on the adjacent ones, and gives a rationale for the odd stoichiometry of three ligand molecules bound per heptamer (Mogridge et al. 2002b).

The structure of LF was solved in the presence of a Mek 2-derived peptide substrate (Pannifer et al. 2001) as well as with an optimized substrate or inhibitors (Panchal et al. 2004; Turk et al. 2004). LF has four domains (Fig. 4). The N-terminal domain, domain I or LFn, corresponds to residues 1–263. The first 27 residues were not resolved in the structure, but truncation of up to residue 36 has no impact on binding or translocation (Lacy et al. 2002); therefore, this region is not believed to have major functional importance. LFn is composed of a bundle of 12 α-helices and 6 β-strands making two sheets on

one face of the molecule. Conserved residues between EFn and LFn could be mapped on the surface of LFn (Lacy et al. 2002). The conserved residues clustered to a patch of LFn that by mutagenesis studies was shown to be the PA binding site (Lacy et al. 2002). Domain II (residues 263–550, excluding residues 300–386) is the only part of LF having structural similarities with other proteins. It resembles the fold of the ADP ribosyltransferase of the vegetative insecticidal toxin of *B. cereus*. Domain III (residues 3000–386) is an α-helical bundle made up of four imperfect sequence repeats from a feature of domain II. It is inserted in domain II, and there is evidence that it has functional significance (Arora and Leppla 1993), possibly helping in substrate recognition. The C-terminal domain, domain IV (residues 551–777), has the zinc protease site. The active site is similar to that of the thermolysin proteases family with the HEXXH motif located in an α-helix neighboring a four-stranded β-sheet. The substrate binding site is a long cleft formed by domain II and parts of domains III and IV (Tonello et al. 2003; Turk et al. 2004). In the original structure the peptide substrate was not bound in a productive conformation, but a later structure shows a peptide substrate bound in a correct orientation (Tonello et al. 2003; Turk et al. 2004). Peculiarly, the folds of domains IV and I (LFn) are highly similar, except that catalytic residues (and especially the HEFGH motif) have been mutated in the LFn structure (to a YEIFGK sequence). This modularity based on duplication and mutations suggests an interesting evolution scenario (Lacy and Collier 2002).

The crystal structure of the catalytic C-terminal portion of EF (residues 291–800, which excludes EFn) was solved alone, in the presence of calmodulin, and in the presence of calmodulin and a noncyclizable analog of ATP (Fig. 4 and Drum et al. 2002). Since EFn and LFn have sequence homologies and are functionally identical, it is believed that they are structurally related, and therefore a complete picture of EF could be modeled. Contrary to expectations, there are no significant homologies with mammalian adenylate cyclases. The structures show the conformational changes arising upon binding of calmodulin. This is the first insight into how calmodulin modulates a biologically active substrate. An α-helical domain undergoes a 15-Å translation and 30° rotation leading to the activation of the catalytic site. The catalytic site has a single metal ion coordinating the substrate and positioning it for the catalytic action of histidine 351. This contrasts with the mechanism of mammalian adenylate cyclases, which do not possess catalytic histidines and use a second metal ion instead. Calmodulin itself is bound in an extended conformation that is also different from previous structures obtained with peptides derived from mammalian adenylate cyclases. These differences might explain the enhanced activity of EF compared to mammalian counterparts.

The structure of an assembled toxic complex has yet to be obtained. However, the structure of LF, the structure of the prepore, and the identification of the binding sites on those structures opens the possibility to compute molecular models of an assembled toxic complex. These models can then be tested by measuring molecular distances, for instance using fluorescence resonance energy transfer. One such study was recently published (Croney et al. 2003) and it is expected that more of these studies will yield a complete and possibly dynamic picture of the interactions between PA_{63} heptamers and their bound substrates.

In vivo effects of anthrax toxins

Targeting of macrophages by LTx and death by inflammatory shock

After many unsuccessful attempts at finding a cell line with a measurable phenotype when treated with LTx, it was noted that some murine macrophage-like cell lines were lysing after 2 h in contact with LTx (Friedlander 1986). It was also noted that the sensitivity of these macrophages was correlated to that of the mice strains from where the cell line originated (Hanna et al. 1993). This led to the hypothesis that macrophages play a central role in anthrax pathogenesis. Reports that sublytic doses of exposure to LTx triggered release of pro-inflammatory cytokines by sensitive macrophages offered a possible explanation for their role during infection (Hanna et al. 1993): low doses of LTx would induce in the macrophages a cytokine build up which would ultimately be released upon lysis and induce a shock. This is consistent with the observation of "shock-like" death observed in animals challenged intravenously by LTx (Smith et al. 1955). Consequently, the "macrophage hypothesis" has been cited in many reviews and focused the attention of research groups on macrophages and on cytokine expression modulation by LTx. However, conflicting reports soon emerged.

What is the relevance of macrophage lysis by LTx?

When the cellular targets of LF, Meks, became known, it also became apparent that there was no difference in their cleavage between "sensitive" and "resistant" macrophages (Salles et al. 2003; Watters et al. 2001), raising the possibility that macrophage lysis is due to unspecific mechanisms rather than the direct action of the toxin. Moreover, the susceptibilities of animals to LTx and that of their macrophages is not perfectly correlated as (1) strains of inbred mice that harbor "resistant" and "sensitive" macrophages are both sensitive to LTx with only relatively minor differences; and (2) some resistant macrophages come from species, such as rats or humans, that are sensitive to LTx and anthrax (Cui et al. 2004; Kim et al. 2003; Popov et al. 2002a).

Three linked loci, Ltxs1–3, have been implicated in the difference of resistance of macrophages from resistant (C57BL/6, DBA/2J) versus sensitive (C3H/HeJ, BALB/c) strains of inbred mice (McAllister et al. 2003; Watters et al. 2001). The only gene positively identified from these loci is *kif1C*, encoded in Ltxs1 (Watters et al. 2001). Kif1c is a ubiquitously expressed kinesin-like motor protein likely involved in the intracellular transport of some molecular cargo. A human homolog of Kif1C has been shown to be involved in the retrograde transport from Golgi to the endoplasmic reticulum, but the nature of the cargo is unknown. Consistent with a role of molecular shuttling in LTx sensitivity, brefeldin A treatment increased sensitivity of "resistant" macrophages to LTx and correlated with Kif1c relocalization (Watters et al. 2001). However, no direct link between Kif1c and LF activity can be made at this time, and therefore the role of Kif1c in the lysis phenomenon strengthens the idea that lysis is only a peripheral event during LTx action.

Recent reports have shown that destruction of macrophages might not be restricted to the sensitive cell lines. LTx was shown to induce the apoptosis of macrophages when these cells are activated by lipopolysaccharide (LPS) (Park et al. 2002). Another study also found the hallmarks of apoptosis in LTx-treated macrophages (Popov et al. 2002b). Such an event might occur in vivo as caspase inhibitors were reported to have protective

effects during infection of mice with *B. anthracis* (Popov et al. 2004). Another group reported that macrophage lysis by LTx could be triggered in "resistant" macrophages by addition of peptidoglycan or poly-D-glutamic acid capsule (Kim et al. 2003). The authors propose that the gain of sensitivity is due to tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α release by these components and an autocrine effect. However, in this study lysis was found to be consistent with necrosis but not with apoptosis. Regardless of this discrepancy with the previous reports, collectively these studies revive the hypothesis that macrophage destruction is a relevant phenomenon in anthrax.

In order to understand the extent of the impact of LTx treatment on macrophages and how lysis/apoptosis/necrosis could be triggered, one group undertook a transcriptional profiling experiment using DNA array (Tucker et al. 2003). This approach showed the differential regulation upon exposure to toxin of a number of genes controlled by glycogen synthase kinase 3 β (GSK3β). This signaling pathway is not well studied in macrophages but is better understood in the context of embryonic development, especially that of the zebrafish. Thus, among other experiments designed to confirm LTx action on the GSK3β pathway, the authors challenged zebrafish embryos with LTx. Developmental abnormalities appeared which correlated well with what would be expected from impairment of GSK3β activity. More work is needed in order to ascertain the identities and roles of the genes regulated by GSK3β that could be implicated in LTx action on macrophages or other host cell types. It is interesting to note that among the genes identified in this study were genes coding for kinesins.

The picture of LTx action on macrophages is even more complex than previously thought. A recent report showed that sensitive macrophages can be "desensitized" to lytic challenge with LTx by prior incubation with sublytic amounts of toxin (Salles et al. 2003). This "toxin-induced resistance" might represent an example of the adaptability of macrophages during infections. On the molecular level the authors showed that despite proteolysis of Mek 1 and Mek 2, the sublytic challenge induced a recovery of downstream targets of these kinases by an unknown compensatory mechanism. The authors speculate that this compensation might account for the observed resistance. Indeed, the authors showed that the kinetic of Mek cleavage was much faster in sensitive cell lines compared to resistant ones. Thus, resistance to LTx might be due to a slower kinetic of Mek cleavage, giving more time to allow a compensatory mechanism to establish itself. Interestingly, this is consistent with a careful study of the kinetics of LF cleavage performed with a model substrate (Tonello et al. 2003). This study suggests that because of differences in the structure of their cleavage sites, Meks are likely to be cleaved non-uniformly, implying that LF will have a considerably variable activity in different cell types and that even in one cell type the activity is likely to differ, depending on environmental signals. These phenomena might contribute to the discrepancies between the studies performed with LTx and macrophages.

Does LTx induce or suppress inflammatory responses?

Contrary to the previous report described above (Hanna et al. 1993), in recent years many groups reported that LTx did not induce pro-inflammatory cytokines either in cells or in animals (Erwin et al. 2001; Moayeri et al. 2003; Moayeri and Leppla 2004; Pellizzari et al. 1999; Popov et al. 2002a). In fact, the induction of such cytokines and the release of nitric oxide in response to classical stimuli like LPS or interferon (IFN)-γ were inhibited

(Pellizzari et al. 1999). Furthermore, if the hypothesis of the release of pro-inflammatory cytokines were to be true, inhibiting or preventing the inflammatory response during LTx challenge should decrease the effects of the toxin. However, an irreversible inhibitor of the inducible nitric oxide synthase (iNOS), which decreases the inflammation response, increased LTx sensitivity of mice (McAllister et al. 2003); and strains of "knock-out" mice for the receptor of IL-1 or iNOS were shown to be more susceptible to *B. anthracis* (Kalns et al. 2002). Inhibition of pro-inflammatory cytokine release in human peripheral blood mononuclear cells stimulated by *B. anthracis* cell wall was also reported (Popov et al. 2002a). Recently, it was shown that LTx had an inhibitory effect on IFN-regulatory factor 3 activation by LPS (Dang et al. 2004). Since this regulatory factor is essential in type I interferon expression during LPS activation, this could explain the inhibitory effects of LTx on cytokine expression.

It was also shown that LTx could inhibit glucocorticoid receptor (GR) function in transfected cells and in BALB/c mice (Webster et al. 2003). Glucocorticoids play an important role in the regulation of the inflammatory response. The perturbation of the inflammatory response by the inhibition of GR could prevent the host from clearing an infection with *B. anthracis*. Little is known, however, about how LTx can affect the GR, other than the fact that a catalytically active LF is required. Moreover, this study raises the possibility that GR are not the only nuclear receptors affected by LTx. Indeed, the same study showed an effect on progesterone receptor and estrogen receptor α, but none on mineralocorticoid receptor and estrogen receptor β. The relevance of these observations is unclear.

Lastly, it should be noted that it is difficult to assess the role of the toxin on cytokine release in an infectious setting from the studies with purified LTx. Two reports by the same group show, on the one hand, LTx-mediated inhibition of pro-inflammatory cytokine release in vitro (Popov et al. 2002a), and, on the other hand, significant cytokine release in vivo in mice infected with *B. anthracis*, with some differences between LTx sensitive and resistant mice strains (Popov et al. 2004). The authors suggest that the cytokines are released by cells undergoing LTx-induced apoptosis, especially in the liver. The controversy over whether or not LTx induces cytokine release persists. It is unfortunately very important to solve this question, as cytokine-oriented therapies are being advocated to treat anthrax.

Are there other cellular targets of LTx?

Toxin production is induced very early after germination, while bacteria are still in the macrophages. Two studies have addressed the role of toxins in those early events of the infection by looking at germination of spores in macrophage cell lines. These studies yielded conflicting results. In one study, after germination the bacteria were found to escape the macrophages phagosomes, replicate in the cytosol, and get released from the macrophages, all events being independent of toxin production (Dixon et al. 2000). In another study, the newly germinated bacteria did not escape phagosomes, did not replicate, and escaped macrophages only thanks to toxin production (Guidi-Rontani et al. 2001). Few new data have helped resolve this contradiction, and it is therefore still unclear if the toxins play a role in the escape from macrophages. Another report showed that when using bestatin, an aminopeptidase inhibitor with some activity against LTx, spore-infected human mononuclear cells showed higher sporicidal, bactericidal, or both activities (Popov

et al. 2002a). This supports a role for LTx in early events of infection like macrophage escape.

It was recently shown that LTx has a profound impact on the function of dendritic cells by disrupting their interactions with T cells (Agrawal et al. 2003). Such interactions are a prerequisite for activation of the T cells and subsequent induction of an inflammatory response, production of antibodies by B cells, and differentiation of B and T cells into memory cells. These are main events in the establishment of acquired immunity. The authors propose that by its effect on dendritic cells, LTx could prevent the host from containing an infection by *B. anthracis*. Although this hypothesis is tempting, it remains to be tested. It is, for instance, unclear if the host has time to mount an effective response involving dendritic cells during an infection with *B. anthracis*.

It is puzzling that only immune cells seem to be affected by LTx. Since virtually all cell types have receptors for the toxins and Meks are so central in cellular physiology, it is likely that LTx can have consequences on other cell types. As a first example of such a possibility, an in vitro experiment showed that LTx could have a cytotoxic action on endothelial cells (Kirby 2004). This is highly significant because of the numerous observations that LTx action in animals is consistent with a vasculature collapse (see below). This study showed that LTx induced caspase-dependent apoptosis of different kinds of endothelial cells. In this cell type, LTx cleaved Meks and inhibited downstream pathways that the author suggests are responsible for the cytotoxicity observed.

Synergy with ETx and role of ETx

Strikingly, little work has been done on the mechanism of action and the role of ETx in an infection compared to all the reports with LTx. This is an unfortunate oversight. By inactivating the genes coding for EF or LF in an attenuated strain of *B. anthracis* still lethal to mice, it is clear that both genes are required for full virulence in a mouse model of infection (Pezard et al. 1991). This suggests that ETx and LTx act synergistically during infection. It is interesting to note that ETx was shown to down-regulate the production of TNF-α and IL-6 by monocytes stimulated with LPS (Hoover et al. 1994). These effects are consistent with the suppression of the inflammatory response of macrophages reported in studies with LTx, and could explain why there is a synergy between the two toxins.

Little is known about the mechanism of edema formation by ETx in vivo. It is usually assumed that ETx acts similarly to cholera toxin, causing an increase in cAMP in cells and an efflux of water. However, the nature of the cells affected by ETx during an infection is undetermined. A mouse adrenocortical cell line and a human polarized epithelial cell line have been shown to undergo macroscopic changes upon treatment with ETx (Beauregard et al. 1999; Soelaiman et al. 2003).

How do toxins cause “shock-like” death in animals?

The consensus that emerged from the original work on LTx is that the toxin caused death by inducing shock-like symptoms and vascular leakage (Beall and Dalldorf 1966; Smith and Stoner 1967). Before that consensus was reached, other theories had been put forth, such as blockage of the capillaries (Dalldorf and Beall 1967) or an effect on the central nervous system (Bonventre et al. 1967; Remmele et al. 1968; Vick et al. 1968). In one ex-

periment, primates challenged intrathecally with LTx died within 10 min of the injection, from respiratory blockade (Vick et al. 1968). Unfortunately, these experiments were never reproduced later and in our hands intracerebral challenge of Fisher 344 rats with ten times the minimum intravenous lethal dose of LTx did not cause any symptoms (M. Mourez, unpublished data). This could be due to inherent differences between animal models. Death of animals by shock is therefore the currently accepted hypothesis.

Several different events, however, can cause a shock. Because of the previously reported lysis of macrophages and induction of pro-inflammatory cytokine release, it was argued that in anthrax the shock could be induced by cytokine release (Hanna et al. 1993). However, the recent animal studies cast doubts on this hypothesis. Most notably, a careful pathological study was undertaken by Leppla and co-workers to look at the effect of LTx on "resistant" and "sensitive" strains of inbred mice (Moayeri et al. 2003). This study did not find any evidence of inflammation related pathology or any systemic release of pro-inflammatory cytokines. Depletion of circulatory mononuclear cells that could be attributed to LTx-mediated lysis was observed in sensitive mice strains and not in resistant ones but was not paralleled in fixed tissue macrophages and was not correlated with an alteration of the pathological findings. Ultimately, this study determined that animals died of pleural fluid accumulation and liver failure probably due to hypoxia. Both effects could be due to vascular permeability alterations. The hypoxic response induced by LTx is highly significant, since a severe hypoxia has often been reported in cases of anthrax. It is then interesting to note that the strain of mice more resistant to LTx is also more resistant to hypoxia. No vascular collapse, coagulopathy, or endothelial cell damage could be seen. Lastly, this study showed that LTx treatment induced a high neutrophilia and induction of KC chemokine expression, a potent neutrophil recruiter. Both mediators seem to be expressed by hepatocytes and therefore the neutrophils and hepatocytes might represent specific targets of LTx. The precise mechanism and order of the hypoxia and vascular collapse still have to be determined.

The effect of a continuous infusion of LTx in rats was also recently published by the same group and, again, no inflammation or cytokine release could be observed (Cui et al. 2004). In this model, however, no hypoxia was observed. Instead, hypotension and acidosis was noted. This is in contrast to the previous belief that the response of rats to LTx is a pulmonary change causing edema and cardiovascular collapse (Beall and Dalldorf 1966). In the uniquely sensitive Fisher 344 rat model, a pulmonary edema is evident as quickly as 60 min postchallenge with LTx (Ezzell et al. 1984).

As discussed above, LTx was recently shown to have an inhibitory effect on glucocorticoid receptors (Webster et al. 2003). The inhibition of GR might exacerbate the hypoxic shock. Interestingly, the Fisher 344 rat strain is known to have an aberrant glucocorticoid response that in some situations can cause death of the animals. Since the same strain of rats is exquisitely sensitive to LTx, it raises the possibility that GR inhibition by LTx is responsible for this sensitivity. Combining this result with the study of LTx effects in rats (Cui et al. 2004), one hypothesis could be that through inhibition of GR, LTx might affect vascular integrity or vasoconstrictor functions.

Conclusion: what are the roles of the toxins in an infection?

The effects and roles of the toxins in vivo are far from clear. With so many possibilities being discussed, it seems especially important at this stage to put the question back in the context of a *B. anthracis* infection. With that perspective it can be expected that the toxins possibly exert three kinds of effects: (1) As the spores germinate in the macrophages the bacteria start producing toxins; thus it is conceivable that the toxins have an intracellular effect that could ultimately result in the release of bacteria from macrophages. Once bacteria are released they continue to secrete the toxins, which can then have a (2) local as well as a (3) systemic effect.

With only two studies available yielding opposing results, the ability of the toxins to promote release of the bacteria from phagocytes is an interesting hypothesis, but it still awaits confirmation. The local effect of the toxins, on the other hand, seems to be reaching a consensus. It is likely that LTx and ETx act synergistically locally to promote bacterial infection by perturbing the host immune response. This is probably achieved through multiple actions including cytokine release inhibition and macrophage destruction. Edema is another local response mediated apparently solely by ETx. It is assumed that the adenylate cyclase activity on some cells can cause an electrolyte imbalance through a cAMP concentration increase, similarly to cholera toxin. Lastly, death is a systemic effect mediated apparently only by LTx. This "effect" remains mysterious, and this raises the question: Is it an aberration or a relevant pathological mechanism? One challenging observation, for instance, is that in vivo LTx sensitivity can be inversely correlated to the sensitivity to anthrax infection, i.e., mice more sensitive to LTx are more resistant to bacterial challenge (Welkos et al. 1986). This casts doubts about the real significance of death caused by LTx. Lastly, the prevailing hypothesis put forward to explain death has been the induction of shock by cytokine release. It seems likely that this hypothesis will come under more scrutiny and might even be replaced by another in which LTx causes shock through hypoxia and vascular collapse. These effects could, for example, be mediated by toxicity to endothelial cells or by an effect on glucocorticoids.

Fighting anthrax toxin

In most cases, cutaneous anthrax can be treated easily with antibiotics. In the case of inhalation anthrax, however, as detailed above, antibiotic treatments are not enough, presumably because the toxins are unchecked. The recent use of anthrax in an attack has therefore triggered an intense search for drugs that act against the toxin.

Even before the toxins were discovered, passive immunization was demonstrated to protect rabbits using sheep hyperimmune serum (Gladstone 1946). The source of antigen was in the serum of infected animals, and therefore it was stated that *B. anthracis* secreted a "protective antigen." It was later realized that this antigen is part of anthrax toxin. An attenuated strain of *B. anthracis* was discovered by Sterne and found to be a very effective vaccine in animals (Sterne 1937). This Sterne strain is not encapsulated but produces toxin and it was found that the main immune reaction was directed against the toxin components, and mainly PA. Consequently, a cell-free vaccine was prepared from supernatants of cultures of a Sterne strain adsorbed to aluminum hydroxide gel. This vaccine is the only licensed commercial vaccine used in humans (Friedlander et al. 2002). The immune response is believed to help clear the toxin from the serum of infected patients and is there-

fore, in a sense, an anti-toxin therapy. The acellular anthrax vaccine adsorbed is very effective, but the immunization schedule is cumbersome: it has to be administered at 0, 2, 4 weeks and 6, 12 and 18 months with yearly boosters.

Many new formulations (recombinant PA and/or LF, adjuvant) and delivery vectors (naked DNA, live bacteria, viruses) have been tested to try and improve the safety and immunization schedule (Friedlander et al. 2002). For instance, it was shown that additional antigens besides the toxins are needed for optimal immunization, like antigens from spores or capsules that could enhance phagocytosis (Brossier et al. 2002). Consequently, promising experimental vaccines, including capsule and PA antigens have been designed (Rhie et al. 2003; Schneerson et al. 2003).

A prophylactic approach might not be economically viable, however, or even accepted by the public. Therapeutics able to neutralize the toxin after the exposure to *B. anthracis* spores are therefore needed. There are a number of steps in the intoxication process that can be targeted and various types of inhibitory molecules that can be used to block them.

Inhibitors of receptor binding

Experiments showed that a polyclonal anti-PA antibody could save some guinea pigs from a lethal anthrax challenge (Little et al. 1997). However, neither anti-PA monoclonal antibodies nor anti-EF or anti-LF polyclonal antibodies had any effect (Little et al. 1997). Similar experiments showed that polyclonal anti-PA antibodies were effective in treatment of challenged guinea pigs (Kobiler et al. 2002) and in the treatment of challenged mice in conjunction with antibiotics (Karginov et al. 2004). Efforts are now being made to obtain antibodies that could be used in humans. For instance, recombinant single-chain antibodies have recently been obtained that showed inhibitory activities against LTx in vitro and in vivo (Maynard et al. 2002). In another approach, human antibodies fragments from phage-displayed libraries generated from immunized donors were screened against PA. Selected clones displayed inhibitory activity in vivo (Wild et al. 2003). There is some evidence that the protective epitopes are located in domain 4 of PA, and therefore it is likely that all these active antibodies prevent PA binding on cells (Flick-Smith et al. 2002; Rosovitz et al. 2003).

The discovery of receptors for anthrax toxin opened up the possibility to directly target these molecules. An inhibitor could be designed to bind on the metal ion-binding motif and compete with PA for binding. Alternatively, a soluble mimic of the receptor could function as a decoy preventing binding of PA on cells. Since the functions of TEM8 and CMG2 are not known, those approaches have potential toxicity risks. Still, soluble parts of TEM8 were shown to have potent inhibitory effects in cell cultures and in rats challenged with LTx (Bradley et al. 2001; Scobie et al. 2003).

Inhibitors of furin activation

Small molecules could be designed to block the furin-like proteases and prevent PA activation. Furin is a protease involved in many biological processes, and therefore inhibiting its activity might prove to have serious toxic consequences. Despite these concerns, a small peptide of hexa-D-arginine proved to be a stable inhibitor of furin and was shown to be able to inhibit anthrax toxin in vivo and in cell cultures (Sarac et al. 2004). The struc-

ture of furin (Henrich et al. 2003) will probably help in the design of specific small molecule inhibitors of this protease, which might prove effective.

Inhibitors of assembly

Some molecules could prevent the binding of EF/LF to PA_{63} heptamers. Such an inhibitor was developed based on peptides selected from phage-displayed libraries (Mourez et al. 2001). The peptides were selected in order to specifically bind to the surface involved in the interaction of PA_{63} heptamers with EF/LF. The authors assumed that each peptide could bind to one of seven sites on a heptamer. If true, then by grafting multiple copies of the peptides on a flexible polymeric backbone, a molecule could be designed that would bind PA_{63} heptamers at multiple sites simultaneously. This strategy allowed for the design of polyvalent molecules with dramatically improved efficacy compared to the peptide alone. The molecules were able to prevent the toxicity of LTx administered to rats. Peptidic inhibitors are, however, notoriously prone to degradation and the backbone used was polyacrylamide. Further improvements are therefore required before these molecules can be made into viable therapeutics.

Inhibitor of translocation

As stated above, some PA mutants unable to promote translocation were shown to be dominant negative and block in vitro the action of LTx (Mourez et al. 2003; Sellman et al. 2001a; Yan and Collier 2003). These mutants have also proved to be very effective in vivo. Compared to the inhibitors described above, the PA mutants have the advantage of being "optimized" for in vivo stability and targeting. In addition, PA is already administered to humans in a vaccine formulation. One disadvantage, however, is the fact that PA mutants will bind to the ubiquitous receptors and therefore are likely to be taken out of the systemic circulation quickly.

Inhibitors of enzymatic activities

With the solving of the structures of EF and LF and the understanding of their catalytic activities, the door has been opened for an intense search of small molecule inhibitors. There are already a huge number of commercial drugs active against proteases that could have an effect against LF. Since the discovery of the enzymatic activity of LF many groups have designed high-throughput screens and used the crystal structure of LF to look for small molecule inhibitors (Cummings et al. 2002; Panchal et al. 2004; Tonello et al. 2002). As a result, hydroxamate derivatives of substrate peptides have been designed and have in vitro inhibitory constants in the nanomolar range (Tonello et al. 2002). Non-peptidic inhibitors have also been obtained with an in vitro inhibitory constant in the micromolar range (Panchal et al. 2004; Turk et al. 2004).

Using the crystal structure of EF it became possible to screen a database of small molecule compounds that could specifically inhibit its enzymatic activity. This allowed the identification of a number of lead compounds with inhibitory constants around 20 μM (Soelaiman et al. 2003). Recently, the same group showed that adefovir dipivoxil, a drug already approved in the treatment of chronic infection with hepatitis B virus, was active

against EF (Shen et al. 2004). The inhibition constant was 27 nM, lower than the previous leads, and crystal structure of the inhibitor in complex with EF and calmodulin revealed a strong interaction of the active metabolite of the drug with EF. This tight contact explained a 10,000-fold higher affinity of EF for the drug over its natural substrate, ATP. Interestingly, these compounds are also effective against *B. pertussis* adenylate cyclase.

Unknown mechanism of action

A number of other drugs have been shown to have protective effects either in cell cultures or in animals: inhibitors of proteasome (Tang and Leppla 1999); intracellular calcium agonists (Bhatnagar et al. 1989; Shin et al. 2000); antioxidants like *N*-acetyl-L-cysteine and mepacrine (Hanna et al. 1994); phospholipase C and protein kinase C inhibitors (Bhatnagar et al. 1999); protein synthesis inhibitors (Bhatnagar and Friedlander 1994); and inhibitors of an unknown protein phosphatase by calyculin A (Kau et al. 2002) all showed some protecting effects against LTx challenge. These effects are difficult to interpret and/or transpose in a clinical setting.

Using anthrax toxin

Some investigators have decided to capitalize on the ability of anthrax toxins to be translocated in vivo in the cytoplasm of almost any cell type to design innovative therapeutics.

Epitope delivery system

As stated above, LFn was found to be required and sufficient for binding to PA_{63} and for delivery of recombinant polypeptides fused to its N or C terminus in the cytosol of target cells in the presence of PA. Although this system does not allow the delivery of all polypeptides (Wesche et al. 1998), it was shown to allow the in vivo delivery of a cytotoxic T lymphocyte epitope from an intracellular pathogen in mice (Ballard et al. 1996). This delivery stimulated a cytotoxic T lymphocyte response in the absence of any other co-stimulant, which could protect mice from a challenge with the pathogen. This showed that an engineered anthrax toxin could be used as a basis to design cellular vaccines effective in vivo. A cytotoxic immune response against human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) could also be achieved using this system (Lu et al. 2000).

Antitumor effect

Some tumors have elevated levels of active MAPK including breast carcinoma and glioblastoma. The idea that LTx could be used as an antitumor therapeutic was recognized when it was shown that LF inhibited MAPK signaling (Duesbery et al. 2001). LTx antitumor activity was tested in vitro on transformed cells and in vivo on transformed cells implanted in athymic nude mice. In both cases LTx was able to inhibit transformation and growth (Duesbery et al. 2001). The use of unmodified LTx raised safety concerns and subsequent attempts were made to specifically target tumor cells. To that end, engineered tox-

ins that can only be activated on tumor cells were designed. Recombinant PA molecules were constructed where the furin cleavage site was replaced with those of membrane proteases that are dramatically overexpressed on tumor cells (Liu et al. 2001, 2003). A mixture of the recombinant PA molecules with a fusion of LFn to the enzymatic part of *Pseudomonas exotoxin* A displayed a specific and dramatic cytotoxicity toward a range of transplanted tumors.

Further improvements can still be achieved by preventing recombinant PA binding to normal cells and redirecting it specifically towards tumor cells. In addition, instead of fusing an unspecific toxic moiety to LFn, one could envision grafting an enzymatic moiety with some specific activity against tumor cells. The high specificity against tumor cells that would be achieved by redirecting the binding, activation, and enzymatic activities of a single chimeric toxin toward those cells would make for a safe and efficient therapeutic.

Concluding remarks

The recent years have brought numerous advances in the anthrax toxin field: the structures of LF and EF have been solved; two receptors have been identified; and critical information has been gathered on the molecular details of the toxin's binding, assembly, endocytosis, pore formation, and the enzymatic activities of EF and LF. This progress has made possible the design of potent toxin inhibitors and the use of toxin-based therapies in cancer treatment and vaccines.

Much remains to be learned. The structure of the pore formed by PA_{63} heptamers upon exposure to low pH remains elusive. The same is true about the conformational changes taking place during the transition from prepore to pore. Now that they have been identified, the role of the toxin receptors in these and other events of the intoxication mechanism can also be tested. The fundamental question of how EF and LF are translocated is also unanswered. We know that EF and LF require some unfolding and that PA heptamers are making pores in the membrane. We do not know whether EF and/or LF use the channel as a conduit for their translocation or if they can cross the lipid bilayer around the channel. We also do not know if cellular proteins help in the translocation process or in the refolding of EF and LF. These questions remain a major challenge.

It is strikingly ironic that in vivo studies have been central to the identification of the toxins and yet it is the in vivo effects of the toxins that we understand the least. Edema and death caused by the toxins have been observed for decades; however, the mechanisms that have been suggested to cause these physiological effects are subject to debate. New hypotheses are required. We need to know which cells the toxin targets during an infection and what the effects of the toxin's ability to increase cAMP concentration and cleave Meks are on these cells. We need to keep in mind that effects other than death and edema could be more relevant to the infectious process. And, lastly, we must not forget that EF and LF act synergistically when assessing the roles and action of the toxins. The need for anti-toxin drugs to counter the use of *B. anthracis* spores as weapons and the potential applications of toxin-based new therapeutics has made this research even more essential.

Acknowledgments. The author is greatly indebted to Borden Lacy for sharing results before publication and to Jeremy Mogridge for critical comments on the manuscript. Work in the laboratory of the author is funded by the Canadian Research Chair program and the Natural Sciences and Engineering Research Council of Canada (NSERC grant 262746).

References

Abrami L, Liu S, Cosson P, Leppla SH, van der Goot FG (2003) Anthrax toxin triggers endocytosis of its receptor via a lipid raft-mediated clathrin-dependent process. J Cell Biol 160:321–328

Abramova FA, Grinberg LM, Yampolskaya OV, Walker DH (1993) Pathology of inhalational anthrax in 42 cases from the Sverdlovsk outbreak of 1979. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 90:2291–2294

Agrawal A, Lingappa J, Leppla SH, Agrawal S, Jabbar A, Quinn C, Pulendran B (2003) Impairment of dendritic cells and adaptive immunity by anthrax lethal toxin. Nature 424:329–334

Arora N, Leppla SH (1993) Residues 1–254 of anthrax toxin lethal factor are sufficient to cause cellular uptake of fused polypeptides. J Biol Chem 268:3334–3341

Ascenzi P, Visca P, Ippolito G, Spallarossa A, Bolognesi M, Montecucco C (2002) Anthrax toxin: a tripartite lethal combination. FEBS Lett 531:384–388

Ballard JD, Collier RJ, Starnbach MN (1996) Anthrax toxin-mediated delivery of a cytotoxic T-cell epitope in vivo. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 93:12531–12534

Beall FA, Dalldorf FG (1966) The pathogenesis of the lethal effect of anthrax toxin in the rat. J Infect Dis 116:377–389

Beauregard KE, Wimer-Mackin S, Collier RJ, Lencer WI (1999) Anthrax toxin entry into polarized epithelial cells. Infect Immun 67:3026–3030

Beauregard KE, Collier RJ, Swanson JA (2000) Proteolytic activation of receptor-bound anthrax protective antigen on macrophages promotes its internalization. Cell Microbiol 2:251–258

Benson EL, Huynh PD, Finkelstein A, Collier RJ (1998) Identification of residues lining the anthrax protective antigen channel. Biochemistry 37:3941–3948

Bhatnagar R, Friedlander AM (1994) Protein synthesis is required for expression of anthrax lethal toxin cytotoxicity. Infect Immun 62:2958–2962

Bhatnagar R, Singh Y, Leppla SH, Friedlander AM (1989) Calcium is required for the expression of anthrax lethal toxin activity in the macrophagelike cell line J774A.1. Infect Immun 57:2107–2114

Bhatnagar R, Ahuja N, Goila R, Batra S, Waheed SM, Gupta P (1999) Activation of phospholipase C and protein kinase C is required for expression of anthrax lethal toxin cytotoxicity in J774A.1 cells. Cellular Signalling 11:111–116

Blanke SR, Milne JC, Benson EL, Collier RJ (1996) Fused polycationic peptide mediates delivery of diphtheria toxin A chain to the cytosol in the presence of anthrax protective antigen. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 93:8437–8442

Blaustein RO, Finkelstein A (1990) Diffusion limitation in the block by symmetric tetraalkylammonium ions of anthrax toxin channels in planar phospholipid bilayer membranes. J Gen Physiol 96:943–957

Blaustein RO, Koehler TM, Collier RJ, Finkelstein A (1989) Anthrax toxin: channel-forming activity of protective antigen in planar phospholipid bilayers. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 86:2209–2213

Bonventre PF, Sueoka W, True CW, Klein F, Lincoln R (1967) Attempts to implicate the central nervous system as a primary site of action for Bacillus anthracis lethal toxin. Fed Proc 26:1549–1553

Bradley KA, Mogridge J, Mourez M, Collier RJ, Young JA (2001) Identification of the cellular receptor for anthrax toxin. Nature 414:225–229

Bradley KA, Mogridge J, Jonah G, Rainey A, Batty S, Young JA (2003) Binding of anthrax toxin to its receptor is similar to alpha integrin-ligand interactions. J Biol Chem 278:49342–49347

Brossier F, Sirard JC, Guidi-Rontani C, Duflot E, Mock M (1999) Functional analysis of the carboxy-terminal domain of Bacillus anthracis protective antigen. Infect Immun 67:964–967

Brossier F, Weber-Levy M, Mock M, Sirard JC (2000) Protective antigen-mediated antibody response against a heterologous protein produced in vivo by Bacillus anthracis. Infect Immun 68:5731–5734

Brossier F, Levy M, Mock M (2002) Anthrax spores make an essential contribution to vaccine efficacy. Infect Immun 70:661–664

Chauhan V, Bhatnagar R (2002) Identification of amino acid residues of anthrax protective antigen involved in binding with lethal factor. Infect Immun 70:4477–4484

Chopra AP, Boone SA, Liang X, Duesbery NS (2003) Anthrax lethal factor proteolysis and inactivation of MAPK kinase. J Biol Chem 278:9402–9406

Christopher GW, Cieslak TJ, Pavlin JA, Eitzen EM Jr (1997) Biological warfare. A historical perspective. JAMA 278:412–417

Collier RJ, Young JA (2003) Anthrax toxin. Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol 19:45–70

Croney JC, Cunningham KM, Collier RJ, Jameson DM (2003) Fluorescence resonance energy transfer studies on anthrax lethal toxin. FEBS Lett 550:175–178

Cui X, Moayeri M, Li Y, Li X, Haley M, Fitz Y, Correa-Araujo R, Banks SM, Leppla SH, Eichacker PQ (2004) Lethality during continuous anthrax lethal toxin infusion is associated with circulatory shock

but not inflammatory cytokine or nitric oxide release in rats. Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol 286:R699–R709
Cummings RT, Salowe SP, Cunningham BR, Wiltsie J, Park YW, Sonatore LM, Wisniewski D, Douglas CM, Hermes JD, Scolnick EM (2002) A peptide-based fluorescence resonance energy transfer assay for Bacillus anthracis lethal factor protease. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 99:6603–6606
Cunningham K, Lacy DB, Mogridge J, Collier RJ (2002) Mapping the lethal factor and edema factor binding sites on oligomeric anthrax protective antigen. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 99:7049–7053
Dalldorf FG, Beall FA (1967) Capillary thrombosis as a cause of death in experimental anthrax. Arch Pathol 83:154–161
Dang O, Navarro L, Anderson K, David M (2004) Cutting edge: anthrax lethal toxin inhibits activation of IFN-regulatory factor 3 by lipopolysaccharide. J Immunol 172:747–751
Dixon TC, Fadl AA, Koehler TM, Swanson JA, Hanna PC (2000) Early Bacillus anthracis-macrophage interactions: intracellular survival and escape. Cell Microbiol 2:453–463
Drum CL, Yan SZ, Bard J, Shen YQ, Lu D, Soelaiman S, Grabarek Z, Bohm A, Tang WJ (2002) Structural basis for the activation of anthrax adenylyl cyclase exotoxin by calmodulin. Nature 415:396–402
Duesbery NS, Webb CP, Leppla SH, Gordon VM, Klimpel KR, Copeland TD, Ahn NG, Oskarsson MK, Fukasawa K, Paull KD, Vande Woude GF (1998) Proteolytic inactivation of MAP-kinase-kinase by anthrax lethal factor. Science 280:734–737
Duesbery NS, Resau J, Webb CP, Koochekpour S, Koo HM, Leppla SH, Vande Woude GF (2001) Suppression of ras-mediated transformation and inhibition of tumor growth and angiogenesis by anthrax lethal factor, a proteolytic inhibitor of multiple MEK pathways. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 98:4089–4094
Erwin JL, DaSilva LM, Bavari S, Little SF, Friedlander AM, Chanh TC (2001) Macrophage-derived cell lines do not express proinflammatory cytokines after exposure to Bacillus anthracis lethal toxin. Infect Immun 69:1175–1177
Escuyer V, Collier RJ (1991) Anthrax protective antigen interacts with a specific receptor on the surface of CHO-K1 cells. Infect Immun 59:3381–3386
Ezzell JW, Ivins BE, Leppla SH (1984) Immunoelectrophoretic analysis, toxicity, and kinetics of in vitro production of the protective antigen and lethal factor components of Bacillus anthracis toxin. Infect Immun 45:761–767
Ezzell JW Jr, Abshire TG (1992) Serum protease cleavage of Bacillus anthracis protective antigen. Biochemistry 31:3215–3222
Flick-Smith HC, Walker NJ, Gibson P, Bullifent H, Hayward S, Miller J, Titball RW, Williamson ED (2002) A recombinant carboxy-terminal domain of the protective antigen of Bacillus anthracis protects mice against anthrax infection. Infect Immun 70:1653–1656
Friedlander AM (1986) Macrophages are sensitive to anthrax lethal toxin through an acid-dependent process. J Biol Chem 261:7123–7126
Friedlander AM (1999) Clinical aspects, diagnosis and treatment of anthrax. J Appl Microbiol 87:303
Friedlander AM, Welkos SL, Ivins BE (2002) Anthrax vaccines. Curr Top Microbiol Immunol 271:33–60
Gao-Sheridan S, Zhang S, Collier RJ (2003) Exchange characteristics of calcium ions bound to anthrax protective antigen. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 300:61–64
Gladstone GP (1946) Immunity to anthrax protective antigen present in cell-free culture filtrates. Br J Exp Pathol 27:394–418
Gordon VM, Leppla SH, Hewlett EL (1988) Inhibitors of receptor-mediated endocytosis block the entry of Bacillus anthracis adenylate cyclase toxin but not that of Bordetella pertussis adenylate cyclase toxin. Infect Immun 56:1066–1069
Gordon VM, Klimpel KR, Arora N, Henderson MA, Leppla SH (1995) Proteolytic activation of bacterial toxins by eukaryotic cells is performed by furin and by additional cellular proteases. Infect Immun 63:82–87
Guidi-Rontani C (2002) The alveolar macrophage: the Trojan horse of Bacillus anthracis. Trends Microbiol 10:405–409
Guidi-Rontani C, Levy M, Ohayon H, Mock M (2001) Fate of germinated Bacillus anthracis spores in primary murine macrophages. Mol Microbiol 42:931–938
Gupta PK, Chandra H, Gaur R, Kurupati RK, Chowdhury S, Tandon V, Singh Y, Maithal K (2003) Conformational fluctuations in anthrax protective antigen: a possible role of calcium in the folding pathway of the protein. FEBS Lett 554:505–510
Hanna PC, Acosta D, Collier RJ (1993) On the role of macrophages in anthrax. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 90:10198–10201
Hanna PC, Kruskal BA, Ezekowitz RA, Bloom BR, Collier RJ (1994) Role of macrophage oxidative burst in the action of anthrax lethal toxin. Mol Med 1:7–18

Haug G, Leemhuis J, Tiemann D, Meyer DK, Aktories K, Barth H (2003) The host cell chaperone Hsp90 is essential for translocation of the binary Clostridium botulinum C2 toxin into the cytosol. J Biol Chem 278:32266–32274

Henrich S, Cameron A, Bourenkov GP, Kiefersauer R, Huber R, Lindberg I, Bode W, Than ME (2003) The crystal structure of the proprotein processing proteinase furin explains its stringent specificity. Nat Struct Biol 10:520–526

Hoover DL, Friedlander AM, Rogers LC, Yoon IK, Warren RL, Cross AS (1994) Anthrax edema toxin differentially regulates lipopolysaccharide-induced monocyte production of tumor necrosis factor alpha and interleukin-6 by increasing intracellular cyclic AMP. Infect Immun 62:4432–4439

Jernigan JA, Stephens DS, Ashford DA, Omenaca C, Topiel MS, Galbraith M, Tapper M, Fisk TL, Zaki S, Popovic T, Meyer RF, Quinn CP, Harper SA, Fridkin SK, Sejvar JJ, Shepard CW, McConnell M, Guarner J, Shieh WJ, Malecki JM, Gerberding JL, Hughes JM, Perkins BA (2001) Bioterrorism-related inhalational anthrax: the first 10 cases reported in the United States. Emerg Infect Dis 7:933–944

Kalns J, Scruggs J, Millenbaugh N, Vivekananda J, Shealy D, Eggers J, Kiel J (2002) TNF receptor 1, IL-1 receptor, and iNOS genetic knockout mice are not protected From anthrax infection. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 292:41–44

Karginov VA, Robinson TM, Riemenschneider J, Golding B, Kennedy M, Shiloach J, Alibek K (2004) Treatment of anthrax infection with combination of ciprofloxacin and antibodies to protective antigen of Bacillus anthracis. FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol 40:71–74

Kau JH, Lin CG, Huang HH, Hsu HL, Chen KC, Wu YP, Lin HC (2002) Calyculin A sensitive protein phosphatase is required for Bacillus anthracis lethal toxin induced cytotoxicity. Curr Microbiol 44:106–111

Keppie J, Smith H, Harris-Smith PW (1955) The chemical basis of the virulence of *Bacillus anthracis*. III: The role of terminal bacteraemia in death of guinea pigs from anthrax. Br J Exp Pathol 36:315–322

Kim SO, Jing Q, Hoebe K, Beutler B, Duesbery NS, Han J (2003) Sensitizing anthrax lethal toxin-resistant macrophages to lethal toxin-induced killing by tumor necrosis factor-alpha. J Biol Chem 278:7413–7421

Kirby JE (2004) Anthrax lethal toxin induces human endothelial cell apoptosis. Infect Immun 72:430–439

Klimpel KR, Arora N, Leppla SH (1994) Anthrax toxin lethal factor contains a zinc metalloprotease consensus sequence which is required for lethal toxin activity. Mol Microbiol 13:1093–1100

Kobiler D, Gozes Y, Rosenberg H, Marcus D, Reuveny S, Altboum Z (2002) Efficiency of protection of guinea pigs against infection with Bacillus anthracis spores by passive immunization. Infect Immun 70:544–560

Kochi SK, Martin I, Schiavo G, Mock M, Cabiaux V (1994a) The effects of pH on the interaction of anthrax toxin lethal and edema factors with phospholipid vesicles. Biochemistry 33:2604–2609

Kochi SK, Schiavo G, Mock M, Montecucco C (1994b) Zinc content of the Bacillus anthracis lethal factor. FEMS Microbiol Lett 124:343–348

Koehler TM (2002) Bacillus anthracis genetics and virulence gene regulation. Curr Top Microbiol Immunol 271:143–164

Koehler TM, Collier RJ (1991) Anthrax toxin protective antigen: low-pH-induced hydrophobicity and channel formation in liposomes. Mol Microbiol 5:1501–1506

Koriazova LK, Montal M (2003) Translocation of botulinum neurotoxin light chain protease through the heavy chain channel. Nat Struct Biol 10:13–18

Lacy DB, Collier RJ (2002) Structure and function of anthrax toxin. Curr Top Microbiol Immunol 271:61–85

Lacy DB, Mourez M, Fouassier A, Collier RJ (2002) Mapping the anthrax protective antigen binding site on the lethal and edema factors. J Biol Chem 277:3006–3010

Lacy DB, Wigelsworth DJ, Scobie HM, Young JA, Collier RJ (2004) Crystal structure of the von Willebrand factor A domain of human capillary morphogenesis protein 2: an anthrax toxin receptor. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 101:6367–6372

Leppla SH (1982) Anthrax toxin edema factor: a bacterial adenylate cyclase that increases cyclic AMP concentrations of eukaryotic cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 79:3162–3166

Little SF, Novak JM, Lowe JR, Leppla SH, Singh Y, Klimpel KR, Lidgerding BC, Friedlander AM (1996) Characterization of lethal factor binding and cell receptor binding domains of protective antigen of Bacillus anthracis using monoclonal antibodies. Microbiology 142:707–715

Little SF, Ivins BE, Fellows PF, Friedlander AM (1997) Passive protection by polyclonal antibodies against Bacillus anthracis infection in guinea pigs. Infect Immun 65:5171–5175

Liu S, Leppla SH (2003) Cell surface tumor endothelium marker 8 cytoplasmic tail-independent anthrax toxin binding, proteolytic processing, oligomer formation, and internalization. J Biol Chem 278:5227–5234

Liu S, Bugge TH, Leppla SH (2001) Targeting of tumor cells by cell surface urokinase plasminogen activator-dependent anthrax toxin. J Biol Chem 276:17976–17984
Liu S, Aaronson H, Mitola DJ, Leppla SH, Bugge TH (2003) Potent antitumor activity of a urokinase-activated engineered anthrax toxin. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 100:657–662
Lu Y, Friedman R, Kushner N, Doling A, Thomas L, Touzjian N, Starnbach M, Lieberman J (2000) Genetically modified anthrax lethal toxin safely delivers whole HIV protein antigens into the cytosol to induce T cell immunity. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 97:8027–8032
Makino S, Uchida I, Terakado N, Sasakawa C, Yoshikawa M (1989) Molecular characterization and protein analysis of the cap region, which is essential for encapsulation in Bacillus anthracis. J Bacteriol 171:722–730
Manchee RJ, Broster MG, Anderson IS, Henstridge RM, Melling J (1983) Decontamination of Bacillus anthracis on Gruinard Island? Nature 303:239–240
Maynard JA, Maassen CB, Leppla SH, Brasky K, Patterson JL, Iverson BL, Georgiou G (2002) Protection against anthrax toxin by recombinant antibody fragments correlates with antigen affinity. Nat Biotechnol 20:597–601
McAllister RD, Singh Y, du Bois WD, Potter M, Boehm T, Meeker ND, Fillmore PD, Anderson LM, Poynter ME, Teuscher C (2003) Susceptibility to anthrax lethal toxin is controlled by three linked quantitative trait loci. Am J Pathol 163:1735–1741
Menard A, Altendorf K, Breves D, Mock M, Montecucco C (1996) The vacuolar ATPase proton pump is required for the cytotoxicity of Bacillus anthracis lethal toxin. FEBS Lett 386:161–164
Meselson M, Guillemin J, Hugh-Jones M, Langmuir A, Popova I, Shelokov A, Yampolskaya O (1994) The Sverdlovsk anthrax outbreak of 1979. Science 266:1202–1208
Miller CJ, Elliott JL, Collier RJ (1999) Anthrax protective antigen: prepore-to-pore conversion. Biochemistry 38:10432–10441
Milne JC, Collier RJ (1993) pH-dependent permeabilization of the plasma membrane of mammalian cells by anthrax protective antigen. Mol Microbiol 10:647–653
Milne JC, Furlong D, Hanna PC, Wall JS, Collier RJ (1994) Anthrax protective antigen forms oligomers during intoxication of mammalian cells. J Biol Chem 269:20607–20612
Milne JC, Blanke SR, Hanna PC, Collier RJ (1995) Protective antigen-binding domain of anthrax lethal factor mediates translocation of a heterologous protein fused to its amino- or carboxy-terminus. Mol Microbiol 15:661–666
Moayeri M, Leppla SH (2004) The roles of anthrax toxin in pathogenesis. Curr Opin Microbiol 7:19–24
Moayeri M, Haines D, Young HA, Leppla SH (2003) Bacillus anthracis lethal toxin induces TNF-alpha-independent hypoxia-mediated toxicity in mice. J Clin Invest 112:670–682
Mock M, Fouet A (2001) Anthrax. Annu Rev Microbiol 55:647–671
Mock M, Mignot T (2003) Anthrax toxins and the host: a story of intimacy. Cell Microbiol 5:15–23
Mogridge J, Mourez M, Collier RJ (2001) Involvement of domain 3 in oligomerization by the protective antigen moiety of anthrax toxin. J Bacteriol 183:2111–2116
Mogridge J, Cunningham K, Collier RJ (2002a) Stoichiometry of anthrax toxin complexes. Biochemistry 41:1079–1082
Mogridge J, Cunningham K, Lacy DB, Mourez M, Collier RJ (2002b) The lethal and edema factors of anthrax toxin bind only to oligomeric forms of the protective antigen. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 99:7045–7048
Mourez M, Kane RS, Mogridge J, Metallo S, Deschatelets P, Sellman BR, Whitesides GM, Collier RJ (2001) Designing a polyvalent inhibitor of anthrax toxin. Nat Biotechnol 19:958–961
Mourez M, Yan M, Lacy DB, Dillon L, Bentsen L, Marpoe A, Maurin C, Hotze E, Wigelsworth D, Pimental RA, Ballard JD, Collier RJ, Tweten RK (2003) Mapping dominant-negative mutations of anthrax protective antigen by scanning mutagenesis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 100:13803–13808
Nanda A, Carson-Walter EB, Seaman S, Barber TD, Stampfl J, Singh S, Vogelstein B, Kinzler KW, St Croix B (2004) TEM8 interacts with the cleaved C5 domain of collagen alpha 3(VI). Cancer Res 64:817–820
Nassi S, Collier RJ, Finkelstein A (2002) PA63 channel of anthrax toxin: an extended beta-barrel. Biochemistry 41:1445–1450
Novak JM, Stein MP, Little SF, Leppla SH, Friedlander AM (1992) Functional characterization of protease-treated Bacillus anthracis protective antigen. J Biol Chem 267:17186–17193
Oh KJ, Senzel L, Collier RJ, Finkelstein A (1999) Translocation of the catalytic domain of diphtheria toxin across planar phospholipid bilayers by its own T domain. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 96:8467–8470
Panchal RG, Hermone AR, Nguyen TL, Wong TY, Schwarzenbacher R, Schmidt J, Lane D, McGrath C, Turk BE, Burnett J, Aman MJ, Little S, Sausville EA, Zaharevitz DW, Cantley LC, Liddington RC,

Gussio R, Bavari S (2004) Identification of small molecule inhibitors of anthrax lethal factor. Nat Struct Mol Biol 11:67–72

Pannifer AD, Wong TY, Schwarzenbacher R, Renatus M, Petosa C, Bienkowska J, Lacy DB, Collier RJ, Park S, Leppla SH, Hanna P, Liddington RC (2001) Crystal structure of the anthrax lethal factor. Nature 414:229–233

Park JM, Greten FR, Li ZW, Karin M (2002) Macrophage apoptosis by anthrax lethal factor through p38 MAP kinase inhibition. Science 297:2048–2051

Pellizzari R, Guidi-Rontani C, Vitale G, Mock M, Montecucco C (1999) Anthrax lethal factor cleaves MKK3 in macrophages and inhibits the LPS/IFNgamma-induced release of NO and TNFalpha. FEBS Lett 462:199–204

Petosa C, Collier RJ, Klimpel KR, Leppla SH, Liddington RC (1997) Crystal structure of the anthrax toxin protective antigen. Nature 385:833–838

Pezard C, Berche P, Mock M (1991) Contribution of individual toxin components to virulence of Bacillus anthracis. Infect Immun 59:3472–3477

Popov SG, Villasmil R, Bernardi J, Grene E, Cardwell J, Popova T, Wu A, Alibek D, Bailey C, Alibek K (2002a) Effect of Bacillus anthracis lethal toxin on human peripheral blood mononuclear cells. FEBS Lett 527:211–215

Popov SG, Villasmil R, Bernardi J, Grene E, Cardwell J, Wu A, Alibek D, Bailey C, Alibek K (2002b) Lethal toxin of Bacillus anthracis causes apoptosis of macrophages. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 293:349–355

Popov SG, Popova TG, Grene E, Klotz F, Cardwell J, Bradburne C, Jama Y, Maland M, Wells J, Nalca A, Voss T, Bailey C, Alibek K (2004) Systemic cytokine response in murine anthrax. Cell Microbiol 6:225–233

Ratts R, Zeng H, Berg EA, Blue C, McComb ME, Costello CE, vanderSpek JC, Murphy JR (2003) The cytosolic entry of diphtheria toxin catalytic domain requires a host cell cytosolic translocation factor complex. J Cell Biol 160:1139–1150

Remmele NS, Klein F, Vick JA, Walker JS, Mahlandt BG, Lincoln RE (1968) Anthrax toxin: primary site of action. J Infect Dis 118:104–113

Rhie GE, Roehrl MH, Mourez M, Collier RJ, Mekalanos JJ, Wang JY (2003) A dually active anthrax vaccine that confers protection against both bacilli and toxins. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 100:10925–10930

Rosovitz MJ, Schuck P, Varughese M, Chopra AP, Mehra V, Singh Y, McGinnis LM, Leppla SH (2003) Alanine-scanning mutations in domain 4 of anthrax toxin protective antigen reveal residues important for binding to the cellular receptor and to a neutralizing monoclonal antibody. J Biol Chem 278:30936–30944

Salles II, Tucker AE, Voth DE, Ballard JD (2003) Toxin-induced resistance in Bacillus anthracis lethal toxin-treated macrophages. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 100:12426–12431

Sarac MS, Peinado JR, Leppla SH, Lindberg I (2004) Protection against anthrax toxemia by hexa-D-arginine in vitro and in vivo. Infect Immun 72:602–605

Schneerson R, Kubler-Kielb J, Liu TY, Dai ZD, Leppla SH, Yergey A, Backlund P, Shiloach J, Majadly F, Robbins JB (2003) Poly(gamma-D-glutamic acid) protein conjugates induce IgG antibodies in mice to the capsule of Bacillus anthracis: a potential addition to the anthrax vaccine. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 100:8945–8950

Scobie HM, Rainey GJ, Bradley KA, Young JA (2003) Human capillary morphogenesis protein 2 functions as an anthrax toxin receptor. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 100:5170–5174

Sellman BR, Mourez M, Collier RJ (2001a) Dominant-negative mutants of a toxin subunit: an approach to therapy of anthrax. Science 292:695–697

Sellman BR, Nassi S, Collier RJ (2001b) Point mutations in anthrax protective antigen that block translocation. J Biol Chem 276:8371–8376

Shen Y, Zhukovskaya NL, Zimmer MI, Soelaiman S, Bergson P, Wang CR, Gibbs CS, Tang WJ (2004) Selective inhibition of anthrax edema factor by adefovir, a drug for chronic hepatitis B virus infection. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 101:3242–3247

Shin S, Hur GH, Kim YB, Park KJ, Park YM, Lee WS (2000) Intracellular calcium antagonist protects cultured peritoneal macrophages against anthrax lethal toxin-induced cytotoxicity. Cell Biol Toxicol 16:137–144

Singh Y, Klimpel KR, Arora N, Sharma M, Leppla SH (1994) The chymotrypsin-sensitive site, FFD315, in anthrax toxin protective antigen is required for translocation of lethal factor. J Biol Chem 269:29039–29046

Smith H (2002) Discovery of the anthrax toxin: the beginning of studies of virulence determinants regulated in vivo. Int J Med Microbiol 291:411–417

Smith H, Keppie J (1954) Observations on experimental anthrax: demonstration of a specific lethal factor produced in vivo by Bacillus anthracis. Nature 173:689
Smith H, Stoner HB (1967) Anthrax toxic complex. Fed Proc 26:1554–1557
Smith H, Keppie J, Stanley JL, Harris-Smith PW (1955) The chemical basis of the virulence of Bacillus anthracis IV: secondary shock as the major factor in death of guinea pigs from anthrax. Br J Exp Pathol 36:323–335
Soelaiman S, Wei BQ, Bergson P, Lee YS, Shen Y, Mrksich M, Shoichet BK, Tang WJ (2003) Structure-based inhibitor discovery against adenylyl cyclase toxins from pathogenic bacteria that cause anthrax and whooping cough. J Biol Chem 278:25990–25997
Song L, Hobaugh MR, Shustak C, Cheley S, Bayley H, Gouaux JE (1996) Structure of staphylococcal alpha-hemolysin, a heptameric transmembrane pore. Science 274:1859–1866
Sternbach G (2003) The history of anthrax. J Emerg Med 24:463–467
Sterne M (1937) Avirulent anthrax vaccine. Onderstepoort J Vet Sci Anima Ind 21:41–43
Tang G, Leppla SH (1999) Proteasome activity is required for anthrax lethal toxin to kill macrophages. Infect Immun 67:3055–3060
Tonello F, Seveso M, Marin O, Mock M, Montecucco C (2002) Screening inhibitors of anthrax lethal factor. Nature 418:386
Tonello F, Ascenzi P, Montecucco C (2003) The metalloproteolytic activity of the anthrax lethal factor is substrate-inhibited. J Biol Chem 278:40075–40078
Tucker AE, Salles, II, Voth DE, Ortiz-Leduc W, Wang H, Dozmorov I, Centola M, Ballard JD (2003) Decreased glycogen synthase kinase 3-beta levels and related physiological changes in Bacillus anthracis lethal toxin-treated macrophages. Cell Microbiol 5:523–532
Turk BE, Wong TY, Schwarzenbacher R, Jarrell ET, Leppla SH, Collier RJ, Liddington RC, Cantley LC (2004) The structural basis for substrate and inhibitor selectivity of the anthrax lethal factor. Nat Struct Mol Biol 11:60–66
Turnbull PC (2002) Introduction: anthrax history, disease and ecology. Curr Top Microbiol Immunol 271:1–19
Varughese M, Teixeira AV, Liu S, Leppla SH (1999) Identification of a receptor-binding region within domain 4 of the protective antigen component of anthrax toxin. Infect Immun 67:1860–1865
Vick JA, Lincoln RE, Klein F, Mahlandt BG, Walker JS, Fish DC (1968) Neurological and physiological responses of the primate to anthrax toxin. J Infect Dis 118:85–96
Vitale G, Pellizzari R, Recchi C, Napolitani G, Mock M, Montecucco C (1998) Anthrax lethal factor cleaves the N-terminus of MAPKKs and induces tyrosine/threonine phosphorylation of MAPKs in cultured macrophages. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 248:706–711
Vitale G, Bernardi L, Napolitani G, Mock M, Montecucco C (2000) Susceptibility of mitogen-activated protein kinase kinase family members to proteolysis by anthrax lethal factor. Biochem J 352:739–745
Wang XM, Mock M, Ruysschaert JM, Cabiaux V (1996) Secondary structure of anthrax lethal toxin proteins and their interaction with large unilamellar vesicles: a fourier-transform infrared spectroscopy approach. Biochemistry 35:14939–14946
Wang XM, Wattiez R, Mock M, Falmagne P, Ruysschaert JM, Cabiaux V (1997) Structure and interaction of PA63 and EF (edema toxin) of Bacillus anthracis with lipid membrane. Biochemistry 36:14906–14913
Watters JW, Dewar K, Lehoczky J, Boyartchuk V, Dietrich WF (2001) Kif1C, a kinesin-like motor protein, mediates mouse macrophage resistance to anthrax lethal factor. Curr Biol 11:1503–1511
Webster JI, Tonelli LH, Moayeri M, Simons SS Jr, Leppla SH, Sternberg EM (2003) Anthrax lethal factor represses glucocorticoid and progesterone receptor activity. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 100:5706–5711
Welkos SL, Keener TJ, Gibbs PH (1986) Differences in susceptibility of inbred mice to Bacillus anthracis. Infect Immun 51:795–800
Wesche J, Elliott JL, Falnes PO, Olsnes S, Collier RJ (1998) Characterization of membrane translocation by anthrax protective antigen. Biochemistry 37:15737–15746
Wild MA, Xin H, Maruyama T, Nolan MJ, Calveley PM, Malone JD, Wallace MR, Bowdish KS (2003) Human antibodies from immunized donors are protective against anthrax toxin in vivo. Nat Biotechnol 21:1305–1306
Yan M, Collier RJ (2003) Characterization of dominant-negative forms of anthrax protective antigen. Mol Med 9:46–51
Zhao J, Milne JC, Collier RJ (1995) Effect of anthrax toxin's lethal factor on ion channels formed by the protective antigen. J Biol Chem 270:18626–18630

Rev Physiol Biochem Pharmacol (2004) 152:165–182
DOI 10.1007/s10254-004-0029-1

H. Barth

Uptake of binary actin ADP-ribosylating toxins

Published online: 11 September 2004

Abstract The focus of this article is on the cellular uptake mechanism of the family of binary actin ADP-ribosylating toxins from clostridia. These toxins are special-type AB toxins, because they are composed of two nonlinked proteins, which have to assemble on the surface of eukaryotic cells to act cytotoxically. The enzymatically active component (A), ADP-ribosylates G-actin in the cytosol of target cells. This leads to a complete depolymerization of the actin filaments and, thereby, to rounding up of cultured cells. The second component of these toxins, the binding/translocation component (B), mediates the transport of the enzyme component into the cytosol.

Abbreviations *B.: Bacillus* · *C.: Clostridium* · *C2I:* Enzyme component of C2 toxin · *C2II:* Binding/translocation component of C2 toxin · *CHO:* Chinese hamster ovary · *DHFR:* Dihydrofolate reductase · *ER:* Endoplasmic reticulum · *Ia:* Enzyme component of iota toxin · *Ib:* Binding/translocation component of iota toxin · *MTX:* Methotrexate · *PA:* Anthrax protective antigen · *v-ATPase:* Vesicular-type H^+-ATPase · *VIP:* Vegetative insecticidal protein · *Hsp:* Heat shock protein

Introduction

Bacterial exotoxins represent well known pathogenic factors for several serious human diseases. By definition, these proteins act independently of the presence of the bacteria that produce them. After secretion by the bacteria, the toxins bind to eukaryotic target cells and are taken up into the cytoplasm by a series of steps including: (a) docking of the toxin to specific receptors on the cell surface; (b) receptor-mediated endocytosis; (c) translocation of the toxin into the cytosol, where they modify specific substrate proteins. This

H. Barth (✉)
Institut für Experimentelle und Klinische Pharmakologie und Toxikologie,
Albert-Ludwigs-Universität Freiburg, Otto-Krayer-Haus, Albertstrasse 25, 79104 Freiburg, Germany

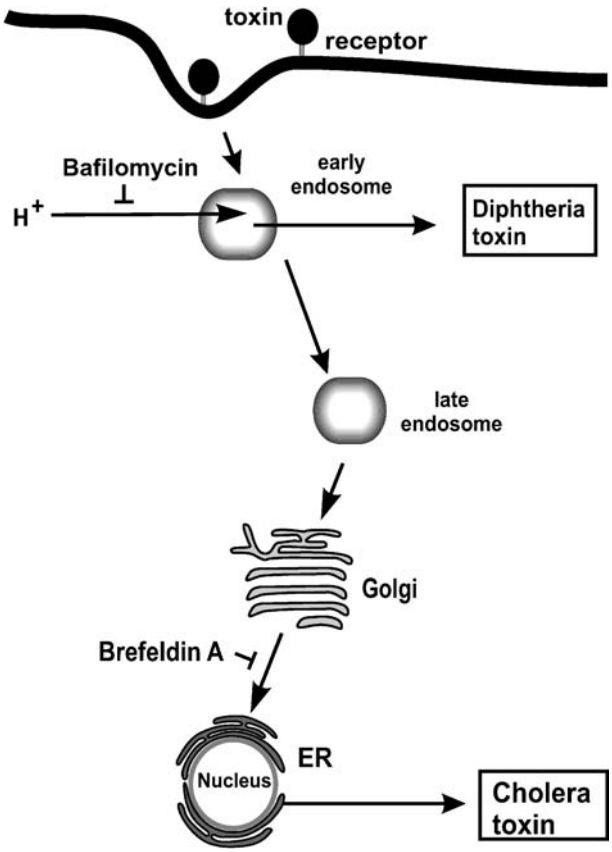


Fig. 1 Uptake pathways of bacterial toxins into eukaryotic cells. Following binding of the toxin to receptors on the surface of target cells and endocytosis, there are two classical intracellular traffic pathways, which are used by bacterial toxins to reach the cytosol. The so-called short trip toxins such as, for example, diphtheria toxin translocate from early endosomes into the cytosol. Therefore, acidification of the endosomal lumen by the v-type H^+-ATPase is essential. Acidification of endosomes and thereby translocation of the toxins can be blocked by the inhibitor bafilomycin A1. The second type, the long trip toxins, is delivered from early endosomes via late endosomes and the Golgi apparatus to the endoplasmic reticulum (*ER*). For this routing, a special sequence in the protein, the so-called KDEL-like sequence, is necessary. These toxins translocate from the ER into the cytosol

causes structural alteration and functional changes of these proteins and finally leads to various cellular effects, including cell death.

There are two commonly used routes by which toxins are taken up (Fig. 1) (for a review see Sandvig and Van Deurs 2002). In the first pathway, the toxins translocate from early acidic endosomal compartments into the cytosol. This pathway, which is used by diphtheria toxin, the anthrax toxins or the *Clostridium botulinum* neurotoxins, can be specifically blocked by the drug bafilomycin A1, which is an inhibitor of endosomal acidification (Werner et al. 1984). During the so-called retrograde uptake pathway, the toxins also reach acidic endosomes but then they are transported to the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) via late endosomes and the Golgi apparatus. These toxins translocate from the ER into the cytosol. This pathway can be inhibited by brefeldin A, an inhibitor of vesicle trafficking between the Golgi apparatus and the ER. However, to enter the cytosol of host cells, the toxins have to cross at least one cellular membrane. For this purpose, bacterial toxins are organized in different functional domains: an enzymatically active domain (A-domain) and a binding/translocation domain (B-domain). The B-domain mediates the transport of the A-domain across membranes into the cytosol of target cells. The A-domain enzymatically modifies substrate proteins, which have essential functions for the host cells. These proteins serve either as central elements in signal transduction pathways,

as for example GTPases, or the toxin substrate proteins represent important structure proteins for the cell. Here, the cellular uptake mechanism of a special family of bacterial toxins, the binary actin ADP-ribosylating toxins, is reviewed.

Binary actin ADP-ribosylating toxins

In most bacterial toxins, the A- and the B-domain are located on the same polypeptide chain, but in a special group of bacterial toxins, the binary toxins, the A- and the B-domain are located on two individual and nonlinked proteins. The binding/translocation component and the enzyme component have to assemble on the cell surface to exhibit their cytotoxic effects (for review see Barth et al. 2002a). To the group of binary toxins belong the lethal toxin and the edema toxin from *Bacillus anthracis* (for reviews see Leppla 1995 and Mourez et al. 2002) and the family of binary actin-ADP-ribosylating toxins. This family includes *C. botulinum* C2 toxin (Aktories et al. 1986), *C. perfringens* iota toxin (Perelle et al. 1993; Stiles and Wilkens 1986), *C. spiroforme* toxin (Popoff and Boquet 1988; Stiles and Wilkins 1986), *C. difficile* ADP-ribosyltransferase (Popoff et al. 1988; Gülke et al. 2001) and the vegetative insecticidal proteins (VIP) toxins from *B. cereus* (Han et al. 1999) (for overview see Table 1).

C. botulinum C2 toxin

C. botulinum is an anaerobic spore forming bacterium that produces various toxins. The extremely potent neurotoxins cause botulism in humans (Simpson 1981). Beside the neurotoxins C1 and D, *C. botulinum* type C and D strains produce the enterotoxic C2 toxin, an actin-ADP-ribosylating toxin, which causes necrotic and hemorrhagic lesions in the intestinal wall (Simpson 1984a; Ohishi and Odagiri 1984; Ohishi and DasGupta 1987; Ohishi 2000). Because the gene for the C2 toxin is located in the bacterial chromosome and the genes for the neurotoxins C1 and D are located on phage DNA, phage curing of such *C. botulinum* strains results in strains that still produce C2 toxin but no neurotoxins (Rubin et al. 1988). C2 toxin seems not to be involved in botulism but it is lethal when it is applied to animals. Between 60 and 90 min after application of 1–2 pmol of C2 toxin, mice, rats, guinea pigs and chicken died and for mice the LD_{50} (intravenously) is less than 50 fmol of C2 toxin (Ohishi and Odagiri 1984; Simpson 1984a). C2 toxin was purified by Ohishi and coworkers in 1980 (Ohishi et al. 1980). This toxin is composed of two individual and nonlinked proteins (see Fig. 2): the binding and translocation component C2II and the enzyme component C2I (Ohishi et al. 1980). The enterotoxic effects of the C2 toxin were observed only when both components were applied together to animals because C2I is translocated into the cytoplasm by the binding component C2II following receptor-mediated endocytosis (Simpson 1989).

The enzymatic component C2I possesses ADP-ribosyltransferase activity (Simpson et al. 1988; Simpson 1984b) and Aktories and co-workers identified C2 toxin as the first toxin to have actin as its cellular substrate (Aktories et al. 1986). Therefore, with the identification of C2 toxin the new family of binary bacterial ADP-ribosylating toxins was introduced. C2I exclusively ADP-ribosylates G-actin at arginine-177 (Vandekerckhove et al. 1988). ADP-ribosylated G-actin acts as a ‘capping protein’ at the fast growing ends (plus or barbed ends) of actin filaments with the consequence that no more G-actin molecules

Table 1 Binary actin ADP-ribosylating toxins

Components of the toxin	M_r (kDa)	Enzymatic activity
C. botulinum C2 toxin		
C2I	49 (Fujii et al. 1996)	ADP-ribosylation of actin
C2II	81 (Kimura et al. 1998)	
	60 (activated) (Blöcker et al. 2000)	
C. perfringens iota toxin		
Ia	45 (Perelle et al. 1993)	ADP-ribosylation of actin
Ib	94 (Perelle et al. 1993)	
	81 (activated) (Perelle et al. 1993)	
C. spiroforme toxin		
Sa	44 (Popoff et al. 1989)	ADP-ribosylation of actin
Sb	92 (Popoff et al. 1989)	
	76 (activated) (Popoff et al. 1989)	
C. difficile CDT		
CDTa	48 (Perelle et al. 1997)	ADP-ribosylation of actin
CDTb	99 (Perelle et al. 1997)	
	75 (activated (Perelle et al. 1997))	
B. cereus VIP		
VIP2	52 (Warren et al. 1996)	ADP-ribosylation of actin
VIP1	100 (Warren et al. 1996)	
	80 (activated) (Warren et al. 1996)	

are able to assemble to this end of the filaments (Weigt et al. 1989; Wegner and Aktories 1988). Because at the slow growing ends of the filaments the disassembly of actin monomers continues, actin filaments depoylmerize. ADP-ribosylation also affects the interaction of actin with various actin binding proteins as gelsolin (Wille et al. 1992). The cytotoxic effects of C2 toxin on cells is depicted schematically in Fig. 2A. In summary, these effects result in a complete breakdown of the actin cytoskeleton so that treatment of cultured cells with both components of C2 toxin leads to rounding up of the cells within about 2–3 h.

The enzymatic component C2I (49.4 kDa, 431 amino acids) from *C. botulinum* strain KZZ1577 (92-13) was cloned and the protein was characterized in detail (Barth et al. 1998b) (see Fig. 2B). The N-terminal domain of C2I serves as an adaptor for interaction with C2II (Barth et al. 1998a) and the C-terminal domain of C2I domain harbors the catalytic site, which was characterized by site directed mutagenesis (Barth et al. 1998b).

There are several highly conserved amino acid residues located in the active site in most ADP-ribosyltransferases. The so-called catalytic glutamic acid residue is essential for transferase activity and in all ADP-ribosyltransferases, which ADP-ribosylate arginine residues, there is a second essential glutamic acid residue upstream of the ‘catalytic’ glutamic acid (Carroll and Collier 1984; Jung et al. 1993). In C2I, Glu389 is the ‘catalytic’ glutamic acid and Glu387 is the second conserved glutamic acid residue (Barth et al. 1998b). Further conserved motifs in ADP-ribosyltransferases are the serine-threonine-serine sequence (‘STS’ motif, residues 348, 349, 350 in C2I) upstream of the glutamic acids and an arginine residue (R299 in C2I) upstream of the ‘STS’ motif (Barth et al. 1998b).

A detailed analysis of the N-terminal domain of C2I revealed that the minimal sequence necessary for interaction with C2IIa and/or for translocation of C2I into the cytoplasm covers residues 1–87 (Barth et al. 2002b). C2I shares high amino acid sequence identity with the binary actin-ADP-ribosylating VIP2 (Barth et al. 2002b). Recently, the crystal structure of VIP2 toxin from *B. cereus* was solved (Han et al. 1999) and it is sug-

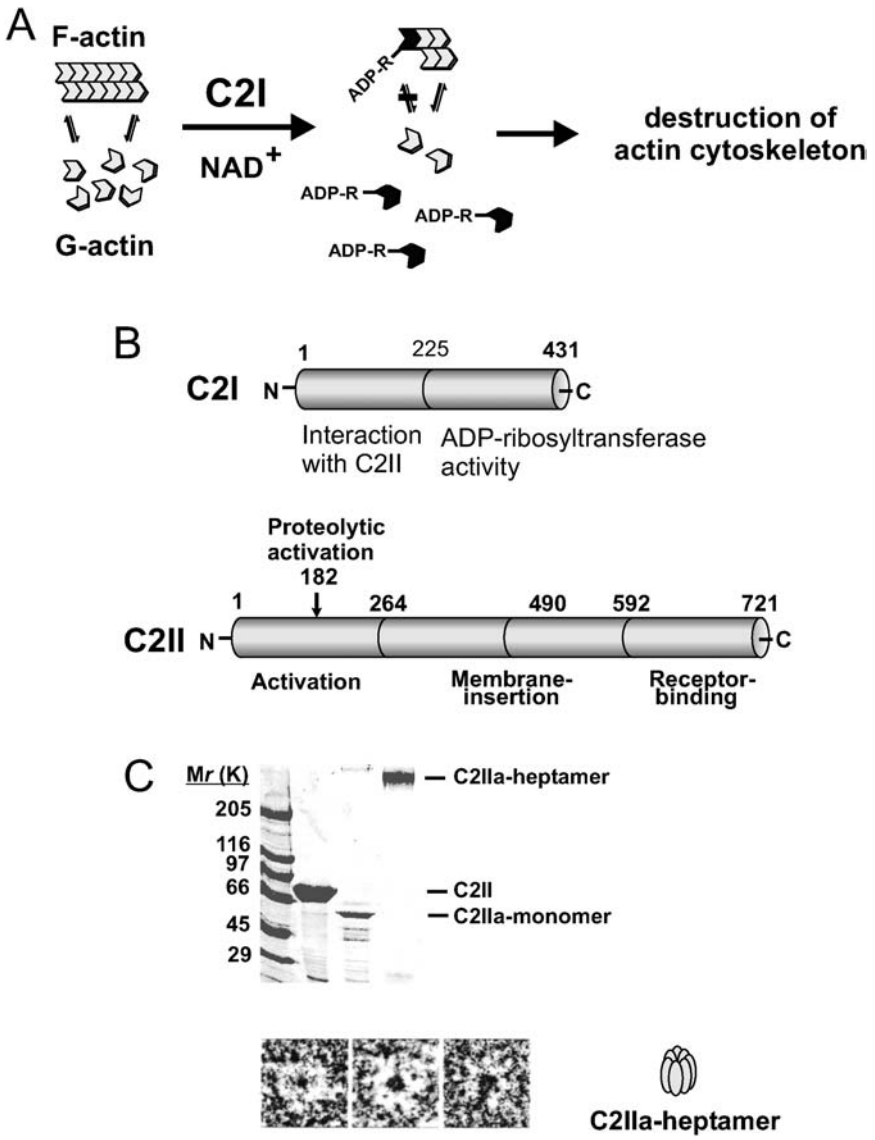


Fig. 2A–C The binary *C. botulinum* C2 toxin. **A** Intracellular mode of action of the C2I enzyme component. C2I ADP-ribosylates G-actin at position Arg177. ADP-ribosylated G-actin assembles to the fast growing end actin filaments but than acts as a capping protein and prevents further assembling of actin monomers. This leads to depolymerization of actin filaments and to a complete breakdown of the actin cytoskeleton. For further details see text. **B** The two components of C2 toxin. The enzyme component C2I has two functional domains, the N-terminal domain (residues 1–225) acts as an adaptor for interaction with the C2II binding component and mediates translocation of C2I across membranes. The C-terminal domain harbors the catalytic domain with the conserved amino acid residues. The C2II binding component can be functionally divided into four domains according to the protective antigen from *B. anthracis* (for details see text). C2II has to be cleaved by trypsin at position 182 within domain 1 to become activated. Domain 2 seems to be involved in membrane insertion and domain 4 is the receptor binding domain. **C** Activated C2IIa forms SDS-resistant heptamers in solution. The Coomassie blue-stained SDS–polyacrylamide gel is shown in the *upper panel*. Electron microscopy from C2IIa heptamers show ring-shaped structures (*lower left panel*), which represent the so-called pre-pore form of C2IIa. The C2IIa pre-pore is depicted in the *lower right panel*

gested that C2I has an identical folding. Amino acid alignment of C2I with VIP2 revealed that amino acids 1–225 of C2I correspond to the N domain of VIP2 (Barth et al. 2002b). Amino acids 1–87 of C2I, which are sufficient to mediate the uptake of a $C2I^{1-87}$–C3 fusion toxin into cells, are related to the N-terminal α-helices 1–4 in VIP2. The residues 12–29 of C2I correspond to the first α-helical structure (α1) in VIP2. After truncation of the N-terminal residues 1–29 of C2I, the resulting $C2I^{30-225}$–C3 fusion toxin is not transported into cells in the presence of the transport unit C2IIa (Barth et al. 2002b). However, residual binding of $C2I^{30-225}$–C3 to cells (via C2IIa) is still possible (Barth et al. 2002b).

Taken together, the N-terminal domain of C2I (residues 1–87 as the minimal essential part) acts as an adaptor, which interacts with C2IIa and to which foreign peptides can be fused. Recently it was demonstrated by Marvaud and colleagues that iota toxin also serves as a vehicle for transport of C3 transferase, when C3 transferase is fused to the Ib docking region of Ia (residues 129–257) (Marvaud et al. 2002).

C2I is delivered into the cytosol of target cells by the binding/translocation component C2II. C2II from *C. botulinum* strain KZZ1577 (92–13) is a protein of 721 amino acid residues with a molecular mass of 80.5 kDa (Barth et al. 1998b) (see Fig. 2B). Cloning of C2II revealed a high sequence similarity to the anthrax protective antigen (PA), the binding/translocation component of the anthrax toxins (Blöcker et al. 2000). Anthrax toxins are produced and secreted by *B. anthracis* which causes the disease anthrax. PA mediates cell entry of two different enzyme components, the lethal factor, a metalloprotease, which cleaves MAP-kinases (Duesbery et al. 1998) or the edema factor, which is an adenylyl cyclase (Leppla 1982, 1989). The crystal structure of PA and a detailed structure–function analysis of this protein was extremely helpful for the studies on C2II (Petosa et al. 1997). Reviews on the role of PA for cellular uptake of anthrax toxins are acknowledged (Leppla et al. 1995; Mourez et al. 2002, see also article by M. Mourez, this volume). Based on the crystallographic data, PA is divided into four functional domains: the N-terminal domain 1 with the activation site for the protease, domain 2 which is involved in membrane insertion, domain 3 of unknown function, and the C-terminal domain 4, which mediates receptor binding. Alignment of C2II and PA reveals significant sequence identity within domains 1–3 (about 50%) but no homology in domain 4, because PA and C2I bind to different cellular receptors (Blöcker et al. 2000). Thus, like PA, C2IIa can be divided into four domains, which have been studied for their role in the uptake of C2 toxin into cells.

To mediate cytotoxic effects, i.e., transport of C2I into cells, C2II has to be activated by proteolytic cleavage, which cuts off a ~20-kDa peptide from the N terminus (Ohishi 1987; Barth et al. 2000). For in vitro activation of C2II, the trypsin cleavage site was identified between amino acid residues Lys181 and Ala182 (Blöcker et al. 2000). The resulting active C2IIa fragment (59.8 kDa), but not C2II, immediately forms heat-labile and SDS-stable heptamers (~ 420 kDa) in solution (Barth et al. 2000). The C2IIa heptamers are annular structures with an inner diameter of about 2–4 nm and an outer diameter of about 11–13 nm (see Fig. 2C). C2II and activated C2IIa exhibit different abilities with respect to their role in mediating cytotoxicity. C2IIa, but not C2II, binds to cells and mediates cellular uptake of C2I (Barth et al. 2000). Moreover, only C2IIa forms ion-permeable channels in cell membranes as well as in artificial black lipid bilayer membranes (Schmid et al. 1994; Barth et al. 2000). Like C2II, PA (83 kDa) is activated by proteolytic cleavage. A 20-kDa fragment is removed from the N terminus by the cellular protease furin (Klimpel et al. 1992). The resulting PA-63 forms heptamers on the surface of cells (Milne

et al. 1994) and recently it was shown that lethal and edema factors bind only to the oligomeric form of PA-63 (Mogridge et al. 2002). Moreover, like C2II, PA-63 forms ion-permeable channels in artificial lipid bilayer membranes and in membranes of intact cells (Blaustein et al. 1989; Milne and Collier 1993). The role of the C2IIa heptamers in docking to the cellular C2 toxin-receptor, the function of C2IIa channels for the transport of C2I into the cytosol, the interaction of both components, and the involvement of host cell proteins in the cellular uptake mechanism of C2 toxin have been elucidated in past years.

The receptor for C2 toxin

The first step required for cellular uptake of C2 toxin is the binding of the C2IIa heptamers to specific receptor molecules on the surface of target cells. The receptor for C2 toxin was the first one identified within the family of binary actin-ADP-ribosylating toxins. Recently, a mutant Chinese hamster ovary (CHO) cell line (CHO-RK14) was used to demonstrate that C2 toxin binds to asparagine-linked complex and hybrid carbohydrates on the surface of cells (Eckhardt et al. 2000). This mutant CHO cell line, which was generated by chemical mutagenesis, was resistant to C2 toxin but still sensitive to *C. perfringens* iota toxin (Fritz et al. 1995). Moreover, CHO-RK14 cells were not able to bind C2IIa because they were deficient of the functional C2 toxin receptor. CHO-RK14 cells are mutated in the gene for N-acetylglucosaminyltransferase I. Therefore, these cells are lacking complex and hybrid N-glycans, which are essential for C2 toxin binding (Eckhardt et al. 2000) (see Fig. 3A). Transfection of these mutated cells with the intact N-acetylglucosaminyltransferase I gene recovered sensitivity of the cells against C2 toxin (Eckhardt et al. 2000). The receptor for C2 toxin was present on all vertebrate cell lines and primary cultured cells, which have been tested so far for sensitivity to C2 toxin, including cells from fish (Eckhardt et al. 2000). However, cells derived from insects have different carbohydrate structures on the cell surface and such cells are resistant to the toxin, suggesting that the described carbohydrate structure might be sufficient for binding of C2IIa. C2II binds with its C-terminal domain to the cell receptor. Recently, we reported that the C-terminal amino acids are structurally important for interaction with the receptor. When the seven C-terminal amino acid residues were deleted, C2II still forms heptamers, but these heptamers are no more able to bind to cells (Blöcker et al. 2000).

Cellular uptake of C2 toxin

Following binding of C2IIa to the cellular receptor, C2I assembles and the receptor–toxin complexes are taken up via receptor-mediated endocytosis (Simpson 1989). The endocytosed toxin reaches endosomal compartments (Barth et al. 2000). As mentioned above, from this point there are two intracellular pathways for trafficking of toxins which are commonly used by bacterial toxins to reach the cytosol. C2 toxin does not take the retrograde pathway, as intoxication of cells with C2 toxin is not inhibited by brefeldin A or nocodazole, drugs that block this pathway (Barth et al. 2000). C2 toxin translocates directly from early acidic endosomes into the cytosol. As mentioned above, this step can be blocked by bafilomycin A1, which specifically blocks the vesicular-type H^+-ATPase (v-ATPase) (Barth et al. 2000). This ATPase is located in the membrane of endosomes and drives the acidification of the endosomal compartment. Acidification of the endosomal lu-

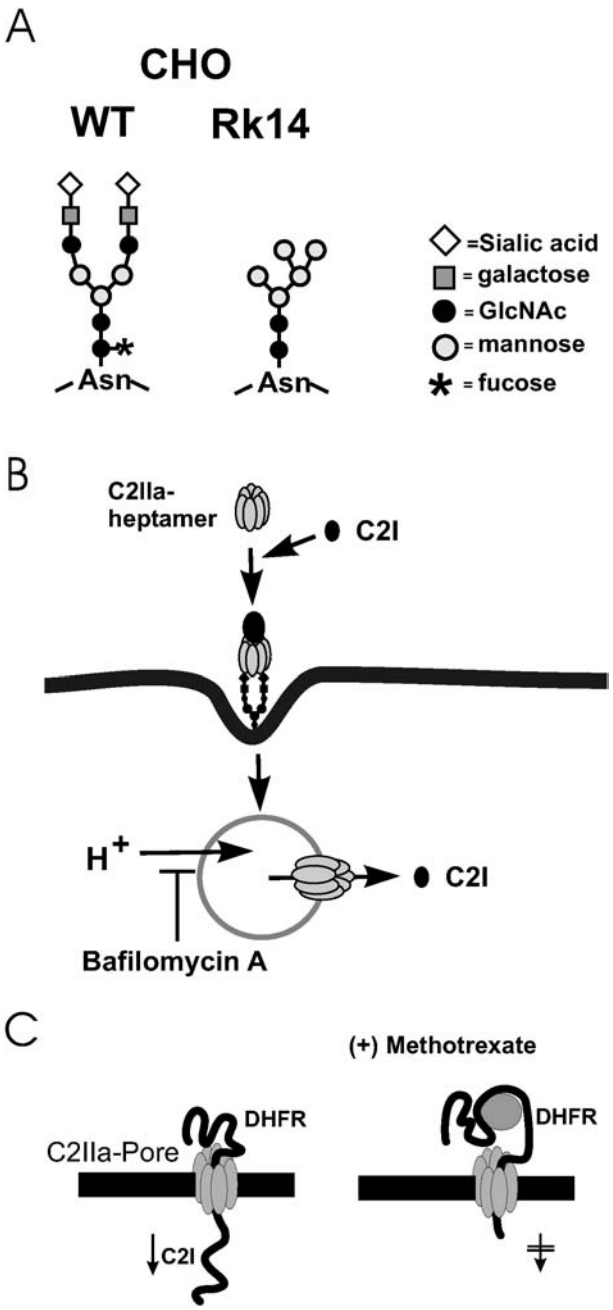


Fig. 3A–C Cellular receptor and uptake mechanism of C2 toxin. **A** C2 toxin binds to asparagine (*Asn*)-linked complex and hybrid carbohydrates. The receptor for the C2 toxin of Chinese hamster ovary (*CHO*) wild-type (*WT*) and of C2 toxin-resistant CHO-RK14 mutant cells is depicted. **B** Model of the cellular uptake mechanism of *C. botulinum* C2 toxin. The enzyme components C2I assemble with the C2IIa heptamers, which mediate binding to the receptor. The whole complex is taken up via receptor-mediated endocytosis and reaches early endosomes. After acidification of the endosomal lumen, C2IIa heptamers insert into the endosomal membrane and thereby form pores. C2I is translocated into the cytosol, most likely via the pores. Bafilomycin A inhibits the v-type ATPase in the endosomal membrane and prevents pore formation of C2IIa and translocation of C2I. **C** Translocation of C2I across endosomal membranes requires unfolding of the protein. The C2I-DHFR (dihydrofolate reductase) fusion protein was delivered across cell membranes by the C2IIa component. In the presence of the substrate methotrexate (*MTX*), the DHFR domain was stabilized in a folded state and its unfolding and translocation of the MTX-bound C2I-DHFR fusion toxin was prevented

men induces a conformational change of C2IIa and thereby leads to exposure of hydrophobic residues to the surface of the protein. As a consequence of acidification, membrane insertion and pore formation of C2IIa occurs and C2I translocates into the cytosol (see Fig. 3B).

The series of events involved in delivery of active C2 toxin into the cytosol can be mimicked at the surface of intact cells (see Fig. 3B) (Barth et al. 2000). This method allows monitoring of the single steps as membrane insertion, pore formation and translocation of the enzyme component into the cytosol. In brief, the components of C2 toxin were allowed to bind to the membrane receptors of cultured cells at 4°C, i.e., under conditions in which endocytosis cannot occur. Subsequently, a short pulse of acidic and warm (pH< 5.5 for 5 min) medium, which was given to the cells, induced delivery of the toxin into the cytosol, directly across the cell membrane (Barth et al. 2000). Pore formation of C2IIa can be determined by measuring the efflux of radioactive rubidium-86 from preloaded cells (Blöcker et al. 2003). Pore formation was observed only with the proteolytically activated C2IIa under acidic conditions and it was dependent on binding of C2IIa to its receptor. When the enzyme component C2I was present in such experiments, the efflux of rubidium from cells was reduced, suggesting that following acidification, C2IIa inserts into the membranes and forms pores and that C2I interacts with the inner part of the channel (Blöcker et al. 2003). It was possible to deliver C2I into the cytosol under the experimental conditions described but a precise timing and coordination of the individual steps was essential. C2I has to be bound to C2IIa prior to acidification in order to become translocated. This finding implies that once the C2IIa pore is formed in the membranes, it does not act as a nonspecific channel for trafficking free C2I molecules from the medium into the cytosol (Blöcker et al. 2003). With respect to the conditions in endosomes, this observation is important because it demonstrates that insertion of C2IIa into membranes, pore formation and translocation of C2I is a precisely coordinated process, which is initiated by an acidic milieu. Interestingly, intoxication of cells by C2 toxin is observed only under conditions in which pore formation of C2IIa can occur, indicating that these pores are absolutely essential for delivery of C2I into the cytosol (Blöcker et al. 2003). The central question is the role of the C2IIa pore for the translocation mechanism of C2I. There are two possibilities: (a) C2IIa pores are necessary for the translocation of C2I but not directly involved in this step or (b) the C2IIa pores are directly involved in the membrane transport of C2I. If this second hypothesis holds true, one should expect an interaction of C2I with C2IIa during the membrane translocation. It was shown experimentally by the use of different approaches that C2I interacts directly with the C2IIa pores. One approach was the efflux of radioactive rubidium through C2IIa pores in the membranes of intact cells, which was reduced in the presence of C2I, as described above (Blöcker et al. 2003). In parallel, it was found that C2I interacted with the lumen of C2IIa channels in artificial lipid membranes (Blöcker et al. 2003). However, there has still been the question of whether C2I is transported directly through the C2IIa channel from acidic endosomes into the cytoplasm. Because the inner diameter of the channel is only about 1–2 nm (Barth et al. 2000), it was an interesting question whether C2I needs to unfold for translocation. Unfolding of C2I during translocation across membranes was studied with a fusion protein consisting of C2I and dihydrofolate reductase (DHFR), which was C-terminally fused to C2I, as a tool (Haug et al. 2003b) (see Fig. 3C). The C2I–DHFR fusion protein was active in vitro and was delivered by C2IIa into the cytosol of cells as detected by rounding of intoxicated cells and subsequent in vitro ADP-ribosylation of the actin of those intoxicated cells (Haug et al. 2003b). When radiolabeled NAD as cosubstrate and C2I was added to lysates from intoxicated cells, no radioactively labeled actin was detectable (Haug et al. 2003b). This demonstrates that the complete actin was already ADP-ribosylated in intact cells by C2 toxin. When methotrexate, a substrate of DHFR, was

present during incubation of cells with C2I–DHFR, intoxication of cells was clearly reduced. Binding of methotrexate (MTX) to DHFR keeps the DHFR domain of the C2I–DHFR fusion protein in a folded conformation, which is not able to unfold during C2IIa-mediated translocation of the protein across endosomal membranes (Haug et al. 2003b). The principle of the DHFR/MTX translocation system is depicted in Fig. 3C. This finding favors a model which includes an at least partial unfolding of C2I during its translocation into the cytosol. Similar results were obtained with anthrax toxin (Wesche et al. 1998).

The host cell chaperone Hsp90 is essential for uptake of C2 toxin

The model that C2I translocates in an unfolded conformation from early endosomes into the cytosol implies that the protein has to become refolded in the cytosol to recover its enzymatic activity. In principle, there are three possibilities how this refolding can be achieved: (a) C2I harbors intrinsic chaperone activity; (b) the C2IIa pore refolds C2I prior to its release into the cytosol; and (c) host cell chaperones are involved in refolding of C2I. To address this question, the specific pharmacological inhibitors for the heat shock protein (Hsp)90, geldanamycin and radicicol were used to block Hsp90 in eukaryotic target cells prior to incubation of the cells with C2 toxin (Haug et al. 2003a). Each of the inhibitors dramatically delayed intoxication of cells by C2 toxin. Further analysis revealed that the Hsp90 inhibitors had no effect on the early steps of C2 toxin uptake into cells such as binding of the toxin to its receptor or interaction of the two toxin components (Haug et al. 2003a). The Hsp90 inhibitors prevented the translocation of C2I from early acidic endosomes into the cytosol. When cells were pretreated with either geldanamycin or radicicol, C2I was trapped in endosomal compartments (Haug et al. 2003a) (see Fig. 4). The role of Hsp90 in cellular uptake is summarized in Fig. 4. Inhibition of Hsp90 also inhibited intoxication of cells by an artificial fusion construct, which was constructed based on the C2 toxin as a protein transport system (Haug et al. 2003a) and intoxication by iota-like toxins (Haug et al. 2004). This was the first time that an involvement of host cell chaperones in the cellular uptake mechanism was reported for binary bacterial toxins. Recently, a similar role of Hsp90 was reported by Ratts and co-workers for the uptake of diphtheria toxin into eukaryotic cells (Ratts et al. 2003), a finding that suggests that the dependence of toxin translocation on host cell chaperones might be a more general principle for bacterial toxins. The precise role of Hsp90 in translocation of bacterial toxins across endosomal membranes has to be elucidated in further studies.

Cellular uptake mechanism of iota-like toxins

Besides the C2 toxin, the iota-like toxins belong to the family of binary actin-ADP-ribosylating toxins. These toxins are very similar to C2 toxin but differ in their substrate specificity. C2 toxin ADP-ribosylates only β/γ-nonmuscle G-actin and γ-smooth muscle actin isoforms but no α-actin isoforms (muscle actin) while the iota-like toxins ADP-ribosylate all actin isoforms, including α-actin isoforms (Mauss et al. 1990). The binary iota toxin, the prototype of the iota-like toxins, is produced by *C. perfringens* type E strains and consists of the enzymatically active Ia component, the ADP-ribosyltransferase, and the binding/translocation component Ib (Stiles and Wilkens 1986). When Ia or Ib are combined,

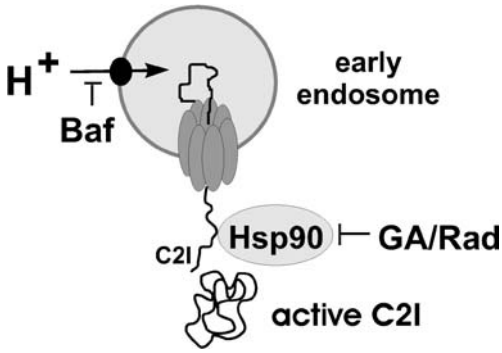


Fig. 4 Model for the translocation of C2 toxin from early endosomes into the cytosol. The translocation of C2I from early endosomes into the cytosol of target cells depends on acidification of the endosomal lumen and on membrane insertion and pore formation of the C2IIa component. Moreover, the host cell chaperone Hsp90 is essential for translocation of C2I across endosomal membranes. Inhibition of Hsp90 by the specific inhibitors radicicol (*Rad*) or geldanamycin (*GA*) prevented delivery of C2I into the cytosol. C2I was trapped in endosomal vesicles

the resulting toxin causes diarrhea in calves and lambs and is lethal to mice and dermonecrotic in guinea pigs (Songer 1996).

The crystal structure of Ia was solved recently (Tsuge et al. 2003). As reported for VIP2 and C2I, Ia consists of two domains, which have similar folding but only little sequence similarity (Tsuge et al. 2003). The catalytic domain is located at the C terminus of Ia. Structure–function analysis of the enzyme component Ia revealed that residues R295, E378, and E380 are the conserved EXE motif, which is found in ADP-ribosyltransferases (Perelle et al. 1993; Tsuge et al. 2003). The 'STS sequence' and the conserved arginine residue, which is characteristic of ADP-ribosyltransferases, was identified upstream of the EXE motif (Tsuge et al. 2003). The N-terminal domain of Ia (residues 1–210) interacts with Ib. However, the Ib docking region on Ia (residues 129–257) is not located within the very N terminus, as found for C2I (residues 1–87) or for *C. difficile* transferase (CDT) (residues 1–240), but it is located more centrally within the N-terminal domain (Marvaud et al. 2002).

The binding/translocation component Ib shares high sequence homology to C2II within domains 1–3 but not within domain 4, which represents the receptor binding domain in both proteins (Blöcker et al. 2000). Like C2II, Ib requires proteolytic activation within the N-terminal domains (Barth et al. 2000a, 2000). Cleavage of Ib occurs at position Ala-211 (Perelle et al. 1993). Like C2IIa, activated Iba forms voltage-dependent ion-permeable channels in black lipid membranes (Knapp et al. 2002). Iba forms SDS-stable heptamers on membranes of intact cells and mediates Ia docking (Stiles et al. 2002). Iba heptamers, which have been formed in solution, behave differently from Iba heptamers, which have been formed on the cell surface. Iba oligomers, which are formed in solution, are less stable on SDS–PAGE and do not facilitate cytotoxicity (Stiles et al. 2002; Blöcker et al. 2001). This is a difference to the observations made for C2II (Blöcker et al. 2001; Barth et al. 2000). Moreover, Iba heptamers, which have been formed in solution, do not facilitate K^+ release from cells, suggesting that they are not able to form pores in cell membranes, and are efficiently digested by protease treatment after binding to the surface of cells (Stiles et al. 2002). This is also different from C2IIa, which forms heptamers in solution that represent the biologically active species of C2II with respect to cell binding, pore for-

mation and transport of the enzyme component (Barth et al. 2000). Ib, like C2II, lacks a furin cleavage site and is not activated over time by a cellular protease after binding to cells (Perelle et al. 1993). As for C2II, the receptor binding site of Ib is located in the C-terminal domain. Deletion of 10 amino acid residues from the C terminus abrogates Ib binding to Vero cells (Marvaud et al. 2001). Oligomerization of Iba is essential for cytotoxicity of iota toxin. This was demonstrated in studies with an antibody, which efficiently prevented Ib oligomerization on the cell surface and did inhibit cytotoxic effects of the toxin (Stiles et al. 2002).

C2 toxin and iota toxin bind to different cellular receptors. While all of the mammalian cell types tested so far are sensitive to C2 toxin, there are several cell types that are resistant to iota toxin. C2IIa binds to carbohydrate structures (Eckhardt et al. 2000) but the receptor for Iba is most likely a protein. The latter was postulated because pretreatment of cells with proteases diminished subsequent binding of Iba (Stiles et al. 2000). Moreover, the cellular distribution of the receptors for C2 toxin and for iota toxin on cells that have been shown to be sensitive to both toxins are significantly different(Blöcker et al. 2001). The receptor for Ib is localized primarily on the basolateral surface of polarized human colon carcinoma (CaCo-2) cells while C2 toxin binds to both the basolateral and the apical side (Blöcker et al. 2001).

Iota toxin is taken up into cells in principle by the same mechanism as that described for C2 toxin. However, there are some slight variations. Like C2 toxin, endocytosed iota toxin translocates from early endosomes into the cytosol as the specific inhibitor of vesicular H^+-ATPase bafilomycin A1 protects cultured cells from intoxication by iota toxin (Blöcker et al. 2001). However, when Ia is translocated directly across the plasma membrane of intact cells via Iba by an acidic pulse, a more acidic pH of the medium is required than for C2 toxin (Blöcker et al. 2001). Cellular uptake of iota toxin and CDT from *C. difficile*, another iota-like toxin, depend on host cell Hsp90 (Haug et al. 2004). When cellular Hsp90 was inactivated by pretreatment with radicicol, intoxication of cells was reduced. This observation confirms that despite differences, C2 toxin and the iota-like toxins share the same general uptake mechanism into the cytosol of eukaryotic cells.

Binary toxins as delivery systems for foreign proteins

One central goal for studies with intact eukaryotic cells in pharmacology and cell biology is the delivery of foreign peptides, such as enzymes, into the cytosol. Several methods of bringing proteins into living cells, such as transfection and microinjection techniques, have been established but the use of such methods does not allow a rapid, synchronous and complete delivery of peptides into cells. Therefore, performance of biochemical assays with many cells at the same time point is very limited. Moreover, such techniques may exhibit effects of the living cells themselves. In comparison with these methods, the delivery of peptides into the cytosol of cells by catalytically inactive bacterial toxins as a transport device has the advantage that existing cellular routes for protein trafficking are used and that all of the cells in a culture are affected simultaneously. The binary toxins described in this review have all the properties that are needed for a protein delivery system. We used the C2 toxin and constructed a fusion toxin, which consists of the N-terminal domain of C2I (amino acid residues 1–225 of C2I, called C2IN) and the C3 exoenzyme of *C. limosum* as a reporter enzyme (Barth et al. 1998a, 2002b) (Fig. 5A). The N domain of

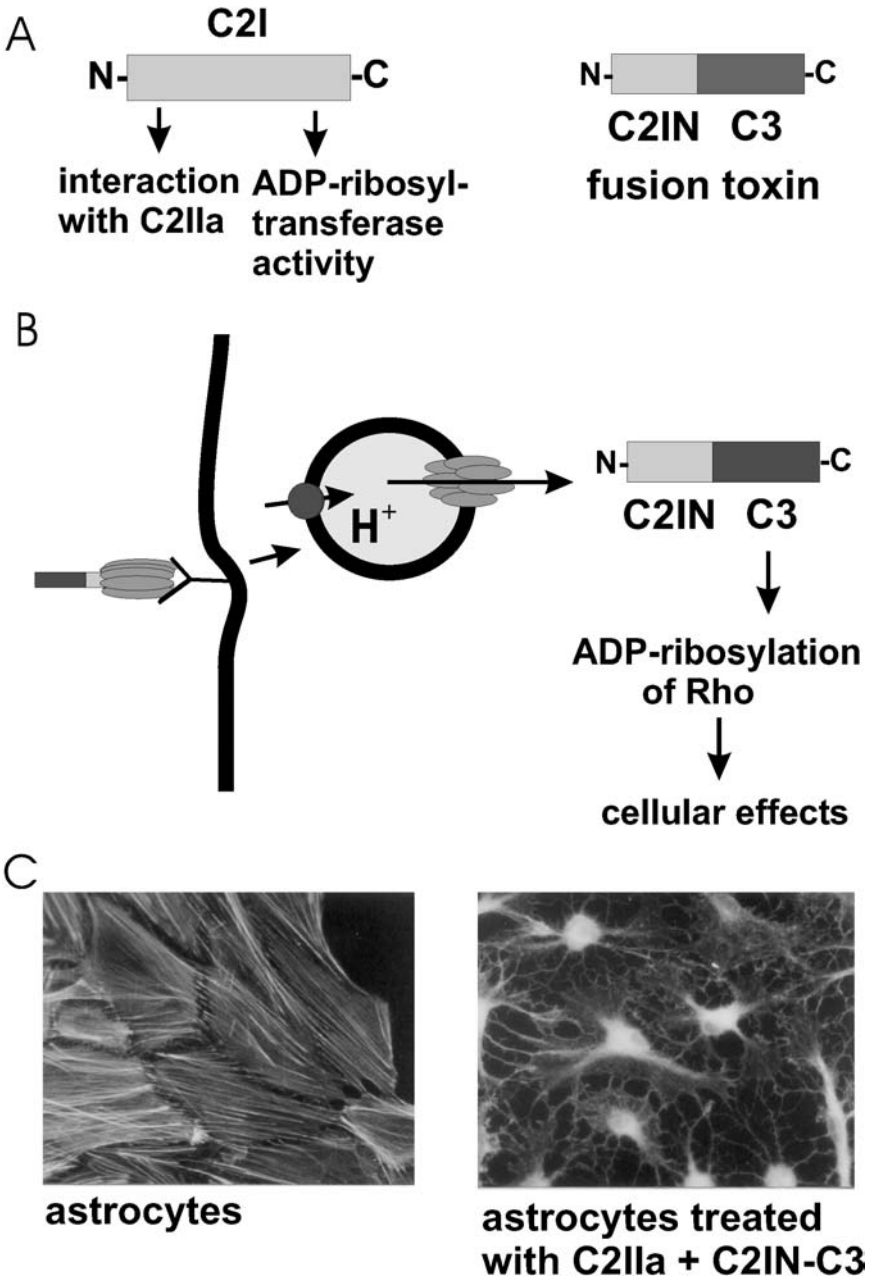


Fig. 5A–C The binary C2 toxin as a cellular protein delivery system for passenger proteins. **A** The C2IN–C3 fusion toxin is composed of the N-terminal domain of C2I (C2IN, amino acid residues 1–225) and the C3 transferase from *C. limosum.* C3 transferase exclusively ADP-ribosylates the GTPase Rho but is not taken up into eukaryotic cells. C2IN acts as an adaptor for C2IIa-mediated delivery of the fusion toxin into target cells. Amino acid residues 1–225 of C2I interact with C2IIa and are sufficient for translocation of fusion proteins into the cytosol. **B** The translocation of the fusion toxin via C2IIa from acidic endosomes is depicted schematically. **C** Cytotoxic effect of C2IN–C3 fusion toxin on cultured rat astrocytes. Astrocytes were incubated for 3 h at 37°C with C2IN–C3 (100 ng/ml) together with C2IIa (200 ng/ml). As a control, cells were incubated without toxin. The actin filaments, which were stained with rhodamine–phalloidin, are shown

Table 2 The C2IN–C3 fusion toxin in studies on the role of Rho in cell biology and pharmacology

Activation of anion channels	Nilius et al. 1999
Secretion of van Willebrand factor	Vischer et al. 2000
Ephrin-A5-induced neuronal growth cone collapse	Wahl et al. 2000
Uptake and degradation of lipoproteins by macrophages	Sakr et al. 2001
Interleukin-1 receptor induced signaling	Dreikhausen et al. 2001
Aquaporin 2 translocation	Klussmann et al. 2001
Cerebellar granule neuronal survival	Linseman et al. 2001
Cyclooxygenase-2-gene expression	Hahn et al. 2002
Monocyte transendothelial migration	Strey et al. 2002
Volume-regulated anion channels in vascular endothelial cells	Carton et al. 2002
Angiotensin II-induced vasoconstriction	Galle et al. 2003
Mechanism of formation of branched dendrites	Leemhuis et al. 2004

C2I is enzymatically inactive but serves as an adaptor for binding to the C2IIa binding/translocation component and is able to translocate into the cytosol (Barth et al. 1998a). The C3 exoenzyme (~23 kDa) ADP-ribosylates and thereby inactivates the Rho-GTPase. Interestingly, C3 exoenzyme is not able to enter cells, because this protein does not have a binding/translocation domain. Therefore, studies with C3 in intact cells require methods like microinjection. As C3 transferase is the only known specific inhibitor for Rho, it is widely used in studies investigating the role of Rho in cellular signal transduction pathways (for a review see Aktories et al. 2000). The constructed C2IN–C3 fusion toxin specifically modified Rho in vitro and was very efficiently (concentrations of 100 ng of toxin per ml medium together with 200 ng/ml of C2IIa) delivered into various cell types by the C2IIa transport component (Barth et al. 1998a). A complete intoxication of cultured cells was obtained after a 3-h incubation time as indicated by morphological analysis and by in vitro ADP-ribosylation of Rho from lysates of intoxicated cells (Barth et al. 1998a, 1999). The effect of this fusion toxin on cell morphology was transient because the cells recovered their normal morphology when the toxin was degraded in the cytosol of cells. Moreover, it was shown that ADP-ribosylated Rho was degraded and de novo synthesis of Rho was sufficient to induce a complete rebuilding of the actin cytoskeleton (Barth et al. 1999). This makes it possible to use this toxin to study the cellular consequences of a transient but complete inactivation of Rho in intact cells. The mode of action of the C2–C3 fusion toxin is depicted in Fig. 5B and its effect on the morphology of cultured rat astrocytes is shown in Fig. 5C. This fusion toxin was used as a tool in various cell biological and pharmacological studies which are summarized in Table 2.

Conclusion

For many bacterial toxins, pore formation in lipid membranes has been reported and it is a widely accepted hypothesis that pore formation is an essential event in the translocation of bacterial toxins across cellular membranes. However, it has not been shown so far that the active domain of a toxin directly translocates through the pore formed by the binding/translocation domain. Binary toxins are an ideal model with which to study translocation of bacterial toxins across cell membranes. One important reason is that the single components of these toxins can be added to cells sequentially and the individual steps involved in translocation—such as membrane insertion, pore formation and translocation—can be observed independently. The interaction of the binding/translocation domain and the en-

zyme domain can be studied more easily than in one-chain AB toxins, because both are individual proteins, which have specific properties. Thus, the binary toxins are important tools for the study of mechanisms of the uptake of protein toxins into cells.

Acknowledgments. Work in the laboratory of the author is supported by the Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft (SFB 388/A13).

References

Aktories K, Bärmann M, Ohishi I, Tsuyama S, Jakobs KH, Habermann E (1986) Botulinum C2 toxin ADP-ribosylates actin. Nature 322:390–392

Aktories K, Barth H, Just I (2000) *Clostridium botulinum* C3 exoenzyme and C3-like transferases. In: Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology. Springer, Heidelberg Berlin New York, pp 207–233

Barth H, Blöcker D, Aktories K (2002a) The uptake machinery of clostridial actin ADP-ribosylating toxins—a cell delivery system for fusion proteins and polypeptide drugs. Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch Pharmacol 366:501–512

Barth H, Blöcker D, Behlke J, Bergsma-Schutter W, Brisson A, Benz R, Aktories K (2000) Cellular uptake of *Clostridium botulinum* C2 toxin requires oligomerization and acidification. J Biol Chem 275:18704–18711

Barth H, Hofmann F, Olenik C, Just I, Aktories K (1998a) The N-terminal part of the enzyme component (C2I) of the binary *Clostridium botulinum* C2 toxin interacts with the binding component C2II and functions as a carrier system for a Rho ADP-ribosylating C3-like fusion toxin. Infect Immun 66:1364–1369

Barth H, Olenik C, Sehr P, Schmidt G, Aktories K, Meyer DK (1999) Neosynthesis and activation of Rho by *Escherichia coli* cytotoxic necrotizing factor (CNF1) reverse cytopathic effects of ADP-ribosylated Rho. J Biol Chem 274:27407–27414

Barth H, Preiss JC, Hofmann F, Aktories K (1998b) Characterization of the catalytic site of the ADP-ribosyltransferase *Clostridium botulinum* C2 toxin by site-directed mutagenesis. J Biol Chem 273:29506–28511

Barth H, Roebling R, Fritz M, Aktories K (2002b) The binary *Clostridium botulinum* C2 toxin as a protein delivery system. J Biol Chem 277:5074–5081

Blaustein RO, Koehler TM, Collier RJ, Finkelstein A. (1989) Anthrax toxin: channel-forming activity of protective antigen in planar phopholipid bilayers. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 86:2209–2213

Blöcker D, Barth H, Maier E, Benz R, Barbieri JT, Aktories K (2000) The C-terminus of component C2II of *Clostridium botulinum* C2 toxin is essentiell for receptor binding. Infect Immun 68:4566–4573

Blöcker D, Behlke J, Aktories K, Barth H (2001) Cellular uptake of the binary *Clostridium perfringens* iota-toxin. Infect Immun 69:2980–2987

Blöcker D, Pohlmann K, Haug G, Bachmeyer C, Benz R, Aktories K, Barth H (2003) *Clostridium botulinum* C2 toxin: Low pH-induced pore formation is required for translocation of the enzyme component C2I into the cytosol of host cells. J Biol Chem 278:37360–37367)

Carroll SF, Collier RJ (1984) NAD binding site of diphtheria toxin: identification of a residue within the nicotinamide subsite by photochemical modification with NAD. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 81:3307–3311

Carton I, Trouet D, Hermans D, Barth H, Aktories K, Droogmans G, Jorgensen NK, Hoffmann EK, Nilius B, Eggermont J (2002) RhoA exerts a permissive effect on volume-regulated anion channels in vascular endothelial cells. Am J Physiol Cell Physiol 283: C115–C125

Dreikhausen U, Varga G, Hofmann F, Barth H, Aktories K, Resch K, Szamel M (2001) Regulation by rho family GTPases of IL-1 receptor induced signaling: C3-like chimeric toxin and Clostridium difficile toxin B inhibit signaling pathways involved in IL-2 gene expression. Eur J Immmunol 31:1610–1619

Duesbery NS, Webb CP, Leppla SH, Gordon VM, Klimpel KR, Copeland TD, Ahn NG, Oskarsson MK, Fukasawa K, Paull KD, Woude GFV (1998) Proteolytic inactivation of MAP-kinase-kinase by anthrax lethal factor. Science 280:734–737

Eckhardt M, Barth H, Blöcker D, Aktories K (2000) Binding of *Clostridium botulinum* C2 toxin to asparagine-linked complex and hybrid carbohydrates. J Biol Chem 275:2328–2334

Fritz G, Schroeder P, Aktories K (1995) Isolation and characterization of a *Clostridium botulinum* C2 toxin-resistant cell line: Evidence for possible involvement of the cellular C2II receptor in growth regulation. Infect Immun 63:2334–2340

Fujii N, Kubota T, Shirakawa S, Kimura K, Ohishi I, Moriishi K, Isogai E, Isogai H (1996) Characterization of component-I gene of botulinum C2 toxin and PCR detection of its gene in clostridial species. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 220:353–359

Galle J, Mameghani A, Bolz SS, Gambaryan S, Gorg M, Quaschning T, Raff U, Barth H, Seibold S, Wanner C, Pohl U (2003) Oxidized LDL and its compound lysophosphatidylcholine potentiate AngII-induced vasoconstriction by stimulation of RhoA. J Am Soc Nephrol 14:1471–1479

Gülke I, Pfeifer G, Liese J, Fritz M, Hofmann F, Aktories K, Barth H (2001) Characterization of the enzymatic component of the ADP-ribosyltransferase toxin CDTa from *Clostridium difficile*. Infect Immun 69:6004–6011

Hahn A, Barth H, Kress M, Mertens PR, Goppelt-Strübe M (2002) Role of Rac and Cdc42 in lysophosphatidic acid-mediated cyclooxygenase-2 gene expression. Biochem J 362:33–40

Han S, Craig JA, Putnam CD, Carozzi NB, Tainer JA (1999) Evolution and mechanism from structures of an ADP-ribosylating toxin and NAD complex. Nat Struct Biol 6:932–936

Haug G, Aktories K, Barth H (2004) The host cell chaperone Hsp90 is necessary for cytotoxic action of the binary iota-like toxins. Infect Immun 72:3066–3068

Haug G, Leemhuis J, Tiemann D, Meyer DK, Aktories K, Barth H (2003a) The host cell chaperone Hsp90 is essential for translocation of the binary *Clostridium botulinum* C2 toxin into the cytosol. J Biol Chem 274:32266–32274

Haug G, Wilde C, Leemhuis J, Meyer DK, Aktories K, Barth H (2003b) Cellular uptake of *Clostridium botulinum* C2 toxin: Membrane translocation of a fusion toxin requires unfolding of its dihydrofolate reductase domain. Biochemistry 42:15284–15291

Jung M, Just I, van Damme J, Vandekerckhove J, Aktories K (1993) NAD-binding site of the C3-like ADP-ribosyltransferase from *Clostridium limosum*. J Biol Chem 268:23215–23218

Kimura K, Kubota T, Ohishi I, Isogai E, Isogai H, Fujii N (1998) The gene for component-II of botulinum C2 toxin. Vet Microbiol 62:27–34

Klimpel KR, Molloy SS, Thomas G, Leppla SH (1992) Anthrax toxin protective antigen is activated by a cell surface protease with the sequence specificity and catalytic properties of furin. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 89:10277–10281

Klussmann E, Tamma G, Lorenz D, Wiesner B, Maric K, Hofmann F, Aktories K, Valenti G, Rosenthal W (2001) An inhibitory role of Rho in the vasopressin-mediated translocation of aquaporin-2 into cell membranes of renal principal cells. J Biol Chem 276:20451–20457

Knapp O, Benz R, Gibert M, Marvaud JC, Popoff MR (2002) Interaction of the binding component of *Clostridium perfringens* iota-toxin with lipid bilayer membranes: demonstration of channel formation by the activated binding component Ib and channel block by the enzyme component Ia. J Biol Chem 277:6143–6152

Leemhuis J, Boutillier S, Barth H, Feuerstein TJ, Brock C, Nürnberg B, Aktories K, Meyer DK (2004) Rho GTPases and Phosphoinositide 3-kinase organize formation of branched dendrites. J Biol Chem 279:585–596

Leppla S (1982) Anthrax toxin edema factor: A bacterial adenylate cyclase that increases cyclic AMP concentrations in eukaryotic cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 79:3162–3166

Leppla SH (1991) Purification and characterization of adenylyl cyclase from *Bacillus anthracis*. In: Johnson A, Corbin JD (eds) Methods in enzymology, Vol 195. Academic Press, San Diego, pp 153–168

Leppla SH (1995) Anthrax toxins. In: Moss J, Iglewski B, Vaughan M, Tu AT (eds) Bacterial toxins and virulence factors in disease. Marcel Dekker, New York, pp 543–572

Linseman DA, Laessig T, Meintzer MK, McClure M, Barth H, Aktories K, Heidenreich KA (2001) An essential role for Rac/Cdc42 GTPases in cerebellar granule neuron survival. J Biol Chem 276:39123–39131

Marvaud JC, SmithT, Hale ML, Popoff MR, Smith LA, Stiles BG (2001) *Clostridium perfringens* iota-toxin: mapping of receptor binding and Ia docking domains on Ib. Infect Immun 69:2435–2441

Marvaud JC, Stiles BG, Chenal A, Gillet D, Gibert M, Smith LA, Popoff MR (2002) *Clostridium perfringens* iota toxin. Mapping of the Ia domain involved in docking with Ib and cellular internalization. J Biol Chem **277**: 43659–43666

Mauss S, Chaponnier C, Just I, Aktories K, Gabbiani G (1990) ADP-ribosylation of actin isoforms by *Clostridium botulinum* C2 toxin and *Clostridium perfringens* iota toxin. Eur J Biochem 194:237–241

Milne JC, Collier RJ (1993) pH-dependent permeabilization of the plasma membrane of mammalian cells by anthrax protective antigen. Mol Microbiol 10:647–653

Milne JC, Furlong D, Hanna PC, Wall JS, Collier RJ (1994) Anthrax protective antigen forms oligomers during intoxication of mammalian cells. J Biol Chem 269:20607–20612

Mogridge J, Cunningham K, Lacy DB, Mourez M, Collier RJ (2002) The lethal and edema factors of anthrax toxin bind only to oligomeric forms of the protective antigen. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 99:7045–7048

Mourez M, Lacy DB, Cunningham K, Legmann R, Sellman BR, Mogridge J, Collier RJ (2002) 2001: a year of major advances in anthrax toxin research. Trends Microbiol 10:287–293

Nilius B, Voets T, Prenen J, Barth H, Aktories K, Kaibuchi K, Droogmans G, Eggermont J. (1999) Role of Rho and Rho kinase in the activation of volume-regulated anion channels in bovine endothelial cells. J Physiol 516:67–74

Ohishi I (1987) Activation of botulinum C2 toxin by trypsin. Infect Immun 55:1461–1465

Ohishi I (2000) Structure and function of actin-adenosine-diphosphate-ribosylating toxins. In: Aktories K, Just I (eds) Bacterial protein toxins. Springer, Heidelberg Berlin New York, pp 253–273

Ohishi I, DasGupta BR (1987) Molecular structure and biological activities of *Clostridium botulinum* C2 toxin. In: Eklund MW, Dowell VR (eds) Avian botulism. Thomas, Springfield, pp 223–247

Ohishi I, Iwasaki M, Sakaguchi G (1980) Purification and characterization of two components of botulinum C2 toxin. Infect Immun 30:668–673

Ohishi I, Odagiri Y (1984) Histopathological effect of Botulinum C2 toxin on mouse intestines. Infect Immun 43:54–58

Perelle S, Gibert M, Boquet P, Popoff MR (1993) Characterization of *Clostridium perfringens* iota-toxin genes and expression in *Escherichia coli*. Infect Immun 61:5147–5156

Perelle S, Gibert M, Bourlioux P, Corthier G, Popoff MR (1997) Production of a complete binary toxin (actin-specific ADP-ribosyltransferase) by *Clostridium difficile* CD196. Infect Immun 65:1402–1407

Petosa C, Collier RJ, Klimpel KR, Leppla SH, Liddingtom RC (1997) Crystal structure of the anthrax toxin protective antigen. Nature 385:833–838

Popoff MR, Boquet P (1988) Clostridium spiroforme toxin is a binary toxin which ADP- ribosylates cellular actin. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 152:1361–1368

Popoff MR, Milward FW, Bancillon B, Boquet P (1989) Purification of the *Clostridium spiroforme* binary toxin and activity of the toxin on HEp2 cells. Infect Immun 57:2462–2469

Popoff MR, Rubin EJ, Gill DM, Boquet P (1988) Actin-specific ADP-ribosyltransferase produced by a clostridium difficile strain. Infect Immun 56:2299–2306

Ratts R, Zeng H, Berg EA, Blue C, McComb ME, Costello CE, Vanderspek JC, Murphy JR (2003) The cytosolic entry of diphtheria toxin catalytic domain requires a host cell cytosolic translocation factor complex. J Cell Biol 160:1139–1150

Rubin EJ, Gill DM, Boquet P, Popoff MR (1988) Functional modification of a 21-Kilodalton G protein when ADP-ribosylated by exoenzyme C3 of *Clostridium botulinum*. Mol Cell Biol 8:418–426

Sakr S, Eddy R, Barth H, Xie B, Greenberg S, Maxfield FR, Tabas I (2001) An *in-vitro* model for the uptake and degradation of lipoproteins by arterial-wall mocrophages during atheriogenesis. J Biol Chem 276:37649–37658

Sandvig K, Van Deurs B (2002) Membrane traffic exploited by protein toxins. Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol 18:1–24

Schmid A, Benz R, Just I, Aktories K (1994) Interaction of *Clostridium botulinum* C2 toxin with lipid bilayer membranes: formation of cation-selective channels and inhibition of channel function by chloroquine and peptides. J Biol Chem 269:16706–16711

Simpson LL (1981) The origin, structure, and pharmacological activity of Botulinum toxin. Pharmacol Rev 33:155–187

Simpson LL (1984a) Molecular basis for the pharmacological actions of *Clostridium botulinum* type C2 toxin. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 230:665–669

Simpson LL (1984b) The binding fragment from tetanus toxin antagonizes the neuromuscular blocking actions of botulinum toxin[1]. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 229:182–187

Simpson LL (1989) The binary toxin produced by *Clostridium botulinum* enters cells by receptor-mediated endocytosis to exert its pharmacologic effects. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 251:1223–1228

Simpson LL, Zepeda H, Ohishi I (1988) Partial characterization of the enzymatic activity associated with the binary toxin (type C2) produced by *Clostridium botulinum*. Infect Immun 56:24–27

Songer JG (1996) Clostridial enteric diseases of domestic animals. Clin Microbiol Rev 9:216–234

Stiles BG, Hale ML, Marvaud JC, Popoff MR (2002) *Clostridium perfringens* iota toxin: Characterization of the cell-associated iota b complex. Biochem J 367:801–808

Stiles BG, Hale ML, Marvaud J-C, Popoff M (2000) *Clostridium perfringens* iota toxin: binding studies and characterization of cell surface receptor by fluorescence-activated cytometry. Infect Immun 68:3475–3484

Stiles BG, Wilkens TD (1986) Purification and characterization of *Clostridium perfringens* iota toxin: dependence on two nonlinked proteins for biological activity. Infect Immun 54:683–688

Stiles BG, WilkinsTD (1986) *Clostridium perfringens* iota toxin: Synergism between two proteins. Toxicon 24:767–773

Strey A, Janning A, Barth H, Gerke V (2002) Endothelial Rho signaling is required for monocyte transendothelial migration. FEBS Lett 517:261–266

Tsuge H, Nagahama M, Nishimura H, Hisatsune J, Sakaguchi Y, Itogawa Y, Katunuma N, Sakurai J (2003) Crystal structure and site-directed mutagenesis of enzymatic components from *Clostridium perfringens* iota-toxin. J Mol Biol 325:471–483

Vandekerckhove J, Schering B, Bärmann M, Aktories K (1988) Botulinum C2 toxin ADP-ribosylates cytoplasmic β/g-actin in arginine 177. J Biol Chem 263:696–700

Vischer UM, Barth H, Wollheim CB (2000) Regulated von willebrand factor secretion is associated with agonist-specific patterns of cytoskeletal remodeling in cultured endothelial cells. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol 20:883–891

Wahl S, Barth H, Ciossek T, Aktories K, Mueller BK (2000) Ephrin-A5 induces collapse of growth cones by activating Rho and Rho kinase. J Cell Biol 149:263–270

Warren G, Koziel M, Mullins MA, Nye G, Carr B, Desai N, Kostichka K, Duck N, Estruch JJ (1996) Novel pesticidal proteins and strains. Patent WO96/10083

Wegner A, Aktories K (1988) ADP-ribosylated actin caps the barbed ends of actin filaments. J Biol Chem 263:13739–13742

Weigt C, Just I, Wegner A, Aktories K (1989) Nonmuscle actin ADP-ribosylated by botulinum C2 toxin caps actin filaments. FEBS Lett 246:181–184

Werner G, Hagenmaier H, Drautz H, Baumgartner A, Zahner H (1984) Metabolic products of microorganisms. 224. Bafilomycins, a new group of macrolide antibiotics. Production, isolation, chemical structure and biological activity. J Antibiotics 37:110–117

Wesche J, Elliott JL, Falnes PO, Olsnes S, Collier RJ (1998) Characterization of membrane translocation by anthrax protective antigen. Biochemistry 37:15737–15746

Wille M, Just I, Wegner A, Aktories K (1992) ADP-ribosylation of the gelsolin-actin complex by clostridial toxins. J Biol Chem 267:50–55

Rev Physiol Biochem Pharmacol (2004) 152:183–204
DOI 10.1007/s10254-004-0036-2

J. G. Smedley III · D. J. Fisher · S. Sayeed · G. Chakrabarti · B. A. McClane

The enteric toxins of *Clostridium perfringens*

Published online: 23 October 2004

Abstract The Gram-positive pathogen *Clostridium perfringens* is a major cause of human and veterinary enteric disease largely because this bacterium can produce several toxins when present inside the gastrointestinal tract. The enteric toxins of *C. perfringens* share two common features: (1) they are all single polypeptides of modest (~25–35 kDa) size, although lacking in sequence homology, and (2) they generally act by forming pores or channels in plasma membranes of host cells. These enteric toxins include *C. perfringens* enterotoxin (CPE), which is responsible for the symptoms of a common human food poisoning and acts by forming pores after interacting with intestinal tight junction proteins. Two other *C. perfringens* enteric toxins, ϵ-toxin (a bioterrorism select agent) and β-toxin, cause veterinary enterotoxemias when absorbed from the intestines; β- and ϵ-toxins then apparently act by forming oligomeric pores in intestinal or extra-intestinal target tissues. The action of a newly discovered *C. perfringens* enteric toxin, β2 toxin, has not yet been defined but precedent suggests it might also be a pore-former. Experience with other clostridial toxins certainly warrants continued research on these *C. perfringens* enteric toxins to develop their potential as therapeutic agents and tools for cellular biology.

Introduction

The spore-forming bacterium *Clostridium perfringens* produces an intimidating arsenal consisting of at least 15 different toxins. Individual *C. perfringens* isolates produce only portions of this toxin repertoire, forming the basis for a commonly used toxin typing scheme (McClane et al. 2000) that assigns *C. perfringens* isolates to one of five types (Table 1, A–E) based upon their production of α-, β-, ϵ-, and ι-toxins. Each *C. perfringens* toxinotype is associated with particular human or veterinary diseases (Table 2), indicating

B. A. McClane (✉)
E1240 BSTWR, University of Pittsburgh School of Medicine, Pittsburgh, PA, 15261, USA
e-mail: bamcc@pitt.edu · Tel.: +1-412-6489022 · Fax: +1-412-6241401

J. G. Smedley III · D. J. Fisher · S. Sayeed · G. Chakrabarti · B. A. McClane
University of Pittsburgh School of Medicine,
Department of Molecular Genetics and Biochemistry, Pittsburgh, PA, 15261, USA

Table 1 Toxin typing classification scheme for *Clostridium perfringens* isolates

	Toxins produced:			
Toxinotype	*Alpha*	*Beta*	*Epsilon*	*Iota*
A	+	−	−	−
B	+	+	+	−
C	+	+	−	−
D	+	−	+	−
E	+	−	−	+

Table 2 Diseases associated with *C. perfringens* toxinotypes

Toxinotype	Major toxins	Diseases
A	α	Human myonecrosis (gas gangrene), necrotic enteritis in fowls, enterotoxemias of cattle and lambs, mild necrotizing enteritis of piglets
	α, CPE	Human food poisoning, human nonfood-borne GI disease, veterinary diarrhea
	α, CPE, β2	Human nonfood-borne GI disease
	α, β2	Porcine enteritis
B	α, β, ϵ	Dysentery in newborn lambs, chronic enteritis in older lambs, hemorrhagic enteritis in neonatal calves and foals, hemorrhagic enterotoxemias in sheep, biodefense concerns
C	α, β	Human necrotizing enteritis (Pigbel, Darmbrand), enteritis in hemorrhagic/necrotic enterotoxemias in neonatal pigs, lambs, calves goats, and foals, acute enterotoxemia (struck) in adult sheep
	α, β, β2	Porcine enteritis
D	α, ϵ	Enterotoxemia in lambs (pulpy kidney disease) and calves, enterocolitis in neonatal and adult goats and cattle, biodefense concerns
E	α, ι	Canine, bovine, porcine enteritis

that variations in toxin production profoundly influence the virulence properties of *C. perfringens* isolates. These isolate-to-isolate differences in toxin production also help explain the pathogenic versatility of *C. perfringens*, which causes both enteric and histotoxic infections and has a disease spectrum ranging from low incidence/high mortality (clostridial myonecrosis) to high incidence/low mortality (*C. perfringens* type A food poisoning).

This review discusses four *C. perfringens* toxins that are produced in the gastrointestinal (GI) tract and have been implicated in human and/or veterinary enteric disease. These enteric toxins include two *C. perfringens* typing toxins (β- and ϵ-toxins), as well as two nontyping toxins, [*C. perfringens* β2 toxin (CPB2) and *C. perfringens* enterotoxin (CPE)] that are also considered important for enteric disease. Another *C. perfringens* typing toxin, ι-toxin, affects the GI tract during veterinary type E infections; however, ι-toxin is discussed elsewhere in this volume.

The *Clostridium perfringens* enterotoxin

When identified over 30 years ago, the 35-kDa CPE protein was quickly linked to *C. perfringens* type A food poisoning, the second and third most commonly identified foodborne disease in the UK and USA, respectively (Adak et al. 2002; Olsen et al. 2000). The pathogenic importance of CPE for food poisoning received initial support from human

volunteer feeding studies showing that ingestion of purified CPE is sufficient to reproduce the diarrhea and cramping symptoms of the natural *C. perfringens* type A food poisoning (Skjelkvale and Uemura 1977). More recently, molecular Koch's postulates analyses using an isogenic *cpe* mutant of SM101 (a transformable derivative of food poisoning isolate NCTC 8798) confirmed that CPE expression is required for CPE-positive, type A food poisoning isolates to cause GI effects in animal models (Sarker et al. 1999). Additionally, CPE-positive type A isolates became implicated during the mid-1980s as the cause of up to 5–15% of all human nonfood-borne GI disease cases, e.g., antibiotic-associated diarrhea (AAD; Borriello et al. 1984). Molecular Koch's postulate analyses have also supported the importance of CPE expression for the enteric virulence of the nonfood-borne human GI disease type A isolate F4969 (Sarker et al. 1999). Finally, CPE-positive type A isolates have recently been linked to some veterinary diarrheas (Songer 1996).

Most *C. perfringens* isolates carrying the enterotoxin gene (*cpe*) classify as type A isolates. However, even among type A isolates, the presence of the *cpe* gene is uncommon, i.e., <5% of global *C. perfringens* type A isolates are *cpe*-positive (Czeczulin et al. 1993). The *cpe* gene can be present on either the chromosome or on a large plasmid (Collie and McClane 1998; Cornillot et al. 1995). A strong correlation exists between a type A isolate's *cpe* genotype (i.e., whether the *cpe* gene is chromosomal or plasmid-borne) and which CPE-associated GI illness that isolate can cause. Specifically, *C. perfringens* type A food poisoning isolates usually carry a chromosomal *cpe* gene, whereas CPE-positive *C. perfringens* type A isolates causing AAD or sporadic diarrhea (SD) nearly always possess a plasmid-borne *cpe* gene (Collie and McClane 1998; Cornillot et al. 1995). The reasons for these specific *cpe* genotype:GI disease relationships are just now emerging. Chromosomal *cpe* isolates appear to be strongly associated with food poisoning because (1) these are the predominant *cpe*-positive isolates present in foods (Wen 2004), and (2) the higher heat resistance of spores/vegetative cells of these isolates (versus the spores/cells of plasmid *cpe* isolates; Sarker et al. 1999) favors their survival in temperature-abused foods. The strong linkage between plasmid *cpe* isolates and AAD/SD could be explained, at least in part, by recent studies demonstrating the transfer of the *cpe* plasmid between *C. perfringens* isolates (Brynestad et al. 2001). Transmissibility of the *cpe* plasmid could be important since cases of CPE-associated AAD/SD are thought to result from ingestion of small numbers of CPE-positive isolates (McClane et al. 2000), in contrast to the massive numbers of CPE-positive vegetative cells ingested during *C. perfringens* type A food poisoning. Therefore, establishment of AAD/SD might be assisted if the few infecting *cpe*-positive isolates can transfer their *cpe* plasmid to the predominantly *cpe*-negative *C. perfringens* isolates present in the normal intestinal flora, thus converting these commensal isolates to enteropathogens.

Early studies determined that CPE biosynthesis is temporally associated with sporulation (Duncan 1973). Promoter mapping of the *cpe* gene identified three functional promoters, each exhibiting homology to a consensus binding sequence for the sporulation-specific sigma factors SigK or SigE (Melville et al. 1994; Zhao and Melville 1998). During sporulation, CPE is strongly expressed by many CPE-positive type A isolates. This single protein can account for up to 20% of the total protein present in a sporulating cell (Czeczulin et al. 1993). After synthesis, CPE is not secreted but instead accumulates in the cytoplasm of sporulating cells, where it may localize in paracrystalline inclusion bodies (Labbe 1989). CPE is eventually released into the intestinal lumen at the completion of sporulation, when the mother cell lyses to release its mature spore.

The intestinal action of CPE

Purified CPE rapidly damages the rabbit ileum. CPE-induced histopathological effects, including villus shortening and epithelial desquamation (McDonel 1986), are apparently responsible for initiating diarrhea since (1) only those CPE doses capable of causing intestinal damage are able to produce intestinal fluid and electrolyte secretion in the rabbit ileum (McDonel 1986), and (2) fluid and electrolyte secretion consistently follows development of intestinal damage in the CPE-treated rabbit ileum (McDonel 1986; Sherman et al. 1994). Although less sensitive than the ileum, the rabbit duodenum and jejunum also respond to CPE (McDonel 1986). It is interesting to note that the rabbit colon binds, but is insensitive to, CPE (McDonel 1986).

The molecular action of CPE

Once released into the intestinal lumen upon the completion of sporulation, CPE binds to enterocytes. At physiologic CPE concentrations, this binding clearly requires a proteinaceous receptor (Wnek and McClane 1986). Certain claudins have recently been implicated as protein receptors for CPE (Fujita et al. 2000; Katahira et al. 1997a, b). The claudins are a large family of >20 tetra-membrane-spanning proteins that play important roles in tight junction structure and function (Anderson and Van Itallie 1999). Claudin-3 and -4 were initially identified as functional CPE receptors by screening the CPE sensitivity of mouse L-929 fibroblasts (which are naturally CPE-insensitive due to their inability to bind CPE) transfected with cDNA from the CPE-sensitive Vero cell culture line (Katahira et al. 1997a, b). Fujita et al. used similar L-929 cell transfectant approaches to demonstrate that claudins-6, -7, -8, and -14 can also serve as functional CPE receptors (Fujita et al. 2000). However, L-929 cell transfectants expressing claudins-1, -2, -5, or -10 still remained insensitive to CPE (Fujita et al. 2000). Preliminary studies suggest that the receptor domain of claudin-3 lies within the second extracellular loop of the protein (Fujita et al. 2000). The involvement of claudins in tight junction function and regulation is an area of active research and studies continue to evaluate the involvement of certain claudins in CPE's intestinal action.

After binding, CPE forms a series of protein complexes in plasma membranes of host cells. One such CPE complex, the "small complex," forms concurrently with the binding of enterotoxin to all CPE-sensitive cells studied to date. This small complex, which likely corresponds to CPE bound to its receptor(s) (Wieckowski et al. 1994), is SDS-sensitive, forms at both 4°C and 37°C (McClane and Wnek 1990), and has a molecular weight of ~90 kDa (Wieckowski et al. 1994). The composition of this CPE complex remains to be determined, but coimmunoprecipitation results suggest it contains, in addition to CPE, an ~50-kDa host plasma membrane protein (Wieckowski et al. 1994). Linkage of an ~50-kDa host protein to small complex could either indicate that CPE has a nonclaudin cellular receptor in naturally-sensitive cells, or that the ~50-kDa protein is a claudin aggregate (anomalous migration of claudin aggregates on SDS-PAGE gels has been demonstrated in vitro; Mitic et al. 2003). Discriminating between these possibilities awaits further research.

Small complex formation, although important, is not sufficient to obtain CPE-induced cytotoxicity. While CPE forms small complex at 4°C, no cytotoxic effect occurs at that low temperature (McClane and Wnek 1990). However, if cells containing CPE se-

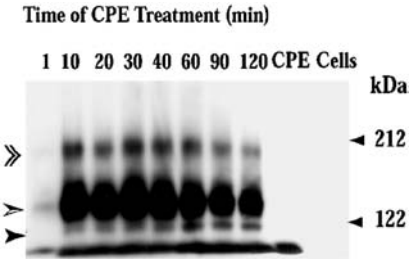


Fig. 1 Kinetics of large CPE complex formation in CaCo-2 cells. When CaCo-2 cells are incubated with CPE at 37°C and extracted with SDS, three CPE-containing protein complexes are visualized when those SDS-extracts are run on low acrylamide percentage (4%) SDS-PAGE gels and then Western immunoblotted with anti-CPE antiserum. These three CPE complexes have approximate molecular weights of 135 (*closed arrow*), 155 (*open arrow*), and 200 kDa (*double arrow*). Time of CPE-treatment is shown above the gel (in minutes); "CPE alone" and "cells alone" controls are shown in the right-most lanes of the gel. (Reproduced from Singh et al. 2000, with permission from the American Society for Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, Inc.).

questered only in small complex are shifted from 4°C to 37°C, there is immediate formation of large CPE-containing complexes in plasma membranes (Wnek and McClane 1989). Concurrently with the development of large, SDS-resistant CPE complexes, those cells exhibit plasma membrane permeability alterations (McClane and Wnek 1990). These results suggest that the small complex is a precursor for formation of the large CPE complexes and that formation of the large complexes initiates cytotoxicity.

The large, CPE-containing complexes have recently been resolved into at least three species, with molecular weights of ~135, ~155, and ~200 kDa (Fig. 1; Singh et al. 2000). The ~155-kDa complex is the first large complex formed when monolayers of CaCo-2 cells (a human enterocyte-like cell line) are treated with CPE at 37°C (Singh et al. 2001). Kinetic studies demonstrated that development of the ~155-kDa complex coincides with onset of membrane permeability changes in CPE-treated CaCo-2 cell monolayers (Singh et al. 2000), suggesting this large complex is responsible for initiating the cytotoxic response. Longer treatment of CPE-sensitive cells results in the formation of an ~200-kDa CPE complex, which contains the tight junction protein occludin (Singh et al. 2000). Formation of the ~200-kDa complex removes occludin from tight junctions and internalizes this tight junction protein into the cytoplasm (Singh et al. 2001). The redistribution of occludin, and probably claudin, induces structural damage to tight junctions, thereby leading to paracellular permeability changes that may contribute to CPE-induced diarrhea (Singh et al. 2001). Finally, the nature and function of the ~135-kDa large CPE complex remains unclear, but this CPE complex could be a precursor for, or intermediate form of, the ~155- or ~200-kDa complexes.

Considerable evidence suggests that formation of the ~155-kDa complex may correspond to the formation/insertion of a pore permeable to water, ions, and other small molecules. Early studies using radiolabeled markers demonstrated that cytoplasmic molecules up to ~3000 Da are released from CPE-treated Vero cells (McClane and Wnek 1990). Evidence supporting CPE's insertion into membranes was obtained (Wieckowski et al. 1998) when membrane-bound CPE localized in large complexes (mainly the ~155-kDa complex) was shown to develop resistance to external Pronase digestion. Whole-cell patch clamping of CaCo-2 cells demonstrated increased cationic permeability of those cells after

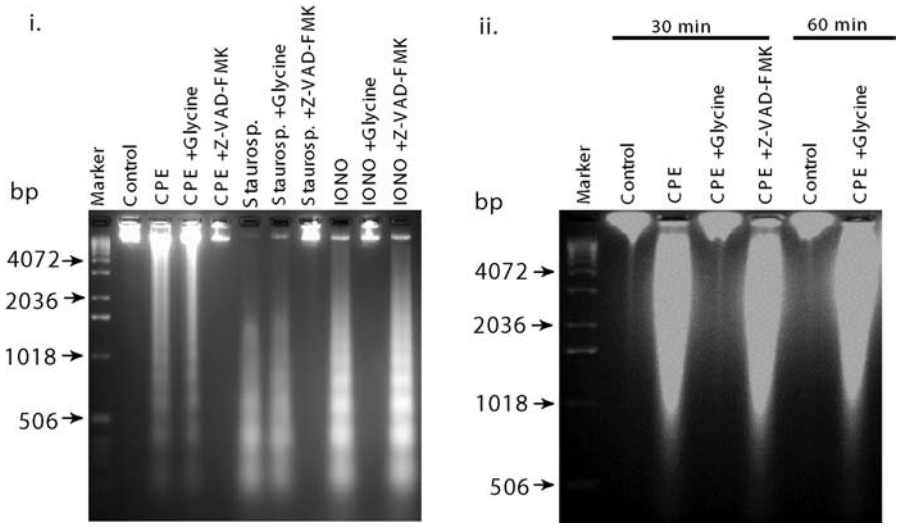


Fig. 2 CPE-induced DNA cleavage in CaCo-2 cells after treatment with 1 (*i*) or 10 (*ii*) μg/ml of CPE. Confluent CaCo-2 cells were pretreated with HBSS that did or did not contain either the broad-spectrum caspase inhibitor Z-VAD-FMK or the oncosis inhibitor glycine. Those cultures were then treated for 30 or 60 min in HBSS with or without 1 or 10 μg/ml of CPE, along with the same inhibitor used (if any) during pretreatment. After CPE treatment, DNA was extracted from each sample, run on a 2% agarose gel, and stained with ethidium bromide. CaCo-2 cells treated for 8 h at 37°C with either staurosporine or ionomycin served as positive controls for apoptosis and oncosis, respectively. Control depicts CaCo-2 cells treated only with HBSS (no CPE). *Arrows* at the *left side* of the gel indicate the migration of DNA size markers in basepairs (bp). (Reproduced from Chakrabarti et al. 2003)

CPE treatment (Hardy et al. 1999). The enterotoxin was also shown to form pores, similar to those observed during CaCo-2 cell patch clamping, in artificial phospholipid bilayer systems lacking any proteins (Hardy et al. 2001; Sugimoto et al. 1988). While artificial membrane studies support the ability of CPE to interact directly with lipid bilayers, it might be noted that these studies used either CPE sonicated into membranes or exceptionally high enterotoxin concentrations, i.e., under pathophysiologic conditions, CPE binding to protein receptors remains essential.

CPE-induced cellular death pathways

CPE has been recognized since the 1970s as a potent cytotoxin that kills sensitive mammalian cells by inducing membrane permeability alterations (McClane et al. 2000). Our laboratory recently identified the cellular death pathways involved in CPE-induced cytotoxicity (Chakrabarti et al. 2003). We found that, in CaCo-2 cells, a 1 μg/ml CPE dose induces features typical of a classical caspase 3-mediated apoptosis (Hockenbery 1995; Majno and Joris 1995; Steller 1995), including morphologic alterations, DNA cleavage into ladder-like fragments (Fig. 2i), mitochondrial membrane depolarization, cytochrome C and caspase 3/7 activation (Chakrabarti et al. 2003). In contrast, a 10 μg/ml CPE dose induced morphologic alterations and random DNA cleavage in CaCo-2 cells (Fig. 2ii); those effects could be transiently inhibited by the oncosis inhibitor glycine, but not by any

caspase inhibitors, suggesting that high CPE doses kill CaCo-2 cells via the oncosis death pathway.

Some earlier in vivo studies using CPE-treated rabbit ileal loops observed inflammatory cell (mostly PMNs) infiltration (McDonel et al. 1978), while other studies using the same in vivo model failed to detect any CPE-induced inflammation (Sarker et al. 1999; Sherman et al. 1994). The presence or absence of inflammatory cell infiltration in those rabbit ileal loop experiments appeared to be CPE dose-dependent, with inflammation more prominent in the ileal loops treated with high CPE doses (McDonel and Duncan 1975). Our results demonstrating that high CPE doses induce oncosis could explain the apparent association between high CPE doses and intestinal inflammation since inflammation is more commonly associated with oncosis than with apoptosis. Since inflammation has been shown to contribute to the symptoms of other GI diseases (Boise and Collins 2001; Brennan and Cookson 2000), and high CPE levels have been measured in the feces of some patients with CPE-associated GI diseases (Bartholomew et al. 1985), the proinflammatory consequences of oncosis could contribute to intestinal pathology in some CPE-induced GI disease cases.

Calcium involvement in CPE-induced cell death

Ca^{2+} must be present in treatment buffers to obtain CPE-induced morphologic damage in cultured Vero or HeLa cells (Matsuda and Sugimoto 1979). Vero cell studies ruled out the possibility that extracellular Ca^{2+} is required for CPE binding or for the development of CPE-induced small molecule permeability alterations (McClane et al. 1988). Since increased cytoplasmic calcium levels can trigger cell death pathways (Boehning et al. 2003; Choi 1995) and CPE can affect plasma membrane permeability for small molecules such as ions (McClane and Wnek 1990), we hypothesized that extracellular Ca^{2+} might be required in treatment buffers to obtain morphologic damage in CPE-treated mammalian cells because the enterotoxin causes an influx of extracellular Ca^{2+} that activates cell death pathways (see above, "CPE-induced cellular death pathways").

When that hypothesis was tested (Chakrabarti and McClane, in press), CaCo-2 cultures exhibited a ladder-like pattern of DNA cleavage, caspase 3/7 activation, and mitochondrial membrane depolarization only when treated with a 1 μg/ml CPE dose dissolved in HBSS containing Ca^{2+}. Similarly, smeared DNA cleavage only developed when CaCo-2 cultures were treated with a 10 μg/ml CPE dose dissolved in HBSS containing Ca^{2+}, i.e., both CPE-induced apoptosis and oncosis require the presence of extracellular calcium. CPE treatment caused a dose-dependent increase in calcium influx that selected whether the oncosis or apoptosis death pathways became activated in CaCo-2 cells. Finally, CPE-mediated apoptosis and oncosis were both shown to involve calmodulin and calpain, two calcium-activated cell proteins.

Model for CPE's cellular and molecular action

An updated model for CPE action (Fig. 3) begins with binding of CPE to the apical membrane of enterocytes via protein receptors, which may include certain claudins. This binding localizes CPE in a small complex of ~90 kDa. In steps that remain to be defined, the small CPE-containing complex then interacts with other proteins to sequester CPE in an

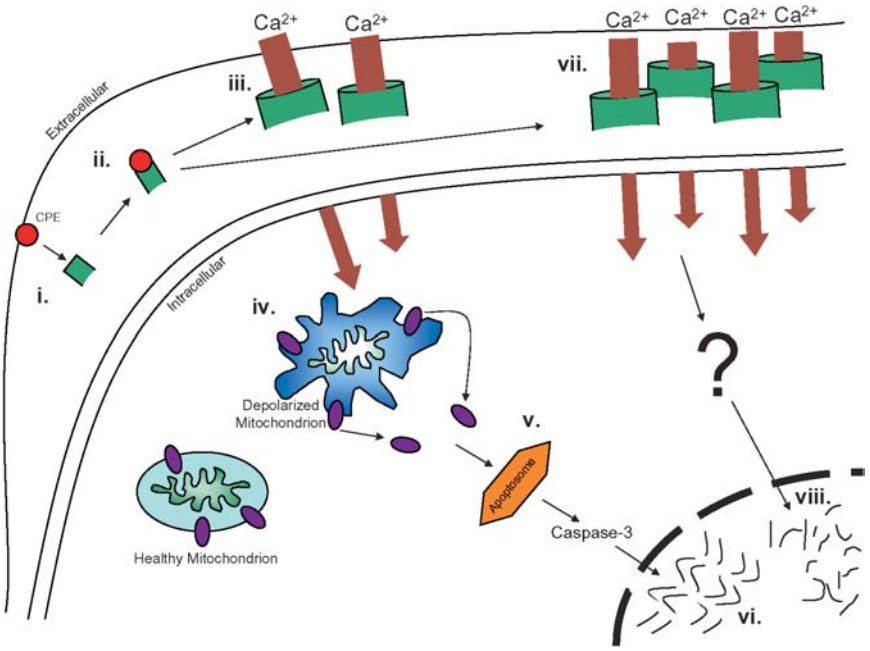


Fig. 3 A current model for the mechanism of action of CPE. (*i*) CPE first binds to protein receptors on the surface of intestinal epithelium, causing (*ii*) formation of the SDS-sensitive small complex. At physiological temperatures, CPE then localizes in (*iii*) an SDS-resistant, ~155-kDa complex that initiates membrane permeability alterations that permit calcium influx into the cell. Low doses of CPE, where modest amounts of calcium influx activate calmodulin and calpain, lead to (*iv*) depolarization of mitochondrial membranes and release of cytochrome C into the cytosol, which results in (*v*) formation of the apoptosome. Apoptotic cell death pathway involves caspase activation that eventually leads to (*vi*) DNA cleavage into regular 200 bp fragments. In contrast, high doses of the enterotoxin typically produce (*vii*) a massive calcium influx that activates the oncosis cell death pathway producing (*viii*) random DNA cleavage through mechanisms involving a vigorous calmodulin and calpain activation

~155-kDa complex. Formation of this large CPE complex, which apparently has pore-like properties, initiates small molecule membrane permeability alterations. Those permeability alterations, via an influx of extracellular Ca^{2+}, rapidly increase cellular Ca^{2+} levels. With very high CPE doses, where many pores form, the increase in cellular Ca^{2+} levels is so rapid and massive that oncosis develops due to strong calmodulin and calpain activation. With lower CPE doses, there is a slower and lesser (but still potent) increase in cellular Ca^{2+} levels that causes a lesser activation of calmodulin and calpain. Activation of those (and other?) cytosolic proteins leads to mitochondrial membrane depolarization inside the CPE-treated cell, which results in substantial cytochrome C release that triggers a rapid apoptotic response involving caspase 3/7 activation.

The resultant morphologic damage from CPE-induced oncosis or apoptosis exposes the basolateral membranes on the CPE-treated cell and adjacent cells present in the intestinal epithelium. This exposure allows unbound CPE access to additional CPE receptors on the basolateral membranes, from which the receptor-bound CPE can interact with occludin. Those interactions cause formation of additional ~155-kDa complex and initial formation of the ~200-kDa CPE complex, containing occludin. Formation of the ~200-kDa complex triggers internalization of tight junction proteins such as occludin, thereby damaging tight

Fig. 4 Functional map of CPE. Removal of the first 44 amino acids (shown in *red*) from native CPE activates toxicity by promoting 155-kDa complex formation; this effect corresponds to proteolytic processing during in vivo disease. *Blue*, deletion and point mutational analyses have identified a region between Asp-45 and Glu-53 that is essential for cytotoxicity by promoting formation of the ~155 kDa large complex. Depicted in this region are amino acid changes that result in attenuation of the enterotoxin's toxicity. *Black*, receptor binding activity of CPE maps to the extreme 30 amino acids at the C-terminus of the toxin

junction structure and function. That tight junction disruption produces paracellular permeability alterations which contribute to CPE-induced diarrhea during GI disease. Studies are now underway to further test this model.

CPE structure–function relationships

Understanding of CPE functional domains has been evolving over the past 15 years. Initial studies, utilizing truncated CPE fragments and synthetic peptides, mapped receptor binding activity to the 30 C-terminal CPE amino acids (Fig. 4; Hanna and McClane 1991; Hanna et al. 1989, 1991, 1992). The importance of the toxin's extreme C-terminus for binding was then confirmed by further deletion analysis, which demonstrated removing the five C-terminal amino acids from recombinant CPE (rCPE) eliminates receptor binding activity (Kokai-Kun and McClane 1997). Fine-mapping of this C-terminal binding region and its interaction with CPE cellular receptors is the subject of ongoing studies.

Early studies had shown that limited trypsin or chymotrypsin treatments cleave CPE at its N-terminus, removing (respectively) 25 or 36 amino acids (Granum and Richardson 1991; Granum et al. 1981; Hanna et al. 1992; Richardson and Granum 1983). Those protease treatments increase CPE activity ~2–3 fold by promoting increased formation of large CPE complexes (particularly the ~155-kDa complex). Since trypsin and chymotrypsin are both intestinal proteases, it seems likely that CPE is subjected to similar proteolytic activation during in vivo disease (Granum and Richardson 1991; Granum et al. 1981; Hanna et al. 1992).

The observation that C-terminal CPE fragments can bind, yet do not kill mammalian cells, suggested that sequences in the N-terminal half of CPE must be important for cytotoxicity (Hanna and McClane 1991; Hanna et al. 1989). Further rCPE deletion mutagenesis studies identified a region in the N-terminal half of CPE that appears to be essential for cytotoxicity (Kokai-Kun and McClane 1997). Specifically, rCPE fragments lacking the N-terminal 36 or 44 amino acids were found to display the same "activated" phenotype produced by limited proteolysis (as described in the preceding paragraph). However, deleting the first 52 N-terminal residues produced an rCPE fragment that binds but is completely noncytotoxic (Fig. 4; Kokai-Kun and McClane 1997). These important findings mapped a CPE region between Asp-45 and Gly-53 as being essential for CPE activity. Random point mutagenesis performed on rCPE using the *Escherichia coli* mutator strain, XL-1

Red, confirmed the importance of this putative Asp-45 to Gly-53 cytotoxicity region when a G49D mutant was produced that displays similar binding properties as rCPE, yet does not form any large complexes or elicit a cytotoxic response (Fig. 4; Kokai-Kun et al. 1999).

In order to more precisely map the N-terminal CPE "cytotoxicity" domain, alanine-scanning mutagenesis has recently been performed (J.G. Smedley, III and B.A. McClane, in press). When alanine substitutions were introduced by site-directed mutagenesis into each residue of the Asp-45 to Glu-54 region of CPE, two rCPE variants (D48A and I51A) were identified that are nontoxic or strongly attenuated for cytotoxicity, respectively (Fig. 4). Both variants exhibited wild-type levels of binding and small complex formation, but had a phenotype deficient in large complex formation and in the ability to elicit ^{86}Rb-release from cells. When more conservative mutations were introduced at these same two amino acid positions in CPE, a glutamate or asparagine substitution at Asp-48 also produced nontoxic CPE variants. However, substituting either leucine or valine at residue Ile-51 resulted in variants with full cytotoxic activity. These findings indicate that the side chain length and charge of aspartic acid is required at position 48, and that residue volume/hydrophobic interactions are important at amino acid 51 in this N-terminal cytotoxicity domain of the toxin. Further deciphering of the precise role of this region in the CPE's mechanism of action is continuing.

CPE: foe or friend?

CPE's binding to certain claudins becomes interesting given recent observations that claudins are often upregulated in tumors (Long et al. 2001; Michl et al. 2001). This has inspired recent research exploring potential therapeutic uses for the enterotoxin in cancer treatment. An initial study showed that claudin-4 is overexpressed in many pancreatic cancer tissues and cell lines. (Michl et al. 2001). In vivo experiments then demonstrated that injection of CPE into a pancreatic tumor xenograft grown on the back of mice stopped the growth (and caused necrosis) of that tumor, without harming the mouse. Another study illustrating CPE's potential antitumor use noted that metastatic prostate adenocarcinoma cells obtained from a patient suffering from prostate cancer overexpress both claudin-3 and -4 (Long et al. 2001). Those cells were shown to be highly sensitive to CPE-mediated lysis. Collectively, these results support the need for increased understanding of CPE-claudin interactions and for continued study of the enterotoxin's molecular mechanism of action.

The *Clostridium perfringens* ϵ-toxin

Epsilon toxin, a 33-kDa protein produced by *C. perfringens* type B and type D strains (Table 1), is the third most lethal of all clostridial toxins, ranking behind only tetanus and botulinum neurotoxins. Type B and D strains producing ϵ-toxin cause fatal enterotoxemias, mainly in lambs and goats (Table 2; Songer 1996), and this toxin is considered a major potential bioterrorism agent.

Epsilon toxin is synthesized and secreted as a relatively inactive prototoxin, which is then converted to an active mature toxin by removing 13 residues from the N-terminus and 22 residues from the C-terminus. This proteolytic activation can be catalyzed by intes-

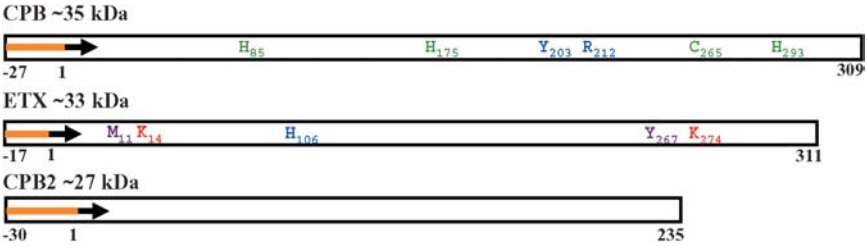


Fig. 5 The primary amino acid structures of CPB, ETX, and CPB2. Secretory peptides are shown in *orange* (these peptides are removed from the mature toxin and thus not included in the molecular weights). ETX or CPB amino acids modified in various studies using site-directed mutagenesis are shown within each peptide; mutagenesis of *green* residues did not decrease toxicity, whereas mutagenesis of *blue* residues caused a decrease in toxicity. The *purple* and *red* amino acids depict trypsin and chymotrypsin cleavage sites, respectively

tinal proteases, such as trypsin and α-chymotrypsin (Hunter et al. 1992; Miyata et al. 2001). Lambda toxin, a protease produced by some type B and D isolates, can also remove 11 N-terminal and 29 C-terminal amino acids from the ϵ-prototoxin to make active toxin (Jin et al. 1996; Minami et al. 1997). Activated ϵ-toxin possesses lethal, dermonecrotic, and edematic activity (Hunter et al. 1992).

The ϵ-toxin structural gene, *etx*, is carried on a poorly-studied large plasmid (Katayama et al. 1996). An insertion sequence, IS*1151,* which has sequence similarity with IS*231* from *Bacillus thuringiensis*, is located 96 bp upstream of the *etx* gene (Daube et al. 1996; Matsushita et al. 1994). Sequences downstream of *etx* shows similarity to the transposon Tn*4001* of *Staphylococcus aureus* (Hunter et al. 1992).

Epsilon toxin appears to be composed primarily of β sheets (Hunter et al. 1992) and has 20–27% sequence identity with the mosquitocidal toxin Mtx2 and Mtx3 of *Bacillus sphaericus* and with a parasporal crystal protein c53 of *B. thuringiensis* (Liu et al. 1996; Thanabalu and Porter 1996). When the nucleotide sequences of the *etx* open reading frame from a type B isolate (NCTC 8533) and a type D isolate (NCTC 8346) were compared, nucleotide changes were found at positions 762 and 962 (Havard et al. 1992); S. Sayeed et al., unpublished data). While the nucleotide difference at position 762 results only in a silent mutation, the second difference (position 962) codes for a serine in the type B strain and for a tyrosine in the ϵ-toxin variant of the type D strain. Despite these changes, both toxin variants are biologically active and cross-react immunologically (Hunter et al. 1992). Sequence differences in putative –10 and –35 regions upstream of the *etx* ORF have also been identified between the two types, but any significance of those observations for *etx* transcription is unclear.

Mutational analysis of ϵ-toxin lethality

Several ϵ-toxin amino acid residues have been identified that are clearly important for toxicity. Chemical modification results suggest that one tryptophan (Kumar et al. 2002; Sakurai and Nagahama 1985), one histidine (Sakurai and Fujii 1987), one tyrosine (Sakurai and Fujii 1987), three or four aspartic or glutamic acid (Sakurai and Fujii 1987), and eight lysine (Sakurai and Nagahama 1986) residues are essential for the lethal activity of the toxin (Fig. 5). Oysten et al. constructed a nontoxic mutant by replacing proline with

a histidine at residue 106 of the native ϵ-toxin (Oysten et al. 1998). Immunization of mice with this nontoxic ϵ-toxin mutant induced a specific antibody response that protected the mice against 1,000 LD_{50} doses of the wild-type ϵ-toxin.

ϵ-Toxin mechanism of action

During type B- and D-mediated disease, ϵ-toxin is produced within the gut of the infected animal. The toxin is then absorbed across the mucosal barrier, either by inducing direct damage, as occurs in goats (Fernandez Miyakawa and Uzal 2003), or as a result of eating a high fiber diet which can also damage intestinal permeability (Songer 1996). Once ϵ-toxin has crossed the mucosal barrier, it is rapidly carried through the bloodstream to target organs. A recent study using whole-body autoradiograms taken immediately after death showed that ϵ-toxin injected systemically into mice localizes primarily in the nasal cavity, brain, spinal cord, and kidneys (Tamai et al. 2003). Those observations are consistent with cumulative findings identifying ϵ-toxin's primary biological action as production of edema and hemorrhage in the brain, heart, lung, liver, and the kidneys (Petit et al. 2003). An interesting clinical phenomenon of ϵ-toxin intoxication is the appearance of neurological symptoms including opisthotonous and convulsions, which are thought to result from the toxin's ability to cross the blood-brain barrier, followed by damage to brain vasculature and direct effects on cells of the hippocampus (resulting in increased glutamate release) (Miyamoto et al. 1998, 2000). These potent effects have led to the inclusion of ϵ-toxin as a Class B Select Agent by the U.S. Centers for Disease Control.

In the late 1970s it was hypothesized that ϵ-toxin requires a cell-specific receptor for binding to mammalian cells (Buxton 1978). Those early studies focused on interactions between ϵ-toxin and tissue derived from rat or mouse brains and kidneys. Within the past 10 years ϵ-toxin susceptible cell culture lines (i.e., Madine-Darby canine kidney (MDCK) cells and human leiomyoblastoma (G-402) cells) have become available for in vitro research (Petit et al. 2003). Because MDCK cells are much more sensitive to ϵ-toxin than are G-402 cells, most studies have used MDCK cells as a model for in vitro cytotoxicity.

The limited number of sensitive cell lines is consistent with ϵ-toxin requiring a specific receptor. It was initially proposed that a sialoglycoprotein residing in a specific membrane environment is required for ϵ-toxin binding (Nagahama and Sakurai 1992). This conclusion was drawn from experiments demonstrating that rat brain tissue treated with Pronase, neuramidase, or lipase lost sensitivity to ϵ-toxin, whereas trypsin- or phospholipase C-treated rat brain tissue remained sensitive to ϵ-toxin (Nagahama and Sakurai 1992). The involvement of proteins in ϵ-toxin binding received further support from recent studies culturing cells normally sensitive to ϵ-toxin and selecting for resistance to the toxin (Beal et al. 2003). Two-dimensional gel electrophoresis studies of those resistant cells uncovered several proteins shifted in molecular weight and/or pI which may be putative receptors for ϵ-toxin.

Epsilon toxin action appears to be more complicated than simple interactions between this toxin and protein receptors. MDCK cells depleted of cholesterol lose their ϵ-toxin sensitivity (Miyata et al. 2002). When combined with the discovery of detergent-resistant membrane domains (DRMs) within cell membranes, this finding led researchers to explore whether or not ϵ-toxin interacts with DRMs. Using Triton X-100 cold-extracted membranes separated on sucrose gradients, ϵ-toxin was localized to fractions containing glycosphingolipid-enriched DRMs (Miyata et al. 2002).

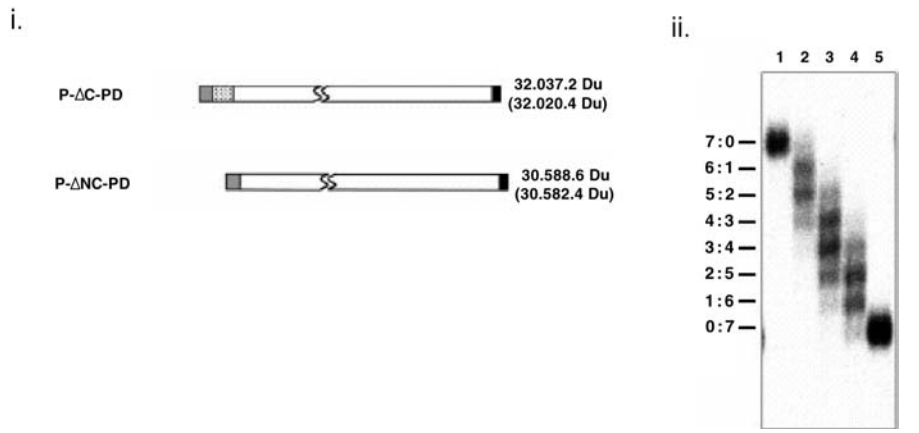


Fig. 6 Demonstration of *C. perfringens* ϵ-toxin heptamerization in rat synaptosomal membranes. Two recombinant ϵ-toxin species were engineered that corresponded to either the mature toxin with no cleavage peptides present (P-ΔNC-PD) or a protoxin with only the N-terminal cleavage peptide remaining (P-ΔC-PD) *i*. Each ϵ-toxin species was radiolabeled for detection and the molecular weight of each ϵ-toxin species (to the *left* of each construct) was then determined from the predicted sequence (*top number*) and experimentally by MALDI-TOF (*in parenthesis*). The two constructs were incubated in different ratios (*left hand margin* of *ii*) totaling 12 ng of protein, with 2.2 mg of synaptosomal membranes in TBS. Samples were treated with SDS-sample buffer, resolved on a 5% SDS-PAGE gel, and developed using autoradiography (*ii*). Note the presence of seven different molecular weight species which is indicative of heptamer formed with varying ratios of the two different constructs. (Reproduced from Miyata et al. 2001)

Previous work has shown that ϵ-toxin forms SDS-resistant large molecular weight species in MDCK cells or mouse brain homogenates, but not in nonsensitive cells or heat-treated brain homogenates (Nagahama and Sakurai 1992). Later studies further defined ϵ-toxin interactions with MDCK cells and artificial lipid bilayers by showing that: (1) ϵ-toxin is a pore-forming toxin (Petit et al. 2001), (2) functional ϵ-toxin pore formation, but not binding, requires removal of the 23 C-terminal amino acids from ϵ-toxin monomers (Fig. 6; Miyata et al. 2001), (3) the functional pore corresponds to an ϵ-toxin heptamer within MDCK cells and rat synaptosomal membranes (Miyata et al. 2002), and (4) ϵ-toxin is not internalized after pore formation (Petit et al. 2003). The ϵ-toxin pores formed in lipid-bilayers have been shown to allow molecules up to 1 kDa to diffuse freely (Petit et al. 2001).

Pore-formation in ϵ-toxin-sensitive cells or artificial lipid-bilayers leads to increased cellular anion/cation permeability and also causes decreased transepithelial resistance (Petit et al. 2001, 2003). These effects produce net water movement across endothelial/epithelial layers, possibly explaining the edema associated with ϵ-toxin-induced disease. Similar to the *Helicobacter pylori* VacA toxin, the decrease in transepithelial resistance is not accompanied by loss of tight junction contacts (Petit et al. 2003). Immunofluorescence studies have shown that MDCK cells treated with ϵ-toxin had no redistribution of their junction-associated proteins, including actin filaments, ZO-1, E-cadherin, and α catenin (Petit et al. 2003).

Together, these studies indicate that once ϵ-toxin is activated by proteolytic cleavage in the gut, the toxin moves across the intestinal epithelium sometimes by directly inducing damage. It is then transported through the circulatory system to target organs including the

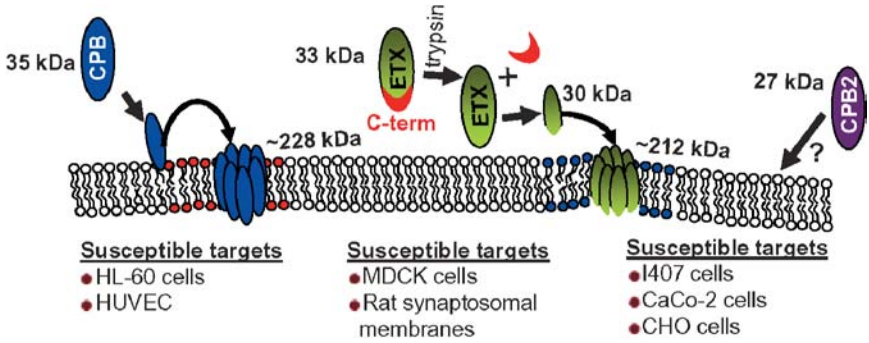


Fig. 7 Proposed mechanisms of action of CPB, ETX, and CPB2. CPB is believed to bind within lipid rafts (*red* lipids), where it apparently interacts with other CPB monomers to form a heptameric pore. A similar mechanism has been proposed for ETX; however, a processing step involving trypsin/chymotrypsin cleavage of the C-terminal end is necessary for pore formation. The mechanism of action of the CPB2 toxin remains to be determined. Cell lines shown to be susceptible to each toxin are shown *below* the respective mechanism of action cartoon

brain, kidneys, and lungs. Upon reaching target organs, the ϵ-toxin binds to cells containing the appropriate receptors (probably glycosylated-proteins located within DRMs; Fig. 7). After binding, the ϵ-toxin forms a nonselective pore by oligomerizing into a heptamer (Fig. 6). This pore results in loss of transepithelial resistance, and ultimately in net water movement that creates edema within intoxicated tissues. Further studies are needed to confirm that these effects are responsible for all neurotoxicity and nephrotoxicity associated with ϵ-toxin.

The *Clostridium perfringens* β-toxin

β-Toxin is a lethal toxin produced by *C. perfringens* type B and type C strains (Table 1), which causes a necrotic enteritis characterized by hemorrhagic mucosal ulceration or superficial mucosal necrosis of the small intestine (Sakurai 1995; Sakurai and Fujii 1987) in humans (type C only) or animals (type B and C). β-Toxin is secreted in late log growth phase, is thermo-labile, and highly-sensitive to proteases. The molecular weight of the β-toxin polypeptide is ~35 kDa (Fig. 5; Hunter et al. 1992).

The gene (*cpb*) encoding β-toxin is carried on a plasmid (Katayama et al. 1996; Sakurai and Duncan 1978) that has received little attention thus far except for studies demonstrating the presence of IS*1151* sequences (Daube et al. 1996). The β-toxin gene has been cloned and sequenced (Hunter et al. 1993), which revealed an open reading frame encoding a 336 amino acid polypeptide that includes a 27-amino acid signal sequence removed from the mature β-toxin (Fig. 5). A possible Shine-Delgarno sequence is located 7 bp upstream of the start codon of the *cpb* gene and the intervening region is composed entirely of thymidine residues. Due to its high A+T content, potential promoter sequence prediction for *cpb* is difficult. Also, unlike the genes encoding most of these toxins, the *cpb* gene does not contain any stem-loop structures followed by a poly (T) tail, suggesting that rho-independent termination of *cpb* transcription does not occur (Hunter et al. 1993). Comparison of *cpb* sequences between *C. perfringens* type C and B isolates detected 1–6 base dif-

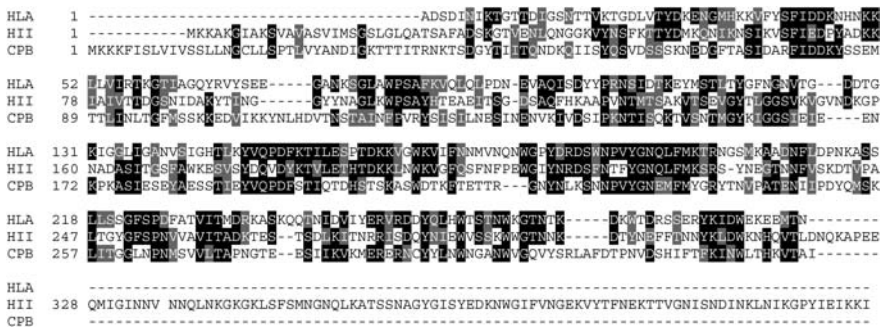


Fig. 8 Amino acid sequence alignment between CPB and other members of the leukocidin and γ-toxin families. CPB shows approximately 17–29% amino acid similarity with the leukocidin toxin (HLA) and γ-toxin (HII) of *Staphylococcus aureus*. This sequence comparison suggest a similar mode of action between CPB and these pore-forming toxin families. Identical residues are shown in *black* and similar residues are shown in *gray*. The alignment was performed using ClustalW Multiple Sequence Alignment program (http://www.ebi.ac.uk) and illustrated using Boxshade (http://www.ch.embnet.org/software/BOX_form.html)

ference within the open reading frame (Steinthorsdottir et al. 1995; D.J. Fisher et al., unpublished data). Some of those changes result in amino acid substitutions, but the significance of those changes for toxicity is unclear.

The deduced amino acid sequence of β-toxin significantly resembles several pore-forming toxins, with 28% similarity to *Staphylococcus aureus* α-toxin (Hunter et al. 1993), 22%, 28%, and 18% similarity, respectively, to the A, B, and C components of γ-toxin (Cooney et al. 1993), 17% and 28% similarity, respectively, to the S and F components of leukocidin, and 25% similarity to cytotoxin K of *Bacillus cereus* ATCC 14579 (Fig. 8). These similarities are dispersed throughout the β-toxin protein, with the weakest similarity at the N-terminal region. While a common feature of the toxins sharing sequence homology with β-toxin is their hemolytic activity, β-toxin is not hemolytic for either rabbit or sheep erythrocytes (Steinthorsdottir et al. 1998)

Mutational analysis of β-toxin lethality

Chemical modification experiments identified certain residues likely to be essential for β-toxin lethal activity (Fig. 5). One study created 11 single mutations in the β-toxin protein and found that an arginine at position 212 is very important, i.e., replacement of that Arg-212 residue with glutamic acid resulted in an 11.5-fold reduction in toxicity (Steinthorsdottir et al. 1998). However, replacing the same Arg-212 residue with glutamine reduced lethal activity only by about 5.5-fold. Another study determined that the thiol group on β-toxin's single cysteine residue is sensitive to modification but is not strictly required for lethal activity, i.e., replacing this cysteine residue (at position 265) with either alanine or serine has very little effect on lethal activity (Nagahama et al. 1999). However, changes at residues 266, 268, and 275 in β-toxin's C-terminal region containing the cysteine residue caused a complete loss of activity. This result suggests sites adjacent to the cysteine residue play a critical role in mediating toxicity. Nagahama et al. have proposed

that this C-terminal region is either required for β-toxin binding to its receptor or for formation of β-toxin oligomers (Nagahama et al. 1999).

β-Toxin mechanism of action

Until recently, detailed studies of β-toxin's action were delayed by the lack of commonly used in vitro models sensitive to this toxin. In 1997, Gilbert et al. first reported weak β-toxin cytotoxicity on intestinal I407 cells, but that has not since been confirmed or reproduced by other groups (Gibert et al. 1997). Steinthorsdottir et al. (2000) later showed that β-toxin forms heat-stable multimers on the membrane of HUVEC (human umbilical vein endothelial cell) cells, causing leakage of inositol and arachidonic acid from these cells (Fig. 7). However, it was not clear whether this release is a direct result of toxin-containing transmembrane channels or is an indirect cellular effect of β-toxin. Direct evidence of β-toxin pore formation came from later work done by Shatursky et al. (2000), who demonstrated that this toxin forms cation-selective pores in bilayer lipid membranes (BLM) composed of approximately 50% phosphatidylcholine and cholesterol. The size of these toxin pores was determined to be approximately 12 Å in diameter and they were shown to be selective for monovalent cations like Na^+ and K^+. This study also reported the insertion rate of β-toxin into membranes is stimulated by the presence of divalent cations. Nagahama et al. (2003) recently demonstrated the HL 60 (Human leukemia cell) cell line is also susceptible to β-toxin; in this cell culture model, β-toxin induces K^+ efflux and Ca^{2+}, Na^+ and Cl^- influxes, which then produce cell swelling and cell lysis.

Collectively, available information strongly suggests that β-toxin is a pore-forming toxin that oligomerizes to form channels in susceptible membranes (Fig. 7). The resultant membrane permeability changes result in cell death. The role of β-toxin in infections is still poorly understood. For example, while type C infections result in intestinal necrosis, purified β-toxin does not by itself induce intestinal damage in animal models. However, a β-toxoid vaccine protects humans against necrotizing enteritis from type C isolates of *C. perfringens* (Lawrence et al. 1990), which implies that β-toxin does have some intestinal activity at least in combination with other *C. perfringens* toxins. Tweten (2001) has proposed that, once absorbed from the intestines into the circulation by unknown mechanisms, β-toxin might exert neurological effects on the host by directly affecting the distribution of cations across the membranes of susceptible nervous system cells.

The *Clostridium perfringens* β2 toxin

The nucleotide sequence encoding the β2 toxin (CPB2) was first reported in 1997 (Gibert et al. 1997). Despite its name, the CPB2 toxin has no significant amino acid similarity with the β-toxin (15% nucleotide similarity), nor with any other known or hypothetical proteins (Gibert et al. 1997).

Subsequent publications (Bueschel et al. 2003; Gibert et al. 1997) determined that the CPB2 toxin is produced as a 265 amino acid polypeptide containing an N-terminal secretion signal of 30 amino acids (Fig. 5). After secretion, the CPB2 toxin has a molecular weight of 27.7 kDa and a pI of 5.01 (Bueschel et al. 2003; Gibert et al. 1997). The secreted CPB2 toxin is highly susceptible to proteolytic cleavage, as treatment with trypsin

cleaves CPB2 into two inactive species, with apparent molecular weights of 13 kDa and 15 kDa (Gibert et al. 1997).

As is true of genes encoding many other *C. perfringens* toxins, the *cpb2* gene is carried on plasmids, which range in size from 54 kb to ~100 kb (Gibert et al. 1997; Shimizu et al. 2002). The *cpb2* gene can be found in all *C. perfringens* toxin types (Bueschel et al. 2003; D.J. Fisher et al., unpublished data). In some *C. perfringens* type A human nonfood-borne GI disease isolates, the *cpb2* gene resides on the same plasmid carrying the *cpe* gene (D.J. Fisher et al., unpublished data). Expression of the *cpb2* gene is positively regulated by the VirR/VirS two component bacterial regulatory system and reaches a maximal level during late log phase during in vitro growth (Ohtani et al. 2003).

Mechanism of CPB2 action

Due in part to its relatively recent discovery, detailed studies of the mechanism of action of CPB2 have not been performed and structure-function studies have yet to be published. Type A and C isolates carrying *cpb2* have, however, been linked to GI diseases in various animals, especially adult pigs and piglets (Bueschel et al. 2003; Waters et al. 2003). CPB2 has been identified, by immunohistochemistry, in intestinal lesions of an elephant and horses suffering from natural gastroenteritis (Bacciarini et al. 2001, 2003). Also consistent with this toxin playing a role in intestinal disease, purified CPB2 toxin causes necrotic lesions in a guinea pig ileal loop model (Jolivet-Renaud 1986). Several cell lines are susceptible to purified CPB2 toxin at concentrations ranging from 0.2 to 20 μg/ml, including I407 cells (originally thought to be a human intestinal embryonic cell line, but now listed as a HeLa cell contaminant by the American Type Culture Collection) and Chinese hamster ovary cells (Gibert et al. 1997). Our laboratory has recently determined (D.J. Fisher et al., unpublished data) that CaCo-2 cells (a human colon carcinoma cell line) are also sensitive to CPB2, opening the possibility of this toxin playing a role in some human intestinal diseases. The LD_{50} of CPB2 in a mouse i.v. injection model is 3 μg (Jolivet-Renaud 1986).

When sensitive cells are treated with CPB2, they exhibit cell rounding, membrane bleb formation, and eventually detach from the cell culture matrix (Gibert et al. 1997; D.J. Fisher et al., unpublished data). Purified CPB2 toxin does not disturb the actin cytoskeleton in treated I407 cells (as visualized with phalloidin staining), nor does this toxin modify actin or small G-proteins via ADP ribosylation or UDP-glucosylation (Gibert et al. 1997). Those negative results, along with the physical appearance of toxin-treated cells, suggest that CPB2 resembles many other enterically-active *C. perfringens* toxins by functioning as a pore-forming toxin.

Concluding remarks

The recent emphasis on biodefense research has spawned a renaissance of interest in the *C. perfringens* toxins, particularly the enteric toxins. Epsilon toxin, a class B select agent, is often expressed by type B or D isolates also producing other *C. perfringens* enteric toxins, such as CPE, β-toxin, and CPB2. Coupling their biodefense importance with the current interest in therapeutic development, the *C. perfringens* enteric toxins are likely to receive extensive study in the coming years. Hopefully those studies will elucidate answers

to many important questions, such as: What is the composition of the ~155-kDa CPE complex? What are the physiologic receptors for each of the enterically-active *C. perfringens* toxins? How does CPB2 work? What is the structure of these toxins[1]? How does pore formation explain the physiologic effects of β- and ϵ-toxin?

Acknowledgements. Preparation of this review was generously supported by the United States Public Health Service Grants AI19844 and AI56177 from the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases, United States Department of Agriculture grant 2001–0517 (Ensuring Food Safety Research Program), and Grant 5T32 AI49820 (Molecular Microbial Persistence and Pathogenesis Graduate Training Program) also from the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases. We thank Dr. Akinobu Okabe for permission to use Fig. 6. All previously unpublished experiments from our laboratory that are referred to within this text comply with the current laws of the United States of America.

References

Adak GK, Long SM, O'Brien SJ (2002) Trends in indigenous foodborne disease and deaths, England and Wales: 1992 to 2000. Gut 51:832–841

Anderson JM, Van Itallie CM (1999) Tight junctions: closing in on the seal. Curr Biol 9:R922–924

Bacciarini LN, Pagan O, Frey J, Grone A (2001) *Clostridium perfringens* β2-toxin in an African elephant (Loxodonta africana) with ulcerative enteritis. Vet Rec 149:618–620

Bacciarini LN, Boerlin P, Straub R, Frey J, Grone A (2003) Immunohistochemical localization of *Clostridium perfringens* β2-toxin in the gastrointestinal tract of horses. Vet Pathol 40:376–381

Bartholomew BA, Stringer MF, Watson GN, Gilbert RJ (1985) Development and application of an enzyme linked immunosorbent assay for *Clostridium perfringens* type A enterotoxin. J Clin Pathol 38:222–228

Beal DR, Titball RW, Lindsay CD (2003) The development of tolerance to *Clostridium perfringens* type D epsilon-toxin in MDCK and G-402 cells. Hum Exp Toxicol 22:593–605

Boehning D, Patterson RL, Sedaghat L, Glebova NO, Kurosaki T, Snyder SH (2003) Cytochrome c binds to inositol (1,4,5) trisphosphate receptors, amplifying calcium-dependent apoptosis. Nat Cell Biol 5:1051–1061

Boise LH, Collins CM (2001) *Salmonella*-induced cell death: apoptosis, necrosis or programmed cell death? Trends Microbiol 9:64–67

Borriello SP, Larson HE, Welch AR, Barclay F, Stringer MF, Bartholomew BA (1984) Enterotoxigenic *Clostridium perfringens*: a possible cause of antibiotic-associated diarrhoea. Lancet 1:305–307

Brennan MA, Cookson BT (2000) *Salmonella* induces macrophage death by caspase-1-dependent necrosis. Mol Microbiol 38:31–40

Brynestad S, Sarker MR, McClane BA, Granum PE, Rood JI (2001) Enterotoxin plasmid from *Clostridium perfringens* is conjugative. Infect Immun 69:3483–3487

Bueschel DM, Jost BH, Billington SJ, Trinh HT, Songer JG (2003) Prevalence of *cpb2*, encoding β2 toxin, in *Clostridium perfringens* field isolates: correlation of genotype with phenotype. Vet Microbiol 94:121–129

Buxton D (1978) In vitro effects of *Clostridium welchii* type-D epsilon toxin on guinea-pig, mouse, rabbit and sheep cells. J Med Microbiol 11:299–302

Chakrabarti G, Zhou X, McClane BA (2003) Death pathways activated in CaCo-2 cells by *Clostridium perfringens* enterotoxin. Infect Immun 71:4260–4270

Chakrabarti G, McClane BA (2004) The importance of calcium, calmodulin and calpain for the activation of CaCo-2 cell death pathways by *Clostridium perfringens* enterotoxin. Cell Microbiol (in press)

Choi DW (1995) Calcium: still center-stage in hypoxic-ischemic neuronal death. Trends Neurosci 18:58–60

Cole AR, Gibert M, Popoff M, Moss DS, Titball RW, Basak AK (2004) *Clostridium perfringens* epsilon-toxin shows structural similarity to the pore-forming toxin aerolysin. Nat Struct Mol Biol 11:797–798

Collie RE, McClane BA (1998) Evidence that the enterotoxin gene can be episomal in *Clostridium perfringens* isolates associated with nonfood-borne human gastrointestinal diseases. J Clin Microbiol 36:30–36

[1] Note added during revision: The structure of ϵ-toxin has recently been solved (Cole et al. 2004). Structurally, ϵ-toxin consists of three domains containing mainly β sheets and shares similarities with aerolysin, another pore-forming toxin.

Cooney J, Kienle Z, Foster TJ, O'Toole PW (1993) The gamma-hemolysin locus of *Staphylococcus aureus* comprises three linked genes, two of which are identical to the genes for the F and S components of leukocidin. Infect Immun 61:768–771

Cornillot E, Saint-Joanis B, Daube G, Katayama S, Granum PE, Canard B, Cole ST (1995) The enterotoxin gene (*cpe*) of *Clostridium perfringens* can be chromosomal or plasmid-borne. Mol Microbiol 15:639–647

Czeczulin JR, Hanna PC, McClane BA (1993) Cloning, nucleotide sequencing, and expression of the *Clostridium perfringens* enterotoxin gene in *Escherichia coli*. Infect Immun 61:3429–3439

Daube G, Simon P, Limbourg B, Manteca C, Mainil J, Kaeckenbeeck A (1996) Hybridization of 2,659 *Clostridium perfringens* isolates with gene probes for seven toxins (alpha, beta, epsilon, iota, theta, mu, and enterotoxin) and for sialidase. Am J Vet Res 57:496–501

Duncan CL (1973) Time of enterotoxin formation and release during sporulation of *Clostridium perfringens* type A. J Bacteriol 113:932–936

Fernandez Miyakawa ME, Uzal FA (2003) The early effects of *Clostridium perfringens* type D epsilon toxin in ligated intestinal loops of goats and sheep. Vet Res Commun 27:231–241

Fujita K, Katahira J, Horiguchi Y, Sonoda N, Furuse M, Tsukita S (2000) *Clostridium perfringens* enterotoxin binds to the second extracellular loop of claudin-3, a tight junction integral membrane protein. FEBS Lett 476:258–261

Gibert M, Jolivet-Reynaud C, Popoff MR, Jolivet-Renaud C (1997) Beta2 toxin, a novel toxin produced by *Clostridium perfringens*. Gene 203:65–73

Granum PE, Richardson M (1991) Chymotrypsin treatment increases the activity of *Clostridium perfringens* enterotoxin. Toxicon 29:898–900

Granum PE, Whitaker JR, Skjelkvale R (1981) Trypsin activation of enterotoxin from *Clostridium perfringens* type A: fragmentation and some physicochemical properties. Biochim Biophys Acta 668:325–332

Hanna PC, McClane BA (1991) A recombinant C-terminal toxin fragment provides evidence that membrane insertion is important for *Clostridium perfringens* enterotoxin cytotoxicity. Mol Microbiol 5:225–230

Hanna PC, Wnek AP, McClane BA (1989) Molecular cloning of the 3' half of the *Clostridium perfringens* enterotoxin gene and demonstration that this region encodes receptor-binding activity. J Bacteriol 171:6815–6820

Hanna PC, Mietzner TA, Schoolnik GK, McClane BA (1991) Localization of the receptor-binding region of *Clostridium perfringens* enterotoxin utilizing cloned toxin fragments and synthetic peptides. The 30 C-terminal amino acids define a functional binding region. J Biol Chem 266:11037–11043

Hanna PC, Wieckowski EU, Mietzner TA, McClane BA (1992) Mapping of functional regions of *Clostridium perfringens* type A enterotoxin. Infect Immun 60:2110–2104

Hardy SP, Denmead M, Parekh N, Granum PE (1999) Cationic currents induced by *Clostridium perfringens* type A enterotoxin in human intestinal CaCo-2 cells. J Med Microbiol 48:235–243

Hardy SP, Ritchie C, Allen MC, Ashley RH, Granum PE (2001) *Clostridium perfringens* type A enterotoxin forms mepacrine-sensitive pores in pure phospholipid bilayers in the absence of putative receptor proteins. Biochim Biophys Acta 1515:38–43

Havard HL, Hunter SE, Titball RW (1992) Comparison of the nucleotide sequence and development of a PCR test for the epsilon toxin gene of *Clostridium perfringens* type B and type D. FEMS Microbiol Lett 76:77–81

Hockenbery D (1995) Defining apoptosis. Am J Pathol 146:16–19

Hunter SE, Clarke IN, Kelly DC, Titball RW (1992) Cloning and nucleotide sequencing of the *Clostridium perfringens* epsilon-toxin gene and its expression in *Escherichia coli*. Infect Immun 60:102–110

Hunter SE, Brown JE, Oyston PC, Sakurai J, Titball RW (1993) Molecular genetic analysis of beta-toxin of *Clostridium perfringens* reveals sequence homology with alpha-toxin, gamma-toxin, and leukocidin of *Staphylococcus aureus*. Infect Immun 61:3958–3965

Jin F, Matsushita O, Katayama S, Jin S, Matsushita C, Minami J, Okabe A (1996) Purification, characterization, and primary structure of *Clostridium perfringens* lambda-toxin, a thermolysin-like metalloprotease. Infect Immun 64:230–237

Jolivet-Renaud C, Popoff MR, Vinit MA, Ravisse P, Moreau H, Alouf JE (1986) Enteropathogenicity of *Clostridium perfringens* beta toxin and other clostridial toxins. Zbl. Bakteriol S15:145–151

Katahira J, Inoue N, Horiguchi Y, Matsuda M, Sugimoto N (1997a) Molecular cloning and functional characterization of the receptor for *Clostridium perfringens* enterotoxin. J Cell Biol 136:1239–1247

Katahira J, Sugiyama H, Inoue N, Horiguchi Y, Matsuda M, Sugimoto N (1997b) *Clostridium perfringens* enterotoxin utilizes two structurally related membrane proteins as functional receptors in vivo. J Biol Chem 272:26652–26658

Katayama S, Dupuy B, Daube G, China B, Cole ST (1996) Genome mapping of *Clostridium perfringens* strains with I-CeuI shows many virulence genes to be plasmid-borne. Mol Gen Genet 251:720–726

Kokai-Kun JF, McClane BA (1997) Deletion analysis of the *Clostridium perfringens* enterotoxin. Infect Immun 65:1014–1022

Kokai-Kun JF, Benton K, Wieckowski EU, McClane BA (1999) Identification of a *Clostridium perfringens* enterotoxin region required for large complex formation and cytotoxicity by random mutagenesis. Infect Immun 67:5634–5641

Kumar A, Kumar S, Sarma Dagger PV, Sharma Double Dagger AK (2002) Differential conformational environment of tryptophan in epsilon native prototoxin and active toxin from *Clostridium perfringens* type D. J Biochem Mol Biol Biophys 6:147–150

Labbe RG (1989) *Clostridium perfringens*. In: Doyle MP (ed) Foodborne bacterial pathogens. Marcel Dekker Press, New York, pp 192–234

Lawrence GW, Lehmann D, Anian G, Coakley CA, Saleu G, Barker MJ, Davis MW (1990) Impact of active immunisation against enteritis necroticans in Papua New Guinea. Lancet 336:1165–1167

Liu JW, Porter AG, Wee BY, Thanabalu T (1996) New gene from nine *Bacillus sphaericus* strains encoding highly conserved 35.8-kilodalton mosquitocidal toxins. Appl Environ Microbiol 62:2174–2176

Long H, Crean CD, Lee WH, Cummings OW, Gabig TG (2001) Expression of *Clostridium perfringens* enterotoxin receptors claudin-3 and claudin-4 in prostate cancer epithelium. Cancer Res 61:7878–7881

Majno G, Joris I (1995) Apoptosis, oncosis, and necrosis. An overview of cell death. Am J Pathol 146:3–15

Matsuda M, Sugimoto N (1979) Calcium-independent and dependent steps in action of *Clostridium perfringens* enterotoxin on HeLa and Vero cells. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 91:629–636

Matsushita O, Yoshihara K, Katayama S, Minami J, Okabe A (1994) Purification and characterization of *Clostridium perfringens* 120-kilodalton collagenase and nucleotide sequence of the corresponding gene. J Bacteriol 176:149–156

McClane BA, Wnek AP (1990) Studies of *Clostridium perfringens* enterotoxin action at different temperatures demonstrate a correlation between complex formation and cytotoxicity. Infect Immun 58:3109–3115

McClane BA, Lyerly D, Wilkins T (2000) Enterotoxic Clostridia. In: V.A. Fischetti N, R., Ferretti, J., Portnoy, D., Rood, J. (ed) Gram-Positive Pathogens. ASM Press, Washington, D.C

McClane BA, Wnek AP, Hulkower KI, Hanna PC (1988) Divalent cation involvement in the action of *Clostridium perfringens* type A enterotoxin. Early events in enterotoxin action are divalent cation-independent. J Biol Chem 263:2423–2435

McDonel JL, Dorner F (1986) The role of toxins in bacterial pathogenesis. In: Dorner F, Drews, J. (ed) Pharmacology of Bacterial Toxins. Pergamon Press, Oxford, England ; New York

McDonel JL, Duncan CL (1975) Histopathological effect of *Clostridium perfringens* enterotoxin in the rabbit ileum. Infect Immun 12:1214–1218

McDonel JL, Chang LW, Pounds JG, Duncan CL (1978) The effects of *Clostridium perfringens* enterotoxin on rat and rabbit ileum: an electron microscopic study. Lab Invest 39:210–218

Melville SB, Labbe R, Sonenshein AL (1994) Expression from the *Clostridium perfringens cpe* promoter in *C. perfringens* and *Bacillus subtilis*. Infect Immun 62:5550–5558

Michl P, Buchholz M, Rolke M, Kunsch S, Lohr M, McClane B, Tsukita S, Leder G, Adler G, Gress TM (2001) Claudin-4: a new target for pancreatic cancer treatment using *Clostridium perfringens* enterotoxin. Gastroenterology 121:678–684

Minami J, Katayama S, Matsushita O, Matsushita C, Okabe A (1997) Lambda-toxin of *Clostridium perfringens* activates the precursor of epsilon-toxin by releasing its N- and C-terminal peptides. Microbiol Immunol 41:527–535

Mitic LL, Unger VM, Anderson JM (2003) Expression, solubilization, and biochemical characterization of the tight junction transmembrane protein claudin-4. Protein Sci 12:218–227

Miyamoto O, Minami J, Toyoshima T, Nakamura T, Masada T, Nagao S, Negi T, Itano T, Okabe A (1998) Neurotoxicity of *Clostridium perfringens* epsilon-toxin for the rat hippocampus via the glutamatergic system. Infect Immun 66:2501–2508

Miyamoto O, Sumitani K, Nakamura T, Yamagami S, Miyata S, Itano T, Negi T, Okabe A (2000) *Clostridium perfringens* epsilon toxin causes excessive release of glutamate in the mouse hippocampus. FEMS Microbiol Lett 189:109–113

Miyata S, Matsushita O, Minami J, Katayama S, Shimamoto S, Okabe A (2001) Cleavage of a C-terminal peptide is essential for heptamerization of *Clostridium perfringens* epsilon-toxin in the synaptosomal membrane. J Biol Chem 276:13778–13783

Miyata S, Minami J, Tamai E, Matsushita O, Shimamoto S, Okabe A (2002) *Clostridium perfringens* epsilon-toxin forms a heptameric pore within the detergent-insoluble microdomains of Madin-Darby canine kidney cells and rat synaptosomes. J Biol Chem 277:39463–39468

Nagahama M, Sakurai J (1992) High-affinity binding of *Clostridium perfringens* epsilon-toxin to rat brain. Infect Immun 60:1237–1240

Nagahama M, Kihara A, Miyawaki T, Mukai M, Sakaguchi Y, Ochi S, Sakurai J (1999) *Clostridium perfringens* beta-toxin is sensitive to thiol-group modification but does not require a thiol group for lethal activity. Biochim Biophys Acta 1454:97–105

Nagahama M, Morimutsu S, Kihara A, Akita M, Setsu K, Sakurai J (2003) Involvement of tachykinin receptors in *Clostridium perfringens* beta-toxin-induced plasma extravasation. Br J Pharmacol 138(1):23–30

Ohtani K, Kawsar HI, Okumura K, Hayashi H, Shimizu T (2003) The VirR/VirS regulatory cascade affects transcription of plasmid-encoded putative virulence genes in *Clostridium perfringens* strain 13. FEMS Microbiol Lett 222:137–141

Olsen SJ, MacKinnon LC, Goulding JS, Bean NH, Slutsker L (2000) Surveillance for foodborne-disease outbreaks—United States, 1993–1997. MMWR CDC Surveill Summ 49:1–62

Oysten PCF, Paybe DW, Harvard HL, Willianson ED and Titball RW (1998) Production of non-toxic site-directed mutant of *Clostridium perfringens* ϵ-toxin which induces protective immunity in mice. Microbiol 144:333–341

Petit L, Maier E, Gibert M, Popoff MR, Benz R (2001) *Clostridium perfringens* epsilon toxin induces a rapid change of cell membrane permeability to ions and forms channels in artificial lipid bilayers. J Biol Chem 276:15736–15740

Petit L, Gibert M, Gourch A, Bens M, Vandewalle A, Popoff MR (2003) *Clostridium perfringens* epsilon toxin rapidly decreases membrane barrier permeability of polarized MDCK cells. Cell Microbiol 5:155–164

Richardson M, Granum PE (1983) Sequence of the amino-terminal part of enterotoxin from *Clostridium perfringens* type A: identification of points of trypsin activation. Infect Immun 40:943–949

Sakurai J (1995) Toxins of *Clostridium perfringens*. Rev Med Microbiol 6:175–185

Sakurai J, Duncan CL (1978) Some properties of beta-toxin produced by *Clostridium perfringens* type C. Infect Immun 21:678–680

Sakurai J, Fujii Y (1987) Purification and characterization of *Clostridium perfringens* beta toxin. Toxicon 25:1301–1310

Sakurai J, Nagahama M (1985) Role of one tryptophan residue in the lethal activity of *Clostridium perfringens* epsilon toxin. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 128:760–766

Sakurai J, Nagahama M (1986) Amino groups in *Clostridium perfringens* epsilon prototoxin and epsilon toxin. Microb Pathog 1:417–423

Sarker MR, Carman RJ, McClane BA (1999) Inactivation of the gene (*cpe*) encoding *Clostridium perfringens* enterotoxin eliminates the ability of two *cpe*-positive *C. perfringens* type A human gastrointestinal disease isolates to affect rabbit ileal loops. Mol Microbiol 33:946–958

Shatursky O, Bayles R, Rogers M, Jost BH, Songer JG, Tweten RK (2000) *Clostridium perfringens* beta-toxin forms potential-dependent, cation-selective channels in lipid bilayers. Infect Immun 68(10):5546–5551

Sherman S, Klein E, McClane BA (1994) *Clostridium perfringens* type A enterotoxin induces tissue damage and fluid accumulation in rabbit ileum. J Diarrhoeal Dis Res 12:200–207

Shimizu T, Ohtani K, Hirakawa H, Ohshima K, Yamashita A, Shiba T, Ogasawara N, Hattori M, Kuhara S, Hayashi H (2002) Complete genome sequence of *Clostridium perfringens*, an anaerobic flesh-eater. Proc Natl Acad Sci 99:996–1001

Singh U, Van Itallie CM, Mitic LL, Anderson JM, McClane BA (2000) CaCo-2 cells treated with *Clostridium perfringens* enterotoxin form multiple large complex species, one of which contains the tight junction protein occludin. J Biol Chem 275:18407–18417

Singh U, Mitic LL, Wieckowski EU, Anderson JM, McClane BA (2001) Comparative biochemical and immunocytochemical studies reveal differences in the effects of *Clostridium perfringens* enterotoxin on polarized CaCo-2 cells versus Vero cells. J Biol Chem 276:33402–33412

Skjelkvale R, Uemura T (1977) Experimental diarrhoea in human volunteers following oral administration of *Clostridium perfringens* enterotoxin. J Appl Bacteriol 43:281–286

Songer JG (1996) Clostridial enteric diseases of domestic animals. Clin Microbiol Rev 9:216–234

Steinthorsdottir V, Fridriksdottir V, Gunnarsson E, Andresson OS, Steinporsdottir, Frithriksdottir V (1995) Expression and purification of *Clostridium perfringens* beta-toxin glutathione S-transferase fusion protein. FEMS Microbiol Lett 130:273–278

Steinthorsdottir V, Fridriksdottir V, Gunnarsson E, Andresson OS (1998) Site-directed mutagenesis of *Clostridium perfringens* beta-toxin: expression of wild-type and mutant toxins in *Bacillus subtilis*. FEMS Microbiol Lett 158:17–23

Steinthorsdottir V, Halldorsson H, Andresson OS (2000) *Clostridium perfringens* beta-toxin forms multimeric transmembrane pores in human endothelial cells. Micro Pathog 28(1):45–50

Steller H (1995) Mechanisms and genes of cellular suicide. Science 267:1445–1449

Sugimoto N, Takagi M, Ozutsumi K, Harada S, Matsuda M (1988) Enterotoxin of *Clostridium perfringens* type A forms ion-permeable channels in a lipid bilayer membrane. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 156:551–556

Tamai E, Ishida T, Miyata S, Matsushita O, Suda H, Kobayashi S, Sonobe H, Okabe A (2003) Accumulation of *Clostridium perfringens* epsilon-toxin in the mouse kidney and its possible biological significance. Infect Immun 71:5371–5375

Thanabalu T, Porter AG (1996) A *Bacillus sphaericus* gene encoding a novel type of mosquitocidal toxin of 31.8 kDa. Gene 170:85–89

Tweten RK (2001) *Clostridium perfringens* beta-toxin and *Clostridium septicum* alpha toxin: their mechanisms and possible role in pathogenesis. Vet Microbiol 82:1–9

Waters M, Savoie A, Garmory HS, Bueschel D, Popoff MR, Songer JG, Titball RW, McClane BA, Sarker MR (2003) Genotyping and phenotyping of beta2-toxigenic *Clostridium perfringens* fecal isolates associated with gastrointestinal diseases in piglets. J Clin Microbiol 41:3584–3591

Wen Q, McClane BA (2004) Detection of enterotoxingenic *Clostridium perfringens* type A isolates in American retail foods. Appl Environ Microbiol 70:2685–2691

Wieckowski EU, Wnek AP, McClane BA (1994) Evidence that an approximately 50-kDa mammalian plasma membrane protein with receptor-like properties mediates the amphiphilicity of specifically bound *Clostridium perfringens* enterotoxin. J Biol Chem 269:10838–10848

Wieckowski EU, Kokai-Kun JF, McClane BA (1998) Characterization of membrane-associated *Clostridium perfringens* enterotoxin following pronase treatment. Infect Immun 66:5897–5905

Wnek AP, McClane BA (1986) Comparison of receptors for *Clostridium perfringens* type A and cholera enterotoxins in isolated rabbit intestinal brush border membranes. Microb Pathog 1:89–100

Wnek AP, McClane BA (1989) Preliminary evidence that *Clostridium perfringens* type A enterotoxin is present in a 160,000-Mr complex in mammalian membranes. Infect Immun 57:574–581

Zhao Y, Melville SB (1998) Identification and characterization of sporulation-dependent promoters upstream of the enterotoxin gene (*cpe*) of *Clostridium perfringens*. J Bacteriol 180:136–142

Rev Physiol Biochem Pharmacol (2004) 152:205–220
DOI 10.1007/s10254-004-0027-3

B. Gebert · W. Fischer · R. Haas

The *Helicobacter pylori* vacuolating cytotoxin: from cellular vacuolation to immunosuppressive activities

Published online: 27 July 2004

Abstract *Helicobacter pylori* is a highly successful bacterial pathogen of humans, infecting the stomach of more than half of the world's population. The *H. pylori* infection results in chronic gastritis, eventually followed by peptic ulceration and, more rarely, gastric cancer. *H. pylori* has developed a unique set of virulence factors, actively supporting its survival in the special ecological niche of the human stomach. Vacuolating cytotoxin (VacA) and cytotoxin-associated antigen A (CagA) are two major bacterial virulence factors involved in host cell modulation. VacA, so far mainly regarded as a cytotoxin of the gastric epithelial cell layer, now turns out to be a potent immunomodulatory toxin, targeting the adapted immune system. Thus, in addition to the well-known vacuolating activity, VacA has been reported to induce apoptosis in epithelial cells, to affect B lymphocyte antigen presentation, to inhibit the activation and proliferation of T lymphocytes, and to modulate the T cell-mediated cytokine response.

Introduction

Since the discovery of vacuolating cytotoxin (VacA) 16 years ago (Leunk et al. 1988) and the first description of its purification (Cover and Blaser 1992), numerous studies have been performed to elucidate its mechanism(s) of action and its biological role. Particularly the effect of VacA on epithelial cells has been examined in great detail. The biological significance of VacA has been derived from several observations. First of all, large quantities of purified VacA can induce ulcer-like erosions when administered into the mouse stomach (Marchetti et al. 1995). In addition, VacA increases the risk of gastric ulcer formation in experimentally infected gerbils (Ogura et al. 2000) and also enhances the bacterial colonization rate in a mouse model of infection (Salama et al. 2001). Furthermore, certain *vacA* genotypes causing a high vacuolating activity are correlated with more severe disease in humans (Atherton et al. 1995). The *vacA* gene displays a considerable polymorphism, especially in the signal region (where the genotypes s1 and s2 may be dis-

B. Gebert · W. Fischer · R. Haas (✉)
Max von Pettenkofer Institut für Hygiene und Medizinische Mikrobiologie,
LMU München Pettenkoferstr. 9A, 80336 München, Germany

criminated) and in a mid region (genotypes m1 and m2). Vacuolating activity is higher in s1/m1 genotypes than in s1/m2 genotypes, and absent in s2/m2 genotypes (Atherton et al. 1995). Consequently, *vacA* s1/m1 genotypes are more frequently associated with peptic ulceration and gastric carcinoma. One further difference is a higher expression level of the s1/m1 as compared to the s2/m2 *vacA* genes (Forsyth et al. 1998).

Structure of the *vacA* gene and its product

The VacA protein is synthesized as a 140-kDa precursor protein (Cover et al. 1994; Schmitt and Haas 1994; Telford et al. 1994), consisting of an N-terminal signal sequence, the toxin domain, and a C-terminal extension of about 50 kDa. The C-terminal part of this extension is sufficient to accomplish secretion to the extracellular medium via an autotransporter mechanism (Fischer et al. 2001). Extracellularly, the mature 95-kDa toxin may be cleaved into an N-terminal 33-kDa (here p33, sometimes also designated as p37) and a C-terminal 55-kDa protein (here p55, sometimes also designated as p58) (Telford et al. 1994; Nguyen et al. 2001), respectively, that remain non-covalently associated (Telford et al. 1994). Purified VacA was shown to assemble into hexameric, heptameric, or dodecameric structures (Lupetti et al. 1996; Cover et al. 1997). Mutant forms of VacA that are unable to form oligomers also lack a vacuolating activity (Vinion-Dubiel et al. 1999), suggesting that oligomerization is an important feature of purified VacA. Under acid or alkaline treatment, these oligomeric forms become activated by dissociation into monomers (Cover et al. 1997; Molinari et al. 1998a; Yahiro et al. 1999). However, culture supernatants and VacA associated with the bacteria do not seem to require activation (Leunk et al. 1988; Pelicic et al. 1999), suggesting that active VacA may be monomeric in vivo, and oligomerization, which requires acid activation for its function, might be an artefact of protein purification.

Effects of VacA on epithelial cells

The vacuolating activity on epithelial cells, originally described by Leunk et al. (1988), is the most apparent effect of VacA. Despite a very extensive characterization, the mechanism of vacuolation is not completely understood. The vacuolating activity is also observed when the VacA protein is produced in epithelial cells, e.g., after transfection of the *vacA* gene cloned in an appropriate plasmid (de Bernard et al. 1997), suggesting an intracellular target for VacA vacuolating activity. On the other hand, VacA is able to form anion-selective membrane channels both in lipid bilayers (Czajkowsky et al. 1999; Szabo et al. 1999; Iwamoto et al. 1999) and in the plasma membrane of epithelial cells (Szabo et al. 1999). However, the channels seem to be structurally different in these two situations (Adrian et al. 2002). These pores induce a membrane depolarization (Szabo et al. 1999; Iwamoto et al. 1999; Schraw et al. 2002) and seem to be necessary for vacuole formation. In fact, inhibition of channel formation by addition of anion-channel blockers to VacA-treated epithelial cells also prevents vacuolation (Szabo et al. 1999; Tombola et al. 1999). Moreover, mutant forms of VacA lacking an N-terminal hydrophobic region or containing site-specific mutations in this region are defective in membrane channel as well as vacuole formation (Vinion-Dubiel et al. 1999; McClain et al. 2003). The pores are formed by oligomerization of membrane-bound monomers (Vinion-Dubiel et al. 1999), for which the N-terminal hydrophobic region is essential (McClain et al. 2001b, 2003). The N-terminal

sequence of s2-encoded VacA proteins contains a hydrophilic extension in comparison to s1-encoded VacA proteins, which is necessary and sufficient to render the proteins non-toxic (Letley and Atherton 2000; Letley et al. 2003; McClain et al. 2001b).

VacA binding to receptor and/or lipid rafts

As reported recently by Ilver et al. (2004), a significant portion of the toxin remains associated with the bacterial surface, where it seems to be organized into distinct domains. The bacteria-associated toxin was shown to be biologically active and may be transferred from the bacteria to the target cell by a contact-dependent mechanism (Ilver et al. 2004). The mechanism of a direct delivery or the involvement of a potential receptor for the direct toxin delivery to eukaryotic cells is still unknown. In contrast to surface-associated VacA, the interaction of secreted VacA with the target cell was reported to be dependent on specific protein receptors, but VacA inserts into artificial lipid membranes in the absence of protein receptors as well (Molinari et al. 1998a; Moll et al. 1995; Pagliaccia et al. 2000). This indicates that the toxin may not bind specifically to a single receptor but rather interacts with multiple components on the cell surface (Fig. 1). The first protein described functioning as a receptor for VacA was the epidermal growth factor (EGF) receptor (Seto et al. 1998). Later, Yahiro et al. (1999) identified the receptor-like protein tyrosine phosphatase (RPTP)-β, a 250-kDa surface glycoprotein, as a VacA-binding receptor on the surface of the gastric adenocarcinoma cell line AZ-521. Interestingly, this interaction was shown to be relevant for the development of VacA-induced gastric ulcers. Fujikawa et al. (2003) reported that wild-type mice, but not mice deficient in RPTP-β, showed mucosal damage and ulcer induction by VacA. RPTP-β is known to be widely expressed in cells of the nervous system, where it regulates the maturation, development, and differentiation of neuronal and glial cells. But Fujikawa et al. demonstrated its expression in gastric tissue as well (Fujikawa et al. 2003). Studies with primary RPTP-$\beta^{+/+}$ and RPTP-$\beta^{-/-}$ gastric epithelial cells indicated that VacA was taken up and induced vacuolation in both cell types to the same extent (Fujikawa et al. 2003). This suggested the existence of other receptors or an internalization mechanism for uptake of VacA besides RPTP-β. Remarkably, binding of VacA to RPTP-β increased significantly the tyrosine phosphorylation of the G protein-coupled receptor kinase interactor (Git)-1, a substrate of RPTP-β, and subsequently induced the detachment of the cells from a reconstituted basement membrane. The authors concluded that erroneous RPTP-β signaling might be involved in the development of gastric ulcers (Fujikawa et al. 2003). Co-immunoprecipitation experiments using RPTP-β-negative, but VacA-sensitive cells led to the identification of another receptor-like protein tyrosine phosphatase, RPTP-α, as a receptor for VacA (Yahiro et al. 2003). In contrast to RPTP-β, RPTP-α is ubiquitously expressed (Yahiro et al. 2003). Besides the interaction of VacA with these specific receptors, VacA was also shown to bind to detergent-resistant microdomains (lipid rafts) of the cell membrane, which are enriched in cholesterol, sphingolipids, and glycosylphosphatidylinositol-anchored proteins (GPI-APs) (Fig. 1). As reported by several groups, depletion of membrane cholesterol significantly reduces the entry of VacA into target cells (Patel et al. 2002; Schraw et al. 2002; Kuo and Wang 2003). Contrasting results exist concerning the involvement of GPI-APs in internalization of VacA via lipid rafts. Kuo and Wang (2003) demonstrated that removal of GPI-APs from the cell surface by treatment with phosphatidylinositol-specific phospholipase C (PI-PLC) blocked VacA-induced vacuolation, but did not affect binding of VacA to lipid rafts. Similar data were reported by Ricci et al. (2000). In agreement with these findings,

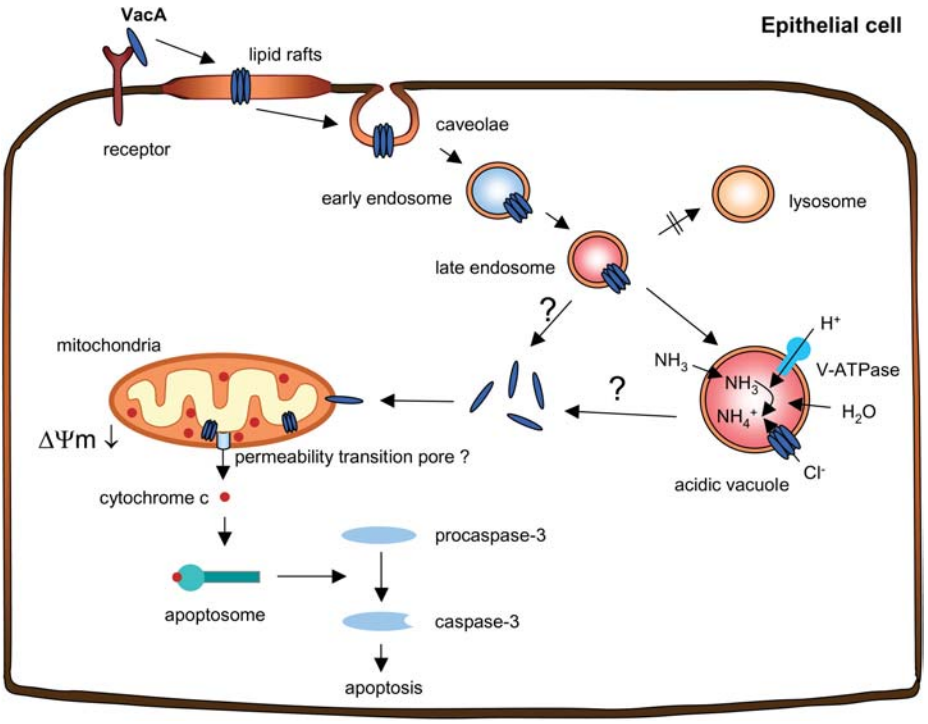


Fig. 1 VacA membrane interaction, intracellular vesicle trafficking, and induction of apoptosis. VacA interacts with a cellular receptor and associates with lipid rafts, where it inserts and oligomerizes to form anion-selective channels (chloride channels). The channels are endocytosed via caveolae and mature from early endosomes via late endosomes into acidic vacuoles. The activation of a vacuolar proton pump (V-ATPase) acidifies the endosomal compartment, which takes up weak bases (NH_3) and H_2O by diffusion. The VacA channel supports the entry of Cl^- ions, finally resulting in swelling and acidic vacuole formation. VacA then enters the cytosol and accumulates in mitochondria by a yet-unknown mechanism. Either direct insertion of VacA into the mitochondrial inner membrane or the activation of endogenous channels results in a reduction of the membrane potential ($\Delta\Psi m$) and cytochrome *c* release, which activates the caspase 3 pathway and finally leads to apoptosis

Gauthier et al. (2004) showed that GPI-APs are required for the formation of active VacA channels in the plasma membrane, but not for binding of the toxin to lipid rafts. This indicated that GPI-APs might be necessary for internalization of VacA, but not for binding to the eukaryotic cell. Kuo and Wang (2003) suggested a common endocytic pathway of GPI-APs and VacA, since they found that internalized VacA co-migrates along with the model lipid raft antigen GPI-AP fasciclin I, which has been constitutively produced in a Chinese hamster ovary (CHO) cell line. In contrast to these results, Schraw et al. (2002) demonstrated VacA cytotoxicity independent of GPI-APs. VacA was taken up into GPI-AP-positive and GPI-AP negative CHO cells to the same extent, but vacuolation was induced in both cell types (Schraw et al. 2002). After insertion into the plasma membrane, VacA channels are internalized. Endocytosis of the VacA channels does not occur via the clathrin-coated pit pathway but rather via an actin-dependent caveolae-like internalization process (Ricci et al. 2000) (Fig. 1). Disruption of the actin cytoskeleton by treatment with cytochalasin D did not inhibit binding of VacA to the lipid rafts, but blocked internalization of VacA and vacuole formation (Gauthier et al. 2004).

Trafficking and formation of acidic vacuoles

VacA-induced vacuoles are hybrid compartments of late endosomal origin with some lysosomal markers (Molinari et al. 1997). The formation of visible vacuoles depends on the presence of weak bases, such as NH_4Cl, that promote osmotic swelling. But even without the addition of weak bases, VacA induces a perinuclear redistribution and clustering of late endosomal compartments, which may be considered as a prerequisite for the development of vacuoles (Li et al. 2004). Vacuole formation depends on the presence and activity of a number of cellular molecules, such as the vacuolar (V-) ATPase (Papini et al. 1993), Rab7 (Papini et al. 1997), Rac1 (Hotchin et al. 2000), or dynamin (Suzuki et al. 2001). The SNARE protein syntaxin 7 also seems to be involved in trafficking or vacuolation, as confirmed by transfection with a dominant-negative syntaxin 7 construct (Suzuki et al. 2003). Another study, however, excluded the involvement of SNARE proteins and suggested that the enlargement of vacuoles might be achieved by fusion of internal vesicles of multivesicular body-like structures (de Bernard et al. 2002). Notably, an involvement of the protein kinase PIKfyve in vacuole formation was demonstrated as well. In this study over-expression of PIKfyve, or microinjection of its substrate, phosphatidylinositol-3,5-bisphosphate, was sufficient to induce vacuole formation (Ikonomov et al. 2002). Apart from these proteins necessary for vacuolation, VacA was shown by a yeast two-hybrid analysis to interact with the intermediate filament protein VIP54 (de Bernard et al. 2000) and with the scaffolding protein RACK1 (Hennig et al. 2001). In both cases, the significance of these interactions is not clear. The generation of late endosome–lysosome hybrid compartments in VacA-intoxicated cells is accompanied by an inhibition of vesicle trafficking, which leads to a defect in procathepsin D maturation, or EGF degradation (Satin et al. 1997).

In order to exert a vacuolating activity, the 33-kDa fragment is not sufficient; at least part of the 55-kDa domain must be present when VacA is produced intracellularly. The minimal intracellular active domain consists of p33 and the N-terminal 100 amino acids of the p55 (de Bernard et al. 1998; Ye et al. 1999). The vacuolating activity also depends on interactions between p33 and p55 (Ye and Blanke 2002; Willhite et al. 2002; Torres et al. 2004) and requires a hydrophobic N-terminal region (Ye and Blanke 2000; McClain et al. 2001a). This hydrophobic region probably contains a transmembrane dimerization sequence, which contains an essential proline residue and a GXXXG motif, which is typical for transmembrane dimerization sequences (Ye and Blanke 2000; McClain et al. 2001a, 2003). Interestingly, an inactivating mutation in the 55-kDa domain can functionally complement another inactivating mutation within this hydrophobic sequence (Ye and Blanke 2002). All mutations that inactivate VacA for vacuolation also lead to a defect in channel formation.

VacA and apoptosis

Several studies correlated *H. pylori* with an increased level of apoptosis in the human gastric mucosa (Moss et al. 1996; Mannick et al. 1996; Rudi et al. 1998). Several *H. pylori* antigens were described to be responsible for apoptosis induction, such as urease (Fan et al. 2000), proteins of the *cag* pathogenicity island (Peek et al. 1999), and lipopolysaccharide (Wagner et al. 1997). Recently, several groups presented conclusive evidence that the VacA toxin is able to induce apoptosis in epithelial cells in the absence of other *H. pylori* factors (Cover et al. 2003; Galmiche et al. 2000; Kuck et al. 2001). Cover et al. (2003)

clearly demonstrated that wild-type bacteria, or their culture supernatants, but not the isogenic *vacA* mutant strains or the corresponding culture supernatant, induced apoptosis. In the same way, purified toxin caused apoptosis in a dose-dependent manner in the presence of ammonium chloride. Furthermore, the induction of programmed cell death was shown to be dependent on the s1m1 form of the VacA protein, since a chimeric s2m1 VacA protein did not initiate apoptosis.

Mitochondria as target for VacA and apoptosis induction

It was reported that intracellularly expressed VacA and the N-terminal p37 VacA fragment, as well as extracellularly applied VacA, are selectively targeted to the mitochondria. VacA is found in the inner mitochondrial membrane, where it induces the release of cytochrome *c*, activating the caspase-3-dependent cell death signaling cascade (Galmiche et al. 2000; Willhite and Blanke 2004) (Fig. 1). Over-expression of the anti-apoptotic Bcl-2 protein blocked apoptosis induction (Galmiche et al. 2000), indicating that VacA-induced apoptosis occurs via a mitochondria-dependent pathway. Later, Willhite et al. (2003) examined the relation between vacuolation, channel forming activity, and induction of apoptosis in more detail. They found that vacuolation and induction of cytochrome *c* release are independent outcomes of VacA intoxication and that both depend on internalization of VacA and formation of anion-selective membrane channels. Interestingly, mutant forms of VacA known to be deficient in channel formation neither caused vacuolation nor cytochrome *c* release, although they localized to the mitochondria as the wild-type toxin does (Willhite and Blanke 2004). Furthermore, the authors investigated the mechanism of VacA-mediated cytochrome *c* release and demonstrated that VacA intoxication of cells leads to a breakdown of the mitochondrial transmembrane potential (Willhite and Blanke 2004), which may be associated with changes in the permeability of the mitochondrial membrane (Fig. 1). Experiments with the well-characterized mutant forms, VacA-P9A and VacA-G14A, which are unable to form membrane channels, and with the specific channel inhibitor 5-nitro-2-(3-phenylpropylamino) benzoic acid (NPPB) clearly showed that VacA membrane channel formation is essential for reduction of the mitochondrial membrane potential ($\Delta\psi m$) and subsequent cytochrome *c* release. The authors speculate that VacA might induce changes in the mitochondrial membrane permeability by a mechanism that is independent of cellular caspase activity or the mitochondrial permeability transition.

The simplest model might be that VacA directly permeabilizes the mitochondrial inner membrane by inserting and forming pores. Such pores could result in a reduction in $\Delta\Psi m$, ultimately leading to further changes in the outer membrane and release of cytochrome *c* into the cytosol (Fig. 1). Alternatively, VacA interaction with the mitochondria could activate endogenous channels of the mitochondria, such as the adenine nucleotide translocase within the inner membrane, or the voltage-dependent anion channel (VDAC), an abundant protein located in the outer membrane of mitochondria, which is thought to facilitate cytochrome *c* release (Tsujimoto and Shimizu 2002). Interestingly, the ability of VacA to induce apoptosis seems to be cell type-dependent, since it was found that VacA induces apoptosis in parietal cells (Neu et al. 2002), which might facilitate *H. pylori* colonization of the gastric mucosa, but no apoptosis could be detected in VacA-treated activated T cells (Gebert et al. 2003; Boncristiano et al. 2003).

Novel activities of VacA toward cells of the immune system

The effect of VacA has been studied for years exclusively on epithelial cells. This might be explained by the fact that the epithelial cell layer constitutes the first barrier for VacA in the gastric mucosa. Originally, the vacuolating cytotoxin was described as a secreted molecule (Leunk et al. 1988; Cover and Blaser 1992). The contact-dependent transfer of VacA described by Ilver et al. (2004) might be relevant for delivery of VacA into gastric epithelial cells, but secreted VacA is able to penetrate into deeper tissues, getting possibly into contact with many other cell types, especially cells of the immune system, such as granulocytes, macrophages, dendritic cells, B cells, and T cells. The activity of VacA on these cell types is discussed below.

Opening of tight junctions and cooperation of CagA and VacA

The intact epithelial barrier is usually very tight and the deeper tissue is not accessible for molecules of the gastric surface. It has been observed, however, that colonization of the gastric surface by *H. pylori* results in a partial opening of the tight junctions, which are responsible for the controlled sealing separating the apical side of the gastric surface from the sub-mucosa (Terres et al. 1998; Suzuki et al. 2002). Originally, the transepithelial electrical resistance (TER) of polarized epithelial cell monolayers was found to be lowered by VacA, which was believed to allow the epithelial permeability of Fe^{3+} and Ni^{2+} ions, essential for *H. pylori* survival in vivo (Papini et al. 1998). This effect does not require acid activation and is also observed with m2-type VacA (Pelicic et al. 1999). VacA might also act as a specific urea transporter, as demonstrated by the generation of a transepithelial flux of urea across model epithelia from various polarized and non-polarized epithelial cell lines (Tombola et al. 2001). A more profound effect on the integrity of tight junctions may be caused by cytotoxin-associated antigen (CagA). As demonstrated under in vitro (Odenbreit et al. 2000) and in vivo (Azuma et al. 2003) conditions, CagA might be directly injected into polarized epithelial cells via the type IV secretion system of *H. pylori*. Notably, CagA was reported to disrupt the epithelial barrier function by directly targeting the epithelial tight-junction scaffolding protein ZO-1 and the transmembrane protein junctional adhesion molecule (JAM) (Amieva et al. 2003). It can be assumed that a long-term CagA delivery to polarized epithelia causes a severe disruption of the epithelial barrier function. Thus, it seems that the two major virulence factors of *H. pylori,* VacA and CagA, have a possible synergistic effect within the gastric mucosa, a finding assumed already for a long time because of a frequent association of certain *vacA* and *cagA* genotypes. CagA opens the tight junctions allowing VacA to enter the gastric sub-mucosa and to come into contact with a number of non-epithelial cell types, such as polymorphonuclear leukocytes (PMNs), macrophages, dendritic cells, B cells, and T cells.

Interaction of *H. pylori* with polymorphonuclear granulocytes, monocytes, and macrophages and role of VacA

H. pylori infection induces a specific immune response, as demonstrated by high titers of *H. pylori* antibodies (Blanchard et al. 1999) and the recruitment of PMNs, mononuclear phagocytes, and lymphocytes to the gastric mucosa of infected individuals (Blaser and

Parsonnet 1994; Telford et al. 1997). Despite the presence of such a vigorous immune response, *H. pylori* eradication is not observed, unless specific antibiotic therapy is administered. This finding suggests, that *H. pylori* possesses properties allowing evasion of the host immune response.

Against extracellular bacterial pathogens, activated granulocytes and macrophages play a central role in the inflammatory response. Despite a predominantly extracellular lifestyle in vivo, *H. pylori* has also been described as occasionally entering epithelial cells, especially under in vitro conditions (Kwok et al. 2002), or to be taken up by professional phagocytes (Odenbreit et al. 2001). In epithelial cells, *H. pylori* seems to enter large cytoplasmic vacuoles, where the bacteria are reported to remain viable and motile (Amieva et al. 2002). It has been speculated that such intracellular vacuoles may constitute a reservoir of live *H. pylori*, difficult to attack by antibiotics or phagocytes. Whether or not VacA actually supports survival of *H. pylori* in such vacuoles is still a point of controversy (Petersen et al. 2001; Amieva et al. 2002). Whereas Ramarao et al. (2000) provided evidence that phagocytosis of *H. pylori* is inhibited by the *cag*-PAI type IV secretion system of *H. pylori*, another study found no difference in phagocytosis and intracellular survival between type I strains and isogenic mutants lacking the type IV secretion system (Odenbreit et al. 2001). Delayed phagocytosis, homotypic phagosome fusion, and prolonged survival in macrophages was reported for type I, but not type II, *H. pylori* strains (Allen et al. 2000). A further study found an enhanced survival of *H. pylori* in professional phagocytes, such as the macrophage cell lines THP-1 (human) and RAW 264.7 (murine), which was dependent on the production of VacA (Zheng and Jones 2003). They reported that VacA-producing strains of *H. pylori* reside in a compartment with early endosome properties and avoid fusion with lysosomes (Zheng and Jones 2003). The vacuolating cytotoxin seems to arrest phagosome maturation by recruiting and retaining tryptophane aspartate-containing coat protein (TACO), a mechanism also exploited by *Mycobacterium bovis* to prevent phagosome trafficking and maturation (Ferrari et al. 1999). In another study the presence of *H. pylori*-induced homotypic fusions were confirmed in isolated human monocytes, but neither VacA nor the *cag*-PAI were involved in prolonged intracellular survival (Rittig et al. 2003). Thus, the role of bacterial invasion into epithelial cells and of uptake by phagocytes as a bacterial evasion mechanism has to be clarified more rigorously in future.

Interaction of *H. pylori* with B cells and interference of VacA with antigen presentation

As discussed above, the cytotoxin might enter the gastric sub-mucosa by using the intercellular route. At this time it cannot be excluded, however, that VacA also uses a pathway of transcytosis to enter the sub-epithelial layer. In the sub-mucosa, VacA will come into contact with a number of different cell types. Molinari et al. (1998b) presented the first detailed evidence of how VacA might be able to interfere with the immune response. They demonstrated that VacA can inhibit processing of antigenic peptides in B cells and their presentation to human $CD4^+$ T cells. VacA-treated B cells showed a selective inhibition of antigen processing and surface presentation by the invariant chain (Ii)-dependent pathway. This pathway is associated with peptide loading and T cell presentation of newly synthesized major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II antigen. The antigen presentation, which is dependent on recycling MHC class II was not affected by VacA.

Immunosuppressive activities of VacA

The reason for the successful chronic persistence of *H. pylori* in its special niche is not well understood. As postulated earlier, *H. pylori* may evade host responses through the inhibition of antigen-specific T cell proliferation (Knipp et al. 1994; Fan et al. 1994). Induction of apoptosis in gastric T cells expressing Fas ligand (FasL) by *H. pylori* was also suggested as a mechanism to explain immune evasion of the bacterial pathogen (Wang et al. 2001). Vaccination data from the *H. pylori* mouse model indicated that $CD4^+$ T cells are crucial for control of the *H. pylori* infection by the host (Ermak et al. 1998; Aebischer et al. 2000). A direct correlation was reported between the level of protection against *H. pylori* infection and the density of T cells recruited to the gastric mucosa. In contrast to MHC class I and B cell knockout mice, MHC class II knockout mice were not protected by vaccination, indicating that control of the *H. pylori* infection is dependent on MHC class II-restricted, cell-mediated mechanisms. Furthermore, the adoptive transfer of UreA-specific $CD4^+$ T cells from vaccinated BALB/c mice into naïve syngeneic recipients also demonstrated the importance of $CD4^+$ T cells in controlling the *H. pylori* infection (Lucas et al. 2001). Whether or not VacA has an immunosuppressive activity in vivo in infected individuals is not known. Clinical data by Fan et al. (1994) show significantly lower peripheral blood lymphocyte proliferative responses to *H. pylori* in *H. pylori*-positive as compared to *H. pylori*-negative patients. Furthermore, the observation that *H. pylori* infection of mice infected with vaccinia virus reduces the vaccinia-specific cytotoxic T cell response and prolongs the viral infection would support such an activity (Shirai et al. 1998). Taken together, these data suggest that T cells might be a putative target of manipulation by *H. pylori* during infection.

Until recently, neither a bacterial effector nor any target for immunosuppression by *H. pylori* were known. Now, T cells have been identified as a major target for *H. pylori* VacA (Gebert et al. 2003; Boncristiano et al. 2003). Two factors of *H. pylori*—an hitherto unknown membrane-associated factor and VacA—were shown to efficiently inhibit the proliferation of T cells activated by polyclonal stimulators, such as phytohemagglutinin (PHA) and phorbol myristate acetate (PMA) and Ca^{2+} ionophores (ionomycin, A23187). A productive T cell receptor ligation, together with a costimulatory signal via the CD28 surface receptor triggers an effective interleukin-2 (IL-2) secretion. In parallel, the high-affinity IL-2 receptor α (IL-2Rα) is up-regulated on T cells. VacA was found to efficiently block both IL-2 secretion and IL-2Rα surface location and thus inhibits the existing autocrine loop (Gebert et al. 2003) (Fig. 2). Notably, a low ratio of one to five bacteria per T cell resulted already in a clear effect on IL-2 secretion of T cells (Gebert et al. 2003). Such low amounts of VacA, that may be present during gastric infection in vivo, support the idea that a high-affinity receptor for VacA is present on T cells (Boncristiano et al. 2003). The production of cyclins D3 and E were efficiently down-regulated in purified human peripheral blood lymphocytes (PBLCs) treated with VacA, resulting in a reduced phosphorylation and activation of the retinoblastoma protein (Rb), a key regulator of the cell cycle G1/S phase progression (Gebert et al. 2003). This implies that VacA might have a direct effect on the proliferative response of T cells by modulating the cell cycle.

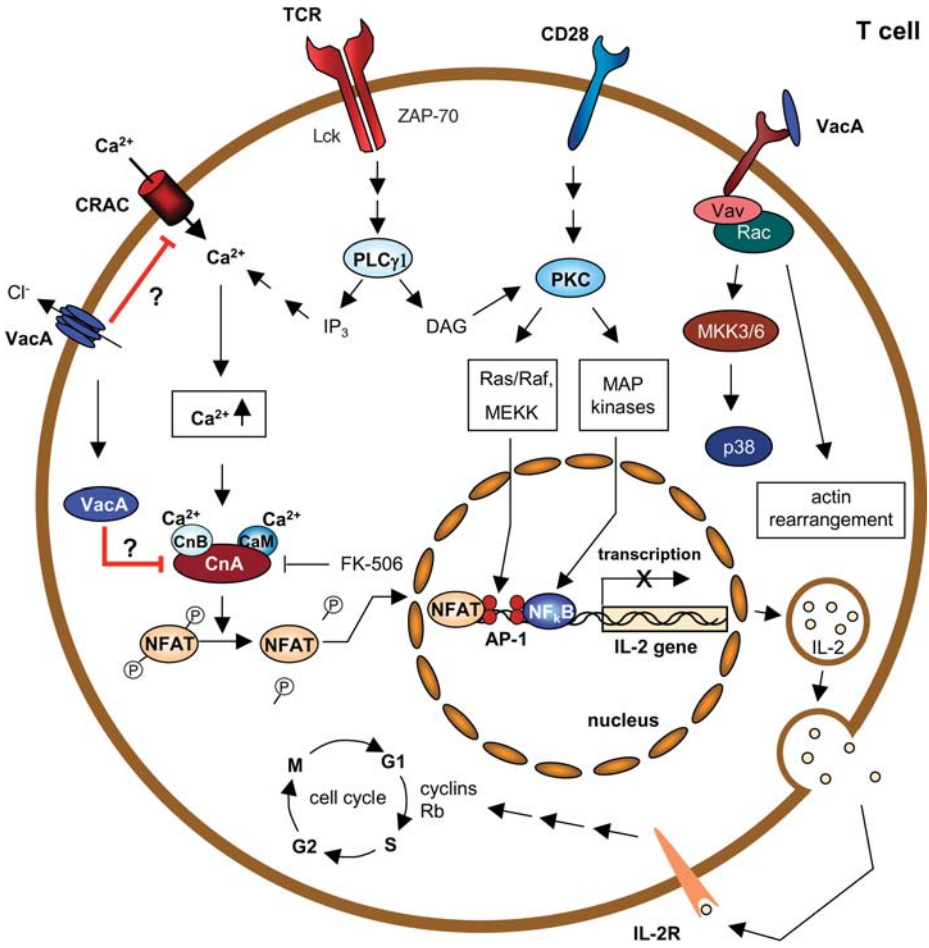


Fig. 2 Model of the interference of VacA with T cell activation. VacA inhibits T cell activation and proliferation by interfering with the T cell receptor (*TCR*) signaling pathway. Upon stimulation of T cells via TCR and CD28, two major pathways are activated [Ca^{2+}-dependent pathway and mitogen-activated protein (*MAP*) kinase pathway]. The anion-selective channel activity of VacA is supposed to depolarize the plasma membrane and to prevent the opening of the Ca^{2+} release-activated Ca^{2+} (*CRAC*) calcium channel (Boncristiano et al. 2003), which is operated by calcium released from intracellular stores. Alternatively, VacA might also block calcineurin activation directly. Inhibition of calcineurin, a prominent target for the immunosuppressive drugs cyclosporin A and FK506, prevents dephosphorylation and translocation of NFAT into the nucleus. As a result, transcription of IL-2 and IL-2Rα genes cannot be initiated (Gebert et al. 2003). The missing IL-2 signaling may arrest the cell cycle via cyclin expression and Rb protein phosphorylation. At low doses, VacA inhibits T cell activation by inducing a cascade of phosphorylation events involving a still-unidentified receptor, Vav, and MKK3/6, resulting in an increase of the active form of p38. Vav induces actin rearrangement through the small GTPase Rac, which leads to inhibition of T cell proliferation (Boncristiano et al. 2003). *AP-1* activator protein 1, *CaM* calmodulin, *CD28* costimulatory molecule, *CnA* calcineurin A subunit, *CnB* calcineurin B subunit, *CRAC* Ca^{2+} release-activated Ca^{2+} channel, *DAG* diacylglycerol, *IL-2* interleukin-2, *IL-2R* interleukin-2-receptor, *IP3* inositol-1,4,5-trisphosphate, *MEKK* MAP/ERK (extracellular regulated kinase) kinase kinase, *MKK* MAP kinase kinase, *NFAT* nuclear factor of activated T cells, *PKC* protein kinase C, *PLCγ1* phospholipase C γ1, *Rb* retinoblastoma protein, *TCR* T cell receptor

Mechanism of T cell inhibition resembles the activity of cyclosporin A and FK506

IL-2 is a major cytokine essential for the proliferation of T cells on antigen stimulation. Transcription of the IL-2 gene is under control of several transcription factors, such as nuclear factor (NF)-κB, activator protein (AP)-1, and nuclear factor of activated T cells (NFAT). In resting T cells, NFAT is phosphorylated at serine–threonine motifs and located in the cytosol. On T cell activation, a massive cytoplasmic Ca^{2+} influx is triggered, first from internal stores and subsequently from external milieu by opening of the Ca^{2+} release-activated Ca^{2+} (CRAC) channels. VacA is able to interfere with the Ca^{2+} signaling pathway, which results in blocking of the Ca^{2+}/calmodulin-dependent phosphatase calcineurin (PP2B) (Fig. 2). Ca^{2+}-activated calcineurin dephosphorylates NFAT, which subsequently migrates into the nucleus to initiate transcription of a number of genes, including the IL-2 gene. VacA abolishes the translocation of NFAT into the nucleus by specifically blocking the activation of calcineurin, but leaves NF-κB and AP-1 unaffected (Gebert et al. 2003; Boncristiano et al. 2003). This results in a failure of the activated T cell to produce IL-2 and IL2Rα, but also a number of chemokines—such as single C motif-1β (SCM-1β), SCM-1α (lymphotactin, ATAC), macrophage inflammatory protein (MIP)-1α, and MIP-1β—that might be essential for a concerted immune response (Gebert et al. 2003). Thus, VacA displays a similar effect on T cells as the well-known immunosuppressive drugs cyclosporin A and FK506, which block activation of calcineurin. One explanation of calcineurin inhibition might be due to the VacA anion channel activity (Szabo et al. 1999). In the presence of NPPB, VacA had no effect on the A23187-induced cytosolic Ca^{2+} increase, which suggests that the opening of anion channels might influence the CRAC channel activity and inhibit Ca^{2+} influx (Boncristiano et al. 2003). Other possibilities, for example a direct interaction of VacA with calcineurin, cannot be excluded yet, and further investigations are necessary to clarify the underlying mechanisms.

Immune suppression and proinflammatory activities of VacA

In addition to the immune-suppressive activity of the complete VacA protein, which implies the uptake of VacA into cells, Boncristiano et al. (2003) reported on a second activity of VacA mediated from outside by binding of the COOH-terminal p58 domain of VacA to an unknown high-affinity receptor. This binding was supposed to cause activation of Rac and phosphorylation of stress kinases, such as p38, but not Erk1/2, resulting in actin rearrangement, inhibition of T cell proliferation, and an anergic state of T cells (Boncristiano et al. 2003; Montecucco and de Bernard 2003) (Fig. 2). In the gastric cell line AZ-521, VacA treatment induced p38 as well as Erk1/2 phosphorylation and induction of the p38/ATF-2-mediated pathway (Nakayama et al. 2004). In addition to immune suppression, VacA is also postulated to have proinflammatory effects, e.g., by stimulating expression of the proinflammatory enzyme cyclo-oxygenase (COX)-2, not only in T cells, but also in granulocytes and macrophages (Boncristiano et al. 2003). A further study published by Jüttner et al. (2003) showed transcriptional up-regulation of the COX-2 gene in AGS epithelial cells, but the effect was independent of the *cag*-PAI and of VacA (Jüttner et al. 2003). VacA-independent stimulation of COX-2 was also reported for gastric epithelial cells by Busiello et al. (2004). These authors purified the stimulating activity from bacterial culture supernatant and identified it as the secreted protein gamma-glutamyltranspeptidase. Furthermore, VacA was reported to activate mast cells to produce proinflammatory cytokines tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α and IL-6 (Supajatura et al. 2002).

Conclusions

Over the last 16 years, significant progress has been made in the understanding of the structure and function of VacA. Besides its vacuolating activity, it was surprising to find completely novel effects of VacA, especially on cells of the immune system. The interference of VacA with antigen presentation and the blocking of T cell activation might be a special form of immunosuppression by *H. pylori,* which might help the bacteria establish a chronic persistent infection. The targeting of VacA to mitochondria and the induction of apoptosis in certain cell types has been well documented meanwhile, but the mechanism of action of VacA has to be further established. In future it will be important to analyze the novel activities observed in vitro for their role in vivo during *H. pylori* chronic infection—in animal models or patients—to find out which of the activities are finally relevant.

Acknowledgements. We apologize to the authors of the many relevant papers that we could not discuss owing to space limitations. Work carried out in the authors' laboratory was supported by the Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft (DFG) grant SFB576, Project B1. No further funding besides the grants mentioned have been obtained for the project.

References

Adrian M, Cover TL, Dubochet J, Heuser JE (2002) Multiple oligomeric states of the *Helicobacter pylori* vacuolating toxin demonstrated by cryo-electron microscopy. J Mol Biol 318:121–133

Aebischer T, Lucas B, Koesling J, Bumann D, Meyer TF (2000) How CD4(+) T cells may eliminate extracellular gastric *Helicobacter*? J Biotechnol 83:77–84

Allen LA, Schlesinger LS, Kang B (2000) Virulent strains of *Helicobacter pylori* demonstrate delayed phagocytosis and stimulate homotypic phagosome fusion in macrophages. J Exp Med 191:115–128

Amieva MR, Salama NR, Tompkins LS, Falkow S (2002) *Helicobacter pylori* enter and survive within multivesicular vacuoles of epithelial cells. Cell Microbiol 4:677–690

Amieva MR, Vogelmann R, Covacci A, Tompkins LS, Nelson WJ, Falkow S (2003) Disruption of the epithelial apical-junctional complex by *Helicobacter pylori* CagA. Science 300:1430–1434

Atherton JC, Cao P, Peek RM Jr, Tummuru MKR, Blaser MJ, Cover TL (1995) Mosaicism in vacuolating cytotoxin alleles of *Helicobacter pylori*. J Biol Chem 270:17771–17777

Azuma T, Yamazaki S, Yamakawa A, Ito Y, Ohtani M, Dojo M, Yamazaki Y, Higashi H, Hatakeyama M (2003) The effects of cure of *Helicobacter pylori* infection on the signal transduction of gastric epithelial cells. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 18 [Suppl 1]:39–44

Blanchard TG, Nedrud JG, Czinn SJ (1999) Local and systemic antibody responses in humans with *Helicobacter pylori* infection. Can J Gastroenterol 13:591–594

Blaser MJ, Parsonnet J (1994) Parasitism by the ''slow'' bacterium *Helicobacter pylori* leads to altered gastric homeostasis and neoplasia. J Clin Invest 94:4–8

Boncristiano M, Paccani SR, Barone S, Ulivieri C, Patrussi L, Ilver D, Amedei A, D'Elios MM, Telford JL, et al (2003) The Helicobacter pylori vacuolating toxin inhibits T cell activation by two independent mechanisms. J Exp Med 198:1887–1897

Busiello I, Acquaviva R, Di Popolo A, Blanchard TG, Ricci V, Romano M, Zarrilli R (2004) *Helicobacter pylori* gamma-glutamyltranspeptidase upregulates COX-2 and EGF-related peptide expression in human gastric cells. Cell Microbiol 6:255–267

Cover TL, Blaser MJ (1992) Purification and characterization of the vacuolating toxin from *Helicobacter pylori*. J Biol Chem 267:10570–10575

Cover TL, Tummuru MKR, Cao P, Thompson S, Blaser MJ (1994) Divergence of genetic sequences for the vacuolating cytotoxin among *Helicobacter pylori* strains. J Biol Chem 269:10566–10573

Cover TL, Hanson PI, Heuser JE (1997) Acid-induced dissociation of VacA, the *Helicobacter pylori* vacuolating cytotoxin, reveals its pattern of assembly. J Cell Biol 138:759–769

Cover TL, Krishna US, Israel DA, Peek RM Jr (2003) Induction of gastric epithelial cell apoptosis by *Helicobacter pylori* vacuolating cytotoxin. Cancer Res 63:951–957

Czajkowsky DM, Iwamoto H, Cover TL, Shao Z (1999) The vacuolating toxin from *Helicobacter pylori* forms hexameric pores in lipid bilayers at low pH. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 96:2001–2006

de Bernard M, Arico B, Papini E, Rizzuto R, Grandi G, Rappuoli R, Montecucco C (1997) *Helicobacter pylori* toxin VacA induces vacuole formation by acting in the cell cytosol. Mol Microbiol 26:665–674

de Bernard M, Burroni D, Papini E, Rappuoli R, Telford J, Montecucco C (1998) Identification of the *Helicobacter pylori* VacA toxin domain active in the cell cytosol. Infect Immun 66:6014–6016

de Bernard M, Moschioni M, Napolitani G, Rappuoli R, Montecucco C (2000) The VacA toxin of *Helicobacter pylori* identifies a new intermediate filament-interacting protein. EMBO J 19:48–56

de Bernard M, Moschioni M, Habermann A, Griffiths G, Montecucco C (2002) Cell vacuolization induced by *Helicobacter pylori* VacA cytotoxin does not depend on late endosomal SNAREs. Cell Microbiol 4:11–18

Ermak TH, Giannasca PJ, Nichols R, Myers GA, Nedrud J, Weltzin R, Lee CK, Kleanthous H, Monath TP (1998) Immunization of mice with urease vaccine affords protection against *Helicobacter pylori* infection in the absence of antibodies and is mediated by MHC class II-restricted responses. J Exp Med 188:2277–2288

Fan X, Gunasena H, Cheng Z, Espejo R, Crowe SE, Ernst PB, Reyes VE (2000) *Helicobacter pylori* urease binds to class II MHC on gastric epithelial cells and induces their apoptosis. J Immunol 165:1918–1924

Fan XJ, Chua A, Shahi CN, McDevitt J, Keeling PW, Kelleher D (1994) Gastric T lymphocyte responses to *Helicobacter pylori* in patients with *H pylori* colonisation. Gut 35:1379–1384

Ferrari G, Langen H, Naito M, Pieters J (1999) A coat protein on phagosomes involved in the intracellular survival of mycobacteria. Cell 97:435–447

Fischer W, Buhrdorf R, Gerland E, Haas R (2001) Outer membrane targeting of passenger proteins by the vacuolating cytotoxin autotransporter of *Helicobacter pylori*. Infect Immun 69:6769–6775

Forsyth MH, Atherton JC, Blaser MJ, Cover TL (1998) Heterogeneity in levels of vacuolating cytotoxin gene (*vacA*) transcription among *Helicobacter pylori* strains. Infect Immun 66:3088–3094

Fujikawa A, Shirasaka D, Yamamoto S, Ota H, Yahiro K, Fukada M, Shintani T, Wada A, Aoyama N, et al (2003) Mice deficient in protein tyrosine phosphatase receptor type Z are resistant to gastric ulcer induction by VacA of *Helicobacter pylori*. Nat Genet 33:375–381

Galmiche A, Rassow J, Doye A, Cagnol S, Chambard JC, Contamin S, de T, V, Just I, Ricci V, et al (2000) The N-terminal 34 kDa fragment of *Helicobacter pylori* vacuolating cytotoxin targets mitochondria and induces cytochrome *c* release. EMBO J 19:6361–6370

Gauthier NC, Ricci V, Gounon P, Doye A, Tauc M, Poujeol P, Boquet P (2004) Glycosylphosphatidylinositol-anchored proteins and actin cytoskeleton modulate chloride transport by channels formed by the *Helicobacter pylori* vacuolating cytotoxin VacA in HeLa cells. J Biol Chem 279:9481–9489

Gebert B, Fischer W, Weiss E, Hoffmann R, Haas R (2003) *Helicobacter pylori* vacuolating cytotoxin inhibits T lymphocyte activation. Science 301:1099–1102

Hennig EE, Butruk E, Ostrowski J (2001) RACK1 protein interacts with *Helicobacter pylori* VacA cytotoxin: the yeast two-hybrid approach. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 289:103–110

Hotchin NA, Cover TL, Akhtar N (2000) Cell vacuolation induced by the VacA cytotoxin of H*elicobacter pylori* is regulated by the Rac1 GTPase. J Biol Chem 275:14009–14012

Ikonomov OC, Sbrissa D, Yoshimori T, Cover TL, Shisheva A (2002) PIKfyve Kinase and SKD1 AAA ATPase define distinct endocytic compartments. Only PIKfyve expression inhibits the cell-vacuolating activity of *Helicobacter pylori* VacA toxin. J Biol Chem 277:46785–46790

Ilver D, Barone S, Mercati D, Lupetti P, Telford JL (2004) *Helicobacter pylori* toxin VacA is transferred to host cells via a novel contact-dependent mechanism. Cell Microbiol 6:167–174

Iwamoto H, Czajkowsky DM, Cover TL, Szabo G, Shao Z (1999) VacA from *Helicobacter pylori*: a hexameric chloride channel. FEBS LETT 450:101–104

Jüttner S, Cramer T, Wessler S, Walduck A, Gao F, Schmitz F, Wunder C, Weber M, Fischer SM, et al (2003) *Helicobacter pylori* stimulates host cyclooxygenase-2 gene transcription: critical importance of MEK/ERK-dependent activation of USF1/-2 and CREB transcription factors. Cell Microbiol 5:821–834

Knipp U, Birkholz S, Kaup W, Mahnke K, Opferkuch W (1994) Suppression of human mononuclear cell response by *Helicobacter pylori*: effects on isolated monocytes and lymphocytes. FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol 8:157–166

Kuck D, Kolmerer B, Iking-Konert C, Krammer PH, Stremmel W, Rudi J (2001) Vacuolating cytotoxin of *Helicobacter pylori* induces apoptosis in the human gastric epithelial cell line AGS. Infect Immun 69:5080–5087

Kuo CH, Wang WC (2003) Binding and internalization of *Helicobacter pylori* VacA via cellular lipid rafts in epithelial cells. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 303:640–644

Kwok T, Backert S, Schwarz H, Berger J, Meyer TF (2002) Specific entry of *Helicobacter pylori* into cultured gastric epithelial cells via a zipper-like mechanism. Infect Immun 70:2108–2120

Letley DP, Atherton JC (2000) Natural diversity in the N terminus of the mature vacuolating cytotoxin of *Helicobacter pylori* determines cytotoxin activity. J Bacteriol 182:3278–3280

Letley DP, Rhead JL, Twells RJ, Dove B, Atherton JC (2003) Determinants of non-toxicity in the gastric pathogen *Helicobacter pylori*. J Biol Chem 278:26734–26741

Leunk RD, Johnson PT, David BC, Kraft WG, Morgan DR (1988) Cytotoxic activity in broth-culture filtrates of *Campylobacter pylori*. J Med Microbiol 26:93–99

Li Y, Wandinger-Ness A, Goldenring JR, Cover TL (2004) Clustering and redistribution of late endocytic compartments in response to *Helicobacter pylori* vacuolating toxin. Mol Biol Cell 15:1946–1959

Lucas B, Bumann D, Walduck A, Koesling J, Develioglu L, Meyer TF, Aebischer T (2001) Adoptive transfer of CD4(+) T cells specific for subunit A of *Helicobacter pylori* urease reduces *H. pylori* stomach colonization in mice in the absence of interleukin-4 (IL-4)/IL-13 receptor signaling. Infect Immun 69:1714–1721

Lupetti P, Heuser JE, Manetti R, Massari P, Lanzavecchia S, Bellon, PL, Dallai R, Rappuoli R, et al (1996) Oligomeric and subunit structure of the *Helicobacter pylori* vacuolating cytotoxin. J Cell Biol 133:801–807

Mannick EE, Bravo LE, Zarama G, Realpe JL, Zhang XJ, Ruiz B, Fontham ET, Mera R, Miller MJ, et al (1996) Inducible nitric oxide synthase, nitrotyrosine, and apoptosis in *Helicobacter pylori* gastritis: effect of antibiotics and antioxidants. Cancer Res 56:3238–3243

Marchetti M, Arico B, Burroni D, Figura N, Rappuoli R, Ghiara P (1995) Development of a mouse model of *Helicobacter pylori* infection that mimics human disease. Science 267:1655–1658

McClain MS, Cao P, Cover TL (2001a) Amino-terminal hydrophobic region of *Helicobacter pylori* vacuolating cytotoxin (VacA) mediates transmembrane protein dimerization. Infect Immun 69:1181–1184

McClain MS, Cao P, Iwamoto H, Vinion-Dubiel AD, Szabo G, Shao Z, Cover TL (2001b) A 12-amino-acid segment, present in type s2 but not type s1 *Helicobacter pylori* VacA proteins, abolishes cytotoxin activity and alters membrane channel formation. J Bacteriol 183:6499–6508

McClain MS, Iwamoto H, Cao P, Vinion-Dubiel AD, Li Y, Szabo G, Shao Z, Cover TL (2003) Essential role of a GXXXG motif for membrane channel formation by *Helicobacter pylori* vacuolating toxin. J Biol Chem

Molinari M, Galli C, Norais N, Telford JL, Rappuoli R, Luzio JP, Montecucco C (1997) Vacuoles induced by *Helicobacter pylori* toxin contain both late endosomal and lysosomal markers. J Biol Chem 272:25339–25344

Molinari M, Galli C, de Bernard M, Norais N, Ruysschaert JM, Rappuoli R, Montecucco C (1998a) The acid activation of *Helicobacter pylori* toxin VacA: structural and membrane binding studies. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 248:334–340

Molinari M, Salio M, Galli C, Norais N, Rappuoli R, Lanzavecchia A, Montecucco C (1998b) Selective inhibition of Ii-dependent antigen presentation by *Helicobacter pylori* toxin VacA. J Exp Med 187:135–140

Moll G, Papini E, Colonna R, Burroni D, Telford J, Rappuoli R, Montecucco C (1995) Lipid interaction of the 37-kDa and 58-kDa fragments of the *Helicobacter pylori* cytotoxin. Eur J Biochem 234:947–952

Montecucco C, de Bernard M (2003) Immunosuppressive and proinflammatory activities of the VacA toxin of *Helicobacter pylori*. J Exp Med 198:1767–1771

Moss SF, Calam J, Agarwal B, Wang S, Holt PR (1996) Induction of gastric epithelial apoptosis by *Helicobacter pylori*. Gut 38:498–501

Nakayama M, Kimura M, Wada A, Yahiro K, Ogushi K, Niidome T, Fujikawa A, Shirasaka D, Aoyama N, et al (2004) *Helicobacter pylori* VacA activates the p38/activating transcription factor 2-mediated signal pathway in AZ-521 cells. J Biol Chem 279:7024–7028

Neu B, Randlkofer P, Neuhofer M, Voland P, Mayerhofer A, Gerhard M, Schepp W, Prinz C (2002) *Helicobacter pylori* induces apoptosis of rat gastric parietal cells. Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol 283:G309-G318

Nguyen VQ, Caprioli RM, Cover TL (2001) Carboxy-terminal proteolytic processing of *Helicobacter pylori* vacuolating toxin. Infect Immun 69:543–546

Odenbreit S, Püls J, Sedlmaier B, Gerland E, Fischer W, Haas R (2000) Translocation of *Helicobacter pylori* CagA into gastric epithelial cells by type IV secretion. Science 287:1497–1500

Odenbreit S, Gebert B, Püls J, Fischer W, Haas R (2001) Interaction of *Helicobacter pylori* with professional phagocytes: role of the *cag* pathogenicity island and translocation, phosphorylation and specific processing of CagA. Cell Microbiol 3:21–31

Ogura K, Maeda S, Nakao M, Watanabe T, Tada M, Kyutoku T, Yoshida H, Shiratori Y, Omata M (2000) Virulence factors of *Helicobacter pylori* responsible for gastric diseases in Mongolian gerbil. J Exp Med 192:1601–1610

Pagliaccia C, Wang XM, Tardy F, Telford JL, Ruysschaert JM, Cabiaux V (2000) Structure and interaction of VacA of *Helicobacter pylori* with a lipid membrane. Eur J Biochem 267:104–109

Papini E, Bugnoli M, de Bernard M, Figura N, Rappuoli R, Montecucco C (1993) Bafilomycin A1 inhibits *Helicobacter pylori* induced vacuolization of HeLa cells. Mol Microbiol 7:323–327

Papini E, Satin B, Bucci C, Debernard M, Telford JL, Manetti R, Rappuoli R, Zerial M, Montecucco C (1997) The small GTP-binding protein Rab7 is essential for cellular vacuolation induced by *Helicobacter pylori* cytotoxin. EMBO J 16:15–24

Papini E, Satin B, Norais N, de Bernard M, Telford JL, Rappuoli R, Montecucco C (1998) Selective increase of the permeability of polarized epithelial cell monolayers by *Helicobacter pylori* vacuolating toxin. J Clin Invest 102:813–820

Patel HK, Willhite DC, Patel RM, Ye D, Williams CL, Torres EM, Marty KB, MacDonald RA, Blanke SR (2002) Plasma membrane cholesterol modulates cellular vacuolation induced by the *Helicobacter pylori* vacuolating cytotoxin. Infect Immun 70:4112–4123

Peek RM Jr, Blaser MJ, Mays DJ, Forsyth MH, Cover TL, Song SY, Krishna U, Pietenpol JA (1999) *Helicobacter pylori* strain-specific genotypes and modulation of the gastric epithelial cell cycle. Cancer Res 59:6124–6131

Pelicic V, Reyrat JM, Sartori L, Pagliaccia C, Rappuoli R, Telford JL, Montecucco C, Papini E (1999) *Helicobacter pylori* VacA cytotoxin associated with the bacteria increases epithelial permeability independently of its vacuolating activity. Microbiology 145 (Pt 8):2043–2050

Petersen AM, Sorensen K, Blom J, Krogfelt KA (2001) Reduced intracellular survival of *Helicobacter pylori vacA* mutants in comparison with their wild-types indicates the role of VacA in pathogenesis. FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol 30:103–108

Ramarao N, Gray-Owen SD, Backert S, Meyer TF (2000) *Helicobacter pylori* inhibits phagocytosis by professional phagocytes involving type IV secretion components. Mol Microbiol 37:1389–1404

Ricci V, Galmiche A, Doye A, Necchi V, Solcia E, Boquet P (2000) High cell sensitivity to *Helicobacter pylori* VacA toxin depends on a GPI-anchored protein and is not blocked by inhibition of the clathrin-mediated pathway of endocytosis. Mol Biol Cell 11:3897–3909

Rittig MG, Shaw B, Letley DP, Thomas RJ, Argent RH, Atherton JC (2003) *Helicobacter pylori*-induced homotypic phagosome fusion in human monocytes is independent of the bacterial *vacA* and *cag* status. Cell Microbiol 5:887–899

Rudi J, Kuck D, Strand S, von Herbay A, Mariani SM, Krammer PH, Galle PR, Stremmel W (1998) Involvement of the CD95 (APO-1/Fas) receptor and ligand system in *Helicobacter pylori*-induced gastric epithelial apoptosis. J Clin Invest 102:1506–1514

Salama NR, Otto G, Tompkins L, Falkow S (2001) Vacuolating cytotoxin of *Helicobacter pylori* plays a role during colonization in a mouse model of infection. Infect Immun 69:730–736

Satin B, Norais N, Telford J, Rappuoli R, Murgia M, Montecucco C, Papini E (1997) Effect of *Helicobacter pylori* vacuolating toxin on maturation and extracellular release of procathepsin D and on epidermal growth factor degradation. J Biol Chem 272:25022–25028

Schmitt W, Haas R (1994) Genetic analysis of the *Helicobacter pylori* vacuolating cytotoxin: structural similarities with the IgA protease type of exported protein. Mol Microbiol 12:307–319

Schraw W, Li Y, McClain MS, van der Goot FG, Cover TL (2002) Association of *Helicobacter pylori* vacuolating toxin (VacA) with lipid rafts. J Biol Chem 277:34642–34650

Seto K, Hayashi-Kuwabara Y, Yoneta T, Suda H, Tamaki H (1998) Vacuolation induced by cytotoxin from *Helicobacter pylor*i is mediated by the EGF receptor in HeLa cells. FEBS Lett 431:347–350

Shirai M, Arichi T, Nakazawa T, Berzofsky JA (1998) Persistent infection by *Helicobacter pylori* down-modulates virus-specific CD8+ cytotoxic T cell response and prolongs viral infection. J Infect Dis 177:72–80

Supajatura V, Ushio H, Wada A, Yahiro K, Okumura K, Ogawa H, Hirayama T, Ra C (2002) Cutting edge: VacA, a vacuolating cytotoxin of *Helicobacter pylori*, directly activates mast cells for migration and production of proinflammatory cytokines. J Immunol 168:2603–2607

Suzuki J, Ohnsihi H, Shibata H, Wada A, Hirayama T, Iiri T, Ueda N, Kanamaru C, Tsuchida T, et al (2001) Dynamin is involved in human epithelial cell vacuolation caused by the *Helicobacter pylori*-produced cytotoxin VacA. J Clin Invest 107:363–370

Suzuki J, Ohnishi H, Wada A, Hirayama T, Ohno H, Ueda N, Yasuda H, Iiri T, Wada Y, et al (2003) Involvement of syntaxin 7 in human gastric epithelial cell vacuolation induced by the *Helicobacter pylori*-produced cytotoxin VacA. J Biol Chem 278:25585–25590

Suzuki K, Kokai Y, Sawada N, Takakuwa R, Kuwahara K, Isogai E, Isogai H, Mori M (2002) SS1 *Helicobacter pylori* disrupts the paracellular barrier of the gastric mucosa and leads to neutrophilic gastritis in mice. Virchows Arch 440:318–324

Szabo I, Brutsche S, Tombola F, Moschioni M, Satin B, Telford JL, Rappuoli R, Montecucco C, Papini E, et al (1999) Formation of anion-selective channels in the cell plasma membrane by the toxin VacA of *Helicobacter pylori* is required for its biological activity. EMBO J 18:5517–5527

Telford JL, Ghiara P, Dell'Orco M, Commanducci M, Burroni D, Bugnoli M, Tecce MF, Censini S, Covacci A, et al (1994) Gene structure of the *Helicobacter pylori* cytotoxin and evidence of its key role in gastric disease. J Exp Med 179:1653–1658

Telford JL, Covacci A, Rappuoli R, Chiara P (1997) Immunobiology of *Helicobacter pylori* infection. Curr Opin Immunol 9:498–503

Terres AM, Pajares JM, Hopkins AM, Murphy A, Moran A, Baird AW, Kelleher D (1998) *Helicobacter pylori* disrupts epithelial barrier function in a process inhibited by protein kinase C activators. Infect Immun 66:2943–2950

Tombola F, Oregna F, Brutsche S, Szabo I, Del GG, Rappuoli R, Montecucco C, Papini E, Zoratti M (1999) Inhibition of the vacuolating and anion channel activities of the VacA toxin of *Helicobacter pylori*. FEBS Lett 460:221–225

Tombola F, Morbiato L, Del Giudice G, Rappuoli R, Zoratti M, Papini E (2001) The *Helicobacter pylori* VacA toxin is a urea permease that promotes urea diffusion across epithelia. J Clin Invest 108:929–937

Torres VJ, McClain MS, Cover TL (2004) Interactions between p-33 and p-55 domains of the *Helicobacter pylori* vacuolating cytotoxin (VacA). J Biol Chem 279:2324–2331

Tsujimoto Y, Shimizu S (2002) The voltage-dependent anion channel: an essential player in apoptosis. Biochimie 84:187–193

Vinion-Dubiel AD, McClain MS, Czajkowsky DM, Iwamoto H, Ye D, Cao P, Schraw W, Szabo G, Blanke SR, et al (1999) A dominant negative mutant of *Helicobacter pylori* vacuolating toxin (VacA) inhibits VacA-induced cell vacuolation. J Biol Chem 274:37736–37742

Wagner S, Beil W, Westermann J, Logan RP, Bock CT, Trautwein C, Bleck JS, Manns MP (1997) Regulation of gastric epithelial cell growth by *Helicobacter pylori*: offdence for a major role of apoptosis. Gastroenterology 113:1836–1847

Wang J, Brooks EG, Bamford KB, Denning TL, Pappo J, Ernst PB (2001) Negative selection of T cells by *Helicobacter pylori* as a model for bacterial strain selection by immune evasion. J Immunol 167:926–934

Willhite DC, Blanke SR (2004) *Helicobacter pylori* vacuolating cytotoxin enters cells, localizes to the mitochondria, and induces mitochondrial membrane permeability changes correlated to toxin channel activity. Cell Microbiol 6:143–154

Willhite DC, Ye D, Blanke SR (2002) Fluorescence resonance energy transfer microscopy of the *Helicobacter pylori* vacuolating cytotoxin within mammalian cells. Infect Immun 70:3824–3832

Willhite DC, Cover TL, Blanke SR (2003) Cellular vacuolation and mitochondrial cytochrome *c* release are independent outcomes of *Helicobacter pylori* vacuolating cytotoxin activity that are each dependent on membrane channel formation. J Biol Chem 278:48204–48209

Yahiro K, Niidome T, Kimura M, Hatakeyama T, Aoyagi H, Kurazono H, Imagawa K, Wada A, Moss J, et al (1999) Activation of *Helicobacter pylori* VacA toxin by alkaline or acid conditions increases its binding to a 250-kDa receptor protein-tyrosine phosphatase beta. J Biol Chem 274:36693–36699

Yahiro K, Wada A, Nakayama M, Kimura T, Ogushi KI, Niidome T, Aoyagi H, Yoshino KI, Yonezawa K, et al (2003) Protein-tyrosine phosphatase α, RPTPα, is a *Helicobacter pylori* VacA receptor. J Biol Chem 278:19183–19189

Ye D, Blanke SR (2000) Mutational analysis of the *Helicobacter pylori* vacuolating toxin amino terminus: identification of amino acids essential for cellular vacuolation. Infect Immun 68:4354–4357

Ye D, Blanke SR (2002) Functional complementation reveals the importance of intermolecular monomer interactions for *Helicobacter pylori* VacA vacuolating activity. Mol Microbiol 43:1243–1253

Ye D, Willhite DC, Blanke SR (1999) Identification of the minimal intracellular vacuolating domain of the *Helicobacter pylori* vacuolating toxin. J Biol Chem 274:9277–9282

Zheng PY, Jones NL (2003) *Helicobacter pylori* strains expressing the vacuolating cytotoxin interrupt phagosome maturation in macrophages by recruiting and retaining TACO (coronin 1) protein. Cell Microbiol 5:25–40